



Systems Reference Library

IBM Time Sharing System Assembler Programmer's Guide

This publication explains the use of the Time Sharing System (TSS) for assembler language programmers. It describes how to assemble, store, and execute programs in TSS, introduces the command system, and explains the basic rules of task and data management. Numerous examples are given showing typical user-system interaction. The appendixes include information on assembler options, output, and restrictions, as well as program

SEVENTH EDITION (April 1976)

This is a revision of, and makes obsolete GC28-3032-5 and Technical Newsletter GN28-3201. This new edition of the *Assembler Programmer's Guide* includes revised user-system interaction examples and editorial changes, and deletes an outdated appendix.

This edition is current with Release 2.0 of the IBM Time Sharing System/370 (TSS/370), and remains in effect for all subsequent versions or modifications of TSS unless otherwise noted. Significant changes or additions to this publication will be provided in new editions or Technical Newsletters.

Requests for copies of IBM publications should be made to your IBM representative or to the IBM branch office serving your locality.

A form is provided at the back of this publication for readers' comments. If the form has been removed, comments may be addressed to IBM Corporation, Time Sharing System - Department 80M, 1133 Westchester Avenue, White Plains, New York 10604.

This publication is a guide to the use of the assembler language facilities of TSS. It is intended for applications programmers who code in the assembler language. The publication is divided into four parts.

Part I is an overview of the Time Sharing System, outlining the major concepts of the system.

Part II describes the basic task and data management information you will need to use the system effectively: how to execute tasks in conversational and nonconversational mode, and how to name, catalog, store, and manipulate your data sets. It also explains specific system facilities available to you as an assembler programmer.

Part III comprises a series of examples that illustrate typical activities you will perform while using the system. They begin with the most straightforward necessities, such as logging on, and in succeeding examples progress to increasingly sophisticated concepts. These examples may be read for instruction or used as models for accomplishing specific tasks.

Part IV is a set of appendixes containing additional information on the use of the system. This reference material includes descriptions of assembler options, output, and restrictions, as well as explanations of program control system use, interrupt handling, and command creation.

Prerequisite Publications

You must be familiar with the basic concepts and terminology of TSS as described in *IBM Time Sharing System: Concepts and Facilities*, GC28-2003.

You should be familiar with the TSS assembler language, since this book does not describe the language

but rather the use of the system. The assembler language is specified in these publications:

IBM Time Sharing System: Assembler Language, GC28-2000

IBM Time Sharing System: Assembler User Macro Instructions, GC28-2004

You will also need to refer to:

IBM Time Sharing System: Command System User's Guide, GC28-2001, for a complete description of the command system.

Associated Publications

Other publications you may wish to refer to for details not presented in this guide are:

IBM Time Sharing System: Terminal User's Guide, GC28-2017, for instructions on how to operate the various terminals supported by TSS.

IBM Time Sharing System: Linkage Editor, GC28-2005, for a description of the linkage editor program.

IBM Time Sharing System: Data Management Facilities, GC28-2056, for a description of access methods and data management facilities.

Once you begin using the system, you will note that a number of messages are issued by the system. For a detailed description of these messages and for information on any responses you may have to make to them, consult the publication *IBM Time Sharing System: System Messages*, GC28-2037.

Part I. Introduction	1	PUNCH Command	21
The System and Your Relationship to It	1	Assembler Language Facilities	22
Communicating with the System	1	Input/Output During Program Execution	22
How You Gain Access to the System	1	Conventional Problem Program Input/Output	22
Commands at Your Disposal	1	General Service Macro Instructions	23
How Storage is Handled	2	DCB Macro Instruction	23
Virtual Storage	2	DCBD Macro Instruction	23
Sharing Time	2	OPEN Macro Instruction	23
Catalog and Library Concepts	2	CLOSE Macro Instruction	24
System Catalog	2	Duplexing a Data Set	24
Program Libraries	2	Dynamic Input/Output for the Assembler Language	24
How to Use This Manual	2	GATRD	26
 		GATWR	26
Part II. How To Use TSS	3	GTWRC	26
Task Management	3	GTWAR	26
Conversational Mode	3	GTWSR	26
Initiating Your Task	3	SYSIN	26
Executing Your Task	3	PAUSE	26
Entering Commands	4	COMMAND	26
SYSIN and SYSOUT	4	Communication with the Operator	27
Assembling and Running a Program	4	Communication with the System Log	27
Checking Out and Modifying Programs	4	Commands and Macro Instructions	28
Multiterminal Task (MTT)	5	Macro Instructions Used in Examples	34
Nonconversational Mode	5		
Initiating Your Task	5	Part III. Examples	35
Executing Your Task	8	Example 1: Initiating and Terminating a Conversational Task	36
Terminating Your Task	8	Example 2: Assembling and Correcting from the Terminal	38
Mixing Modes	8	Example 3: Assembling and Executing	42
Remote Job Entry (RJE)	8	Example 4: Correcting and Reassembling a Prestored Source Program	44
Task Management Commands	8	Example 5: Writing a Data Set and Printing It	47
Data Set Management	10	Example 6: Reading and Writing Cataloged Data Sets	49
Naming and Cataloging Your Data Sets	10	Example 7: Multiple Assemblies and Program Linkage	51
Naming Your Data Sets	10	Example 8: Use of PCS Immediate Statements	56
System Catalog	10	Example 9: Use of PCS Dynamic Statements	58
Catalog Structure	10	Example 10: Input and Output on Magnetic Tape	61
Generation Data Groups	11	Example 11: Conversational Initiation of Nonconversational Tasks	64
Cataloging Your Data Sets	12	Example 12: Preparing a Job for Nonconversational Processing	67
Data Set Organization	12	Example 13: Storing DDEF Commands for Later Use	69
Virtual Storage Data Sets	12	Example 14: Writing and Updating Virtual Index Sequential Data Sets	71
Physical Sequential Data Sets	13	Example 15: Missing Subroutines	74
Data Set Residence	13	Example 16: Entering Data for Later Use	75
Maintaining Program Libraries	13	Example 17: Data Set Considerations When Interrupting Program Execution	77
Using Public and Private Volumes	14	Example 18: Sharing Data Sets	78
Volume and Data Set Labels	14	Example 19: Switching Between Terminal and Card Reader for Input	80
Tailoring TSS to Meet Your Needs	14	Example 20: Anticipating an Interrupt in a Nonconversational Task	82
User Profile	14	Example 21: Housekeeping	84
Defining Your Data Set	15	Example 22: Use of Generation Data Groups	86
Data Control Block	15	Example 23: Creating and Using a User Macro-Library	89
Identification of Assembler Data Sets	17	Example 24: Use of the Linkage Editor	92
Data Definition Commands	17	Example 25: Tape and Disk-Medium Transfers of Virtual Access Method Data Sets	94
System Inquiry Commands	17	Example 26: The Text Editor Facility	95
Data Set Establishment	18	Example 27: The Text Editor Facility	96
The Text Editor	18	Example 28: Use of Procedure Definition (PROCDEF)	98
Prestoring Data in the System	18	Example 29: Use of the BUILTIN Procedure	99
Data Command	18	Example 30: The User Profile Facility	100
Operator-Assisted Input	18		
Command Procedure Data Set	18		
Data Card Data Set	19		
Sharing and Protecting Your Data Sets	19		
Data Set Manipulation	21		
Copying, Modifying and Erasing Data Sets	21		
Transferring Data to Standard Output Devices	21		
PRINT Command	21		
WT Command	21		

Part IV. Appendixes	101	CALL Macro Instruction	132
Appendix A. Use of the TSS Assembler	102	SAVE Macro Instruction	133
Problem-Program Preparation	102	RETURN Macro Instruction	133
Language Processing	102	EXIT Macro Instruction	133
Language Processing in Conversational Mode	102	ABEND Macro Instruction	133
Language Processing in Nonconversational Mode	103	Object Module Combination	133
Entry and Correction of Assembler Source Statements	103	Static Linking	134
Format of Source Lines	103	Dynamic Linking	135
Input Sources	103	Program Control System	136
Statement Boundaries—Card Format	103	Program Control Commands	137
Continuation Lines—Card Format	103	Program Control Statements	137
Character Sets—Card Format	104	PCS and the Internal Symbol Dictionary	138
Statement Boundaries—Keyboard Format	104	Using PCS Without an ISD	138
Continuation Lines—Keyboard Format	104	Evaluating Expressions	139
Character Sets—Keyboard Format	104	Floating-Point Constant Conversion	139
Mixed Card and Keyboard Input	104	PCS Diagnostics	139
Caution When Changing Card-Origin Statements	104	Miscellaneous Considerations	140
Efficient Correction Techniques	105	CALL, GO, and BRANCH Commands	140
Entry of Keyboard Source Statements for Later Punching and Recompilation	106	AT Command	141
Assembler Options and Related Output	107	Operational Considerations	141
Assembler Parameters	107	Conversational Mode	141
Explicitly Defaulted	107	Nonconversational Mode	141
Implicitly Defaulted	107	Appendix C. Programming Considerations	142
Structure and Description of Assembler Listings	109	Writing Programs in TSS	142
Source Program Listing	109	Creation of Unnamed Control Sections	147
Object Program Listing	109	Pooling of Literals	147
Cross-Reference Listing	113	System Macro Instruction Usage	147
Symbol Table Listing	114	Floating-Point Computations	148
Internal Symbol Dictionary Listing	114	References to Module Names of Link-Edited Modules	148
Program Module Dictionary Listing	114	EXIT and PAUSE Macro Instructions	148
Destination of Output	116	Assembler Language Linkage Conventions	148
Object Program Module Format	116	Linkage Conventions	148
Program Module Dictionary	116	Proper Register Usage	148
Text	116	Reserving a Parameter Area	149
Internal Symbol Dictionary	117	Reserving a Save Area	149
Assembling in Express Mode	117	CALL, SAVE, and RETURN Macro Instruction Usage	149
Assembler Restrictions	117	CALL Macro Instruction	149
Assembler Diagnostic Action	122	SAVE Macro Instruction	149
Use and Structure of a User Macro Library	122	RETURN Macro Instruction	151
Reasons for Using a User Macro Library	122	Object Modules Initiated by a CALL Command	151
TSS Assembler Processing of Macro Definitions	123	Example of Module Interaction	152
Detailed Description of User Macro Library Creation and Format	123	Interroutine Communication	152
Index Header	125	Shared Code (PUBLIC) Considerations	156
Index Entry	125	Efficient Use of Virtual Storage	157
Control Section Names and Attributes	126	Guidelines for Efficient Use	158
Shared Object Program Modules	127	Internal Organization of Program Modules	158
.....	127	External Organization of Program Modules	158
.....	127	Programming Techniques	158
.....	127	Control Section Rejection and Linking Control Sections	159
.....	127	Recovering from Errors When Dynamically Loading	159
.....	127	Library Management	160
.....	127	Program Library List Control	160
.....	127	Program Versions	161
.....	127	Sharing Libraries	161
.....	127	System Naming Rules	162
.....	127	User-Assigned Names	162
.....	127	Reserved Names	162
.....	127	External Symbols	162
.....	127	Internal Symbols	162
.....	127	Reserved Names Associated with Data Sets	162
.....	127	Appendix D. Interrupt Considerations	164
.....	127	Program Interrupts	164
.....	127	Attention Considerations	165
.....	127	Interrupting Execution	165
.....	127	Levels of Interruption	165
.....	127	Resuming Execution	165
.....	127	The Intervention Prevention Switch (IPS)	165
.....	127	Writing Interrupt-Handling Programs	166
.....	127	Establishing Interrupt Routines	166
.....	127	Processing an Interrupt	167
Appendix B. Problem Program Checkout and Modification	128		
Assembler	128		
Prompting and Diagnostic Facilities	128		
Conversational Mode, Source Statements from Terminal	128		
Conversational Mode, Source Statements from Prestored Data Set	129		
Nonconversational Mode, Source Statements from SYSIN	130		
Nonconversational Mode, Source Statements from Prestored Data Set	130		
Program Listings and Related Aids	130		
Linkage Editor	130		
Prompting and Diagnostic Facilities	130		
Program Listings and Related Aids	130		
Object Program Module Linking	130		
Time Sharing System Program Structure	130		
Symbolic Linkage	131		
Linkage Conventions	131		
Linkage Macro Instructions	132		

Appendix E. Data Set Characteristics	171
Forms of the DDEF Command	175
DCB Parameter Specification	175
Data Set Definition Rules for Language Processing	176
Data Set Definition Rules for TSS Commands	176
Secure Requirements for Nonconversational Tasks	176
Data Definition Considerations for Multiple Executions in the Same Session	179
Appendix F. User Defined Procedures	180
Procedure Definition (PROCDEF)	180
Entering Procedure Text	180

Terminating Procedure Definition	180
Nested Procedure Definitions	180
Object Program Definition (BUILTIN)	181
The User Profile	181
Index	183

Figures

1 Nonconversational Task Initiation	5	21 PMD Listing	115
2 Nonconversational Task Initiated by PRINT Command	6	22 Format of an Object Program Module	116
3 Nonconversational Task Initiated by EXECUTE Com- mand	7	23 Format of a Macro Definition Symbolic Component	125
4 Converting a Conversational Task to Nonconversa- tional Mode Using the BACK Command	9	24 Format of a Line in a Symbolic Component	125
5 System Catalog Concept	11	25 Format of Symbolic Library Index	125
6 Flow of Information to and from a Data Control Block	16	26 Shared Object Program Module	127
7 Data Set Identification, Assembler Language Program	17	27 V- and R-Values of External Symbols	132
8 Organization of Command Procedure Data Set	18	28 Sharing a Module	132
9 Organization of a Data Card Data Set	19	29 Program with Implicit and Explicit Linkages	133
10 Sharing of Cataloged Data Sets	20	30 Object Program Module Combination	135
11 Conventional vs Dynamic I/O	22	31 A Reenterable Routine That Requests its Own Tempo- rary Storage	136
12 Conventional I/O Facilities	23	32 Save Area Format and Word Content	151
13 Summary of Data Management System Macro Instruc- tion and Data Set Organizations	24	33 Module A Source Listing	154
14 Language Processing	102	34 Module B Source Listing	155
15 Assembler Parameters	107	35 Module C Source Listing	155
16 Source Program Listing	110	36 Dynamic Loader Automatic Control Section Rejection	159
17 Object Program Listing	111	37 Information Available Upon Entry to an Interrupt Routine	168
18 Cross-Reference Listing	113	38 Interrupt Control Block (ICB) Format	168
19 Symbol Table Listing	114	39 Virtual Program Status Word (VPSW)	169
20 ISD Listing	115	40 Illustration of Interrupts Being Serviced	170
		41 The DDEF Command	172

Tables

1 DCB Operands, Their Specification, Access Methods, and Alternate Sources	25	12 Assembler Statements Used to Name Control Sections and Describe Their Attributes	127
2 SYSIN Records Specified with GATE Macro Instruc- tions	27	13 Save Area Contents	133
3 SYSOUT Records Specified with GATE Macro In- structions	27	14 Possible Combinations of Operands for Arithmetic and Relational Operations	140
4 Commands and Macro Instructions	28	15 Exit and Pause Macro Instructions	148
5 Macro Instructions Used in Examples	34	16 Linkage Registers	149
6 Type Attributes	113	17 Save Area Linkage	156
7 Type Code Significance in PMD Listing	116	18 Shared Data Set Commands	163
8 Destination of Output	117	19 Types of Program Interrupts	164
9 Simple Source Program Restrictions	118	20 Responding to Attention Interruptions	166
10 Complex Restrictions	119	21 Form of DDEF for New Data Sets	173
11 Assembler Diagnostic Action	124	22 Forms of DDEF for Existing Data Sets	174
		23 Use of DCB Parameters in the DDEF Command	175
		24 Data Set Definition Requirements for Comamnds	176

This is an overview, for the assembler programmer, of the major concepts of the Time Sharing System. Each concept will be described in detail later in this manual.

The System and Your Relationship To It

The Time Sharing System comprises a set of programs that make it possible for you to use system facilities concurrently with other users. Your terminal is one of many that are at users' locations. They are all connected to a computer center, where an operator manipulates the cards, tapes, disks, and listings that are required to complete the commands you issue. The system creates a separate task for each current user to make all of the system facilities available to him. You are each allocated brief time intervals during which your task is executed. Thus it appears that only you are connected to the system.

Communicating With the System

In *tss*, you may run your programs conversationally or nonconversationally. When you want direct communication with the system while you are assembling, debugging, and executing your program, the conversational mode will better suit your needs. When time does not permit staying at your terminal, or your program is already checked out, you can use the nonconversational mode.

To assemble and run your program conversationally, you enter commands and data at your terminal. The system analyzes each statement as it is received. If an error is found, you are prompted to correct it. When the entire program has been entered, it is analyzed as a whole, and you are again prompted to correct errors. When your corrected program is assembled, you may execute it and monitor its progress from your terminal (see "Conversational Mode" in Part II).

To assemble and run your program as a nonconversational task, you can either:

- Enter commands and input data (including source statements) at the terminal and specify that they be stored as input for a continuing (or separate) task, or
- Submit a card deck or tape containing commands and input data to the computer center.

In nonconversational mode there is no direct communication between you and the system. Errors in your source program could prevent the assembly from being

completed, since there is no way for you to correct yourself. Any system messages that develop during execution of the task will be printed out at the computer center (see "Nonconversational Mode" in Part II).

You can mix modes of operation, starting out conversationally and switching to nonconversational mode; however, you may *not* switch from nonconversational to conversational (see "Switching Modes" in Part II).

There are two additional means of communicating with the system; their availability and use will vary from installation to installation. They are described in Part II under "Multiterminal Task (MTR)" and "Remote Job Entry (RJE)."

How You Gain Access to the System

Before using *tss* you must be joined to the system by your system administrator or system manager. When you are joined, information about your identification is stored:

- User Identification (userid)—code that uniquely identifies you to the system.
- Password—code that provides additional protection against unauthorized use of your user identification.
- Charge Number—account to which your use of the system is charged.
- Priority—code indicating the relative priority of your work.
- Privilege Class—code identifying you as a user (as opposed to, say, an operator).

Each time you attempt to communicate with the system, whether conversationally or nonconversationally, you must issue the *LOGON* command, with operands that have enough information to identify you. The system checks the information you have supplied against the information it has stored about you; when you are recognized, you can begin entering data. For a detailed description of the *LOGON* operands, see Example 1 in Part III.

Commands at Your Disposal

The time-sharing command system comprises a series of commands with which you tell the system what you want it to do. For example:

- Task management commands allow you to initiate, terminate, or change the system's operation for you.
- System inquiry commands request specific information from the system about your data sets.
- Data set management commands allow you to establish, manipulate, and eliminate your data sets.

See Part II for command descriptions.

How Storage is Handled

Virtual Storage

You will not be directly concerned with the installation's physical limitations on main storage. Special addressing techniques, internal to the system, will provide you with a storage capacity that is theoretically equal to the total range of addresses that can be specified in an instruction. The system's addressing techniques combine main and secondary storage to create a virtual storage area in which your task will operate. Your installation will inform you of the specific virtual storage limits available for your problem programs and data sets.

Although you have an extremely large virtual storage capacity, efficient programming is important, since performance can be degraded by excessive demands on the available storage at your installation (see "Efficient Use of Virtual Storage" in Appendix C).

Each user has his own storage space for program execution; therefore, other users cannot interfere with your programs, nor can you interfere with theirs, because neither of you can refer to the other's virtual storage space. You may share another user's programs and permit him to share yours; however, specific commands must be issued to accomplish this (see "Sharing and Protecting Your Data Sets" in Part II).

Sharing Time

There may be many users communicating with the system at the same time that you are. However, the system appears to be serving each of you exclusively, because, cyclically, it is giving each of you a time slice during which all the facilities required by your task are in fact exclusively yours. Unless the system is overloaded, its speed will allow it to do your work as well as that of other users without the intervals being apparent to you.

Catalog and Library Concepts

System Catalog

The system maintains a catalog to give you the means for recording the locations of data and, later, retriev-

ing that data by name alone. Conceptually the system catalog is much like the catalogs in libraries; it is an index that points to items that reside elsewhere. You are therefore relieved of the responsibility of keeping track of data-location information. The structure of the catalog protects your data sets from being accessed by other users, unless you specifically permit others to share them (see "Catalog Structure" in Part II).

Program Libraries

When it is assembled, your program can consist of one or more object modules. All programs in TSS are stored, in object-module form, in program libraries. A program consisting of only one object module is stored within one library; a program that consists of several object modules may reside in different libraries, depending upon how you have stored them. During linkage editing and during execution, the system can automatically retrieve all required object modules, if you have defined the libraries that hold those modules.

There are four categories of program libraries: system library (SYSLIB), user library (USERLIB), user-defined job libraries, and linkage editor libraries. A program library list, defining the hierarchy of libraries available to you, is used to store object modules in the specified library and to search each library for object modules that must be loaded at execution time. Libraries and their uses are described in Part II under "Maintaining Program Libraries."

How to Use This Manual

Parts I and II contain the information you will need to assemble and run a program at your terminal. If you are not familiar with the basic rules of task and data management, you should read Part II before attempting a terminal session. Running Examples 1 through 4 in Part III will give you a basic understanding of how to assemble and execute a program at your terminal.

The remaining examples in Part III illustrate the use of commands and system facilities for a wide range of functions. You should scan these examples and the appendixes initially; they are primarily for reference when more detailed information on a specific facility (such as handling interruptions) is required.

Part II presents detailed coverage of the basic task and data management information that you will need to know to assemble and run programs in the time-sharing system. Included are discussions of:

- Conversational and nonconversational modes of operation
- Data set management, supplying only those facts that are essential for basic use of the system. (Those assembler programmers requiring more detailed information on data management should refer to *Data Management Facilities*.)
- The system catalog and your maintenance responsibilities
- Sharing facilities and the need for protection
- Facilities available for producing large volume output
- The macros available to assembler language programmers.

At the end of this part is a table showing sample usages of the commands and macro instructions available to you, along with a notation of which examples in Part III illustrate their use.

Task Management

TSS tasks may be executed in either of two modes: conversational or nonconversational. During conversational task execution you remain in communication with your task, obtaining intermediate results and modifying your program while it is executing. There is no communication however, between you and a nonconversational task; no task output is available until the task has been completed or is terminated by you or the system. TSS also allows you to switch a conversational task to nonconversational, when user-task communication is no longer needed.

Conversational Mode

In conversational mode you communicate with the system by means of a typewriter-like terminal. Your terminal may be one of the following:

- The IBM 2741, which is an IBM Selectric typewriter specially equipped for terminal use.
- The IBM 3277 CRT Display Terminal

- The IBM 1050 System, which can include both a typewriter and a card reader. Input can be entered into the system via the keyboard or the card reader.
- The Teletype Model 33 or 35 KSR.¹

Your terminal may be located at the computer center or at a remote location. In either case terminal operation is the same: you enter a command directing the system to do certain work, the system responds, you enter another command, etc. The system communicates with you by printing out messages and data at your terminal. Thus you are able to solve problems which arise and make changes as you receive processing results during task execution.

Initiating Your Task

To initiate conversational task processing, you either:

- Dial up the system, the number being determined by your installation, or
- Press the attention button on the terminal, if the terminal is "hardwired" (i.e., directly connected to the computer).

You have thus begun the log-on process and set up a conversational task in the system. Since you have already been granted access to the system by being joined by your system manager or administrator, you now identify yourself by typing in the LOGON command with the parameters set up for you at join time. The system then completes initiation of your task. See Example 1 in Part III for a description of the LOGON operands and an example of their use.

Executing Your Task

After you have logged on, the system asks you to enter your next command and, in effect, enters into a conversation with you. Your portion of this dialog consists of your commands and any source language statements that you enter during execution of your task, plus your replies to the messages issued by the system. The system's contribution to this dialog consists of messages, responses to commands, and requests for the next command. The system informs you that it is ready to accept your next command by printing, at your terminal, an underscore character (_) beneath the first character position of a new line.

¹ Trademark of Teletype Corporation, Skokie, Illinois. Terminals which are equivalent to those explicitly supported may also function satisfactorily. The customer is responsible for establishing equivalency. IBM assumes no responsibility for the impact that any changes to the IBM-supplied products or programs may have on such terminals.

Entering Commands

Every command you enter from the terminal keyboard starts on a new line. It may begin above the underscore that requests its entry or at any other point on the line. Each command has an operation part specifying what is to be done (as `CALL`), and each may have one or more operands that qualifies the operation (as `NAME=` followed by the name of your object program, say `PRIME`. This qualifies the operation to mean "execute my object program, `PRIME`"). The end of the command is indicated by pressing the `RETURN` key.

Each command is analyzed, when it is entered, to determine if it is valid; if it is, all the actions requested by the command are performed before you are requested to enter the next command. If the command is not complete or valid as entered, the system issues a message to request you to supply additional information before the command is executed. The system issues three types of messages to the conversational user:

- Prompting messages which ask you to supply omitted operands or additional information;
- Response messages which tell you of the actions the system has taken in executing a command, and
- Diagnostic messages which inform you of command and source language errors.

`SYSDIN` and `SYSDOUT`

Your task's input to the system contains the sequence of commands you issue; this sequence is called `SYSDIN`. Your system input stream can also include data to be prestored in the system, or actual input records to an executing program. When you are in the conversational mode, your terminal is your task's `SYSDIN` device.

Your task's system output stream, called `SYSDOUT`, is directed to the terminal. It consists basically of system messages, and may also contain output from your object programs if you so choose. Because the terminal is thus a combined `SYSDIN`/`SYSDOUT` device, it generates a copy mixture of the two system streams. You, and every other user, have your own unique `SYSDIN`/`SYSDOUT`, which are not recorded by the system in any form other than as a listing printed at your terminal.

Assembling and Running a Program

Let us suppose that you wish to assemble and run a simple program named "`PRIME`" conversationally. Your entry to the system is achieved by typing in the `LOGON` command with the appropriate parameters. (See Example 1 in Part III for a detailed description of `LOGON` operands.) You would then issue the `ASM` command (which initiates the Assembler) with the desired parameters to call for assembly of your source program (see Example 2 in Part III for a detailed description of `ASM` operands). Your source program may then be

entered conversationally from the terminal, instruction by instruction, or may be a prestored source data set.

When your program has been analyzed and assembled, the resulting object program is stored in a program library. You may then call for its execution by issuing the `CALL` command followed by your program name, or by simply entering your program name. When you have completed your task for this session, you tell the system to disconnect you by issuing the `LOGOFF` command (no operands), which terminates that terminal session.

For example:

```
LOGON JONES,JOHN,,ACCT30
      . (system acknowledgment)
ASM PRIME,N (you request assembly of a source pro-
      . gram that is not prestored)
      . (program instructions and, possibly,
      . system messages)
      . (system indication of successful assem-
      . bly)
PRIME (you call for program execution)
LOGOFF (end of session)
```

You can interrupt execution of your conversational task at any point by pressing the `ATTENTION` key at your terminal. This will generally result in your task being placed in the command mode, giving you the opportunity to redirect the system. However, the effects of interrupts will vary depending upon the conditions; these are described in Table 20 in Appendix D.

When assembling a program, you can also specify that various types of listings are to be created (see Example 1 Part III). In conversational mode these listings are automatically placed in a list data set unless you specify that no list data set is to be created. To have your list data set printed, you must issue the `PRINT` command, establishing a separate nonconversational task that will print your listings on the high speed printer at the central installation (see "Non-conversational Task Initiation"). Listings on `SYSDOUT` are automatically put out at your terminal. Example 2 in Part III illustrates this use of the `PRINT` command.

Checking Out and Modifying Programs

In addition to the conversational prompting and diagnostic facilities that the assembler contains to assist you in debugging your source program, you are also provided the option of requesting an internal symbol dictionary (`ISD`) in your object module. An `ISD` allows you to make full use of the program control system (`PCS`) with which you may examine and modify various parts of your program during execution. You can use `PCS` commands and statements to perform one, or any combination, of these:

1. Request display of data fields and instruction locations within your object program, specifying these items by their symbolic names as used in the source language program.
2. Modify variables within your program, specifying these variables by their symbolic names and specifying the new value for each variable.
3. Specify the statements within your program at which execution is to be stopped or started. When program execution has been stopped, you may intervene, as described in items 1 and 2, before you direct resumption of program execution.
4. Specify the statements within your program at which the actions described in 1 and 2 are to be automatically performed.
5. Obtain the values of your program's variables at a specified point in its execution, with the variables formatted according to their types.
6. Establish logical (true or false) conditions which allow or inhibit the actions described in items 3, 4, and 5.

The use of program control facilities will greatly simplify the preparation of source programs, because many functions previously source-coded can conveniently be made available after assembly. Neither the pcs commands nor the modifications they may make in your program remain part of the stored object module; they are removed when the module is unloaded. pcs is discussed in greater detail in Appendix B.

Multiterminal Task (MTT)

In addition to the single terminal mode of operation described above, in which *you* initiate your task, TSS has a multiterminal mode under which the task is initiated by an MTT administrator. A multiterminal task is designed to permit a large number of users at different terminals to share the same task. The task must be specially prepared for execution within the MTT environment, and should, most appropriately, be an application which can be used simultaneously by many users. Logging on with the intention of connecting to such an application program requires the use of the BEGIN command in place of the LOGON command. A complete description of the MTT facility may be found in *IBM Time Sharing System: Multiterminal Task Program and Operation*, GC28-2034.

Nonconversational Mode

You will probably want to assemble and run some programs without being in direct communication with the system while they are being processed; these call for nonconversational processing. The manner in which

you define what you wish done in these tasks will vary with the type of nonconversational task you are creating.

Initiating Your Task

There are several ways in which you can initiate a nonconversational task from either a conversational task or from another nonconversational task (see Figure 1).

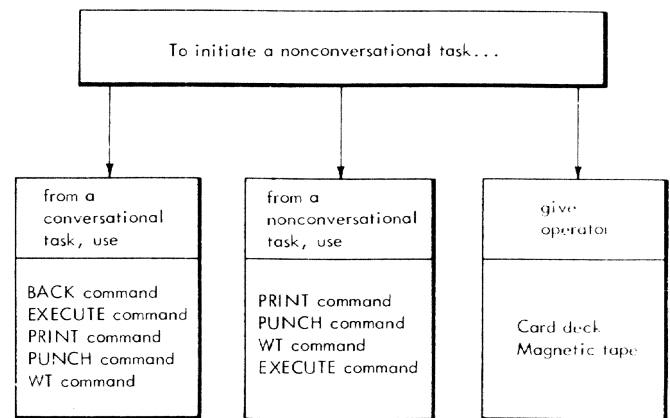


Figure 1. Nonconversational Task Initiation

PRINT, PUNCH, WT—You can issue PRINT, PUNCH and WT commands in either a conversational or nonconversational task. These commands initiate nonconversational tasks that transfer data between a direct-access device and a printer, card punch, or tape unit, respectively. Several of these commands may be issued within a single task; each will set up a separate and independent nonconversational task (see Figure 2). Example 2 in Part III illustrates the use of the PRINT command.

EXECUTE—You can issue the EXECUTE command in a conversational task to initiate a nonconversational task (see Example 2 in Part III). The EXECUTE command names a prestored sequence of commands that is to be executed as, and acts as the SYSIN data set for, a nonconversational task. This sequence must begin with a LOGON command and end with a LOGOFF command, and it must be prestored so that it can be retrieved by name. (The SYSIN data set used by the EXECUTE command, or any other nonconversational task, can contain an EXECUTE command, thus permitting initiation of additional nonconversational tasks.) The nonconversational task thus initiated is treated as a separate task, independent of the conversational (or nonconversational) one in which you set it up, and with which you may now continue (see Figure 3).

BACK—The BACK command is used when you want to switch a conversational task to nonconversational mode; it is described under “Mixed Mode.”

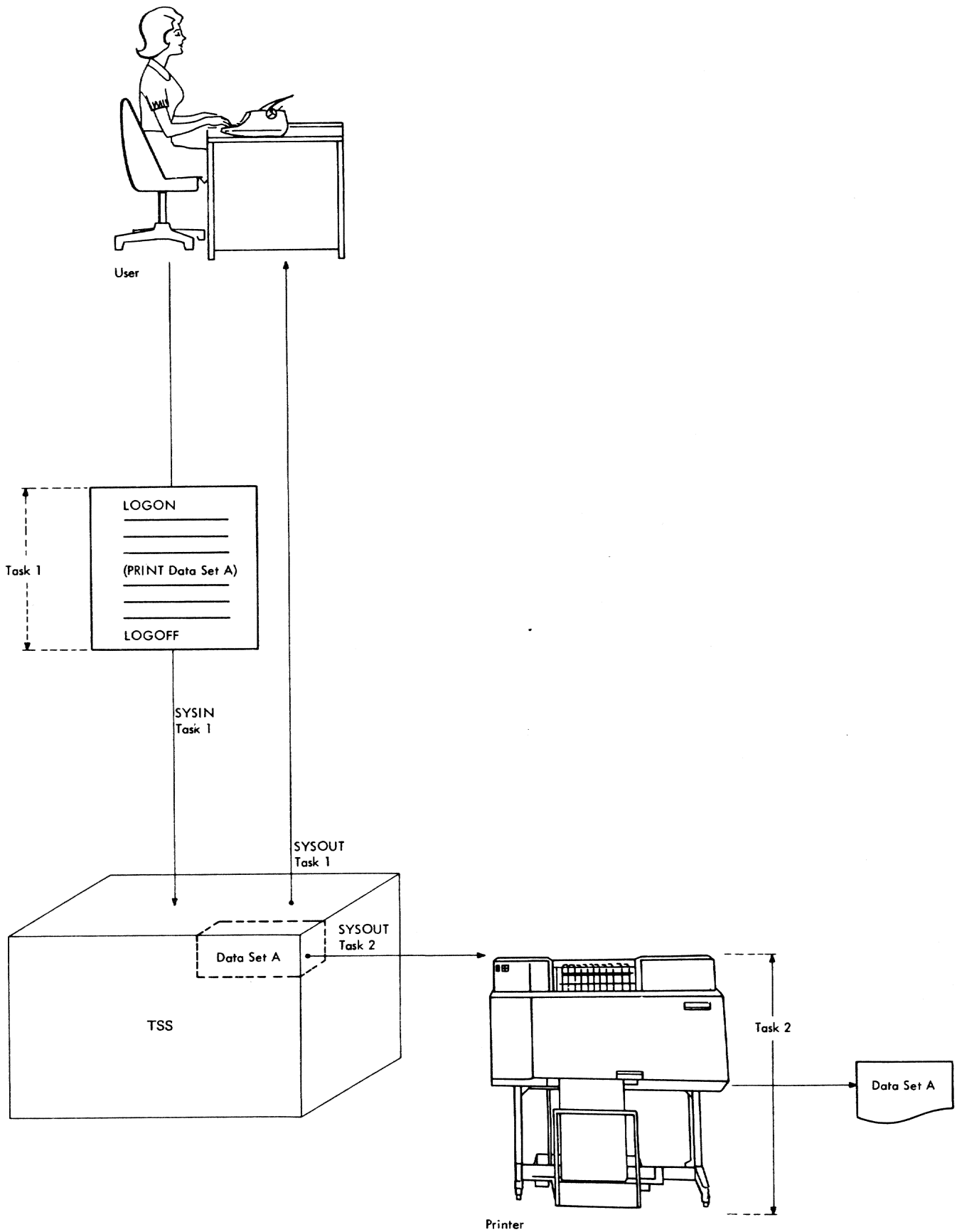


Figure 2. Nonconversational Task Initiated by PRINT Command

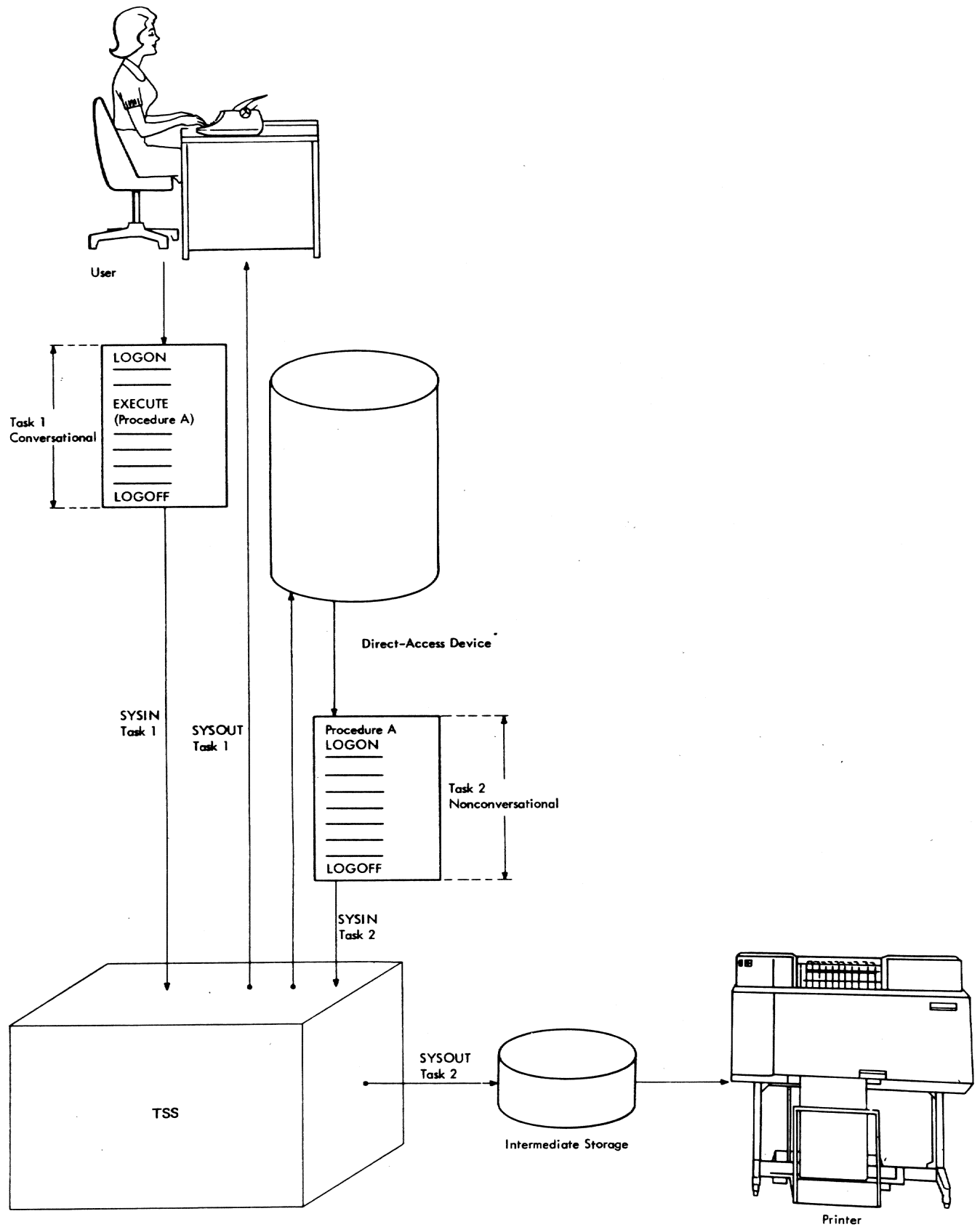


Figure 3. Nonconversational Task Initiated by EXECUTE Command

Operator-assisted—You can also have the operator initiate nonconversational tasks for you by supplying him with a card deck or magnetic tape; the contents of the deck or tape will depend upon what you want done. If you want to enter data into the system for later use, i.e., prestore it, the task set up by the operator will transfer the data from the input medium to a direct access device and catalog it so that it is later available to you by its name. If you want to enter a card deck command procedure, the task that is set up by the operator will execute the commands in the command procedure you have defined (see Example 12 in Part III).

Executing Your Task

Regardless of which method of initiation you use, the nonconversational task you create is assigned a batch sequence number and is executed as soon as the required resources are available. You can issue the `EXHIBIT` command to determine the status of your previously initiated nonconversational tasks.

During execution of a nonconversational task, there is no communication between you and the system. The system analyzes, in sequence, each command of the `SYSDATA` set and, if it is valid, executes it. If a command is invalid, the system terminates the task. When execution of a nonconversational task begins, it cannot be interrupted by pressing your `ATTENTION` key, as your terminal is not associated with the task.

Any listings you request are automatically written on `SYSDATA` (with no record kept in the system), unless you have specifically asked for a list data set. When a list data set is requested, its printing is accomplished, as in conversational processing, by the issuance of the `PRINT` command, which sets up another separate nonconversational task.

Terminating Your Task

The execution of nonconversational tasks (except those initiated by `PRINT`, `PUNCH`, and `WT` commands) is terminated when their `LOGOFF` command is executed. The system then automatically prints out the task's `SYSDATA` data set. For nonconversational tasks, the `SYSDATA` data set consists of the commands from `SYSDATA` that were executed, any data that your program writes to `SYSDATA`, and (if no list data set was specified) diagnostic messages and whatever listings you requested. If a list data set was specified, diagnostic messages will be printed with your listings.

Tasks created by the `PRINT`, `PUNCH`, and `WT` commands terminate when the data transfer is complete. You may also terminate any of your nonconversational tasks by issuing a `CANCEL` command, identifying each task to be terminated by its batch sequence number. Your task may also be cancelled from the operator's console via its batch sequence number.

Mixing Modes

You can begin a task at your terminal, and then issue a `BACK` command to have the task's execution completed in the nonconversational mode. Before issuing the `BACK` command, you must have stored a `SYSDATA` data set that is to function as the command procedure and, if desired, input data for the nonconversational portion of your task. The `SYSDATA` data set must not contain a `LOGON` command (because you have already logged on), but it should end with a `LOGOFF` command.

When you issue a `BACK` command for a task, the system checks that it can provide sufficient resources to continue your task nonconversationally. If it cannot, the system will reject your request; you may then try to initiate the switch later.

You do not initiate a separate task when you issue the `BACK` command; you still have only one task in the system. This task, however, is nonconversational and has no connection with your terminal (see Figure 4). If the system accepts your `BACK` request, it establishes the nonconversational task, assigns a batch-sequence number to that task, and writes that number out at your terminal; after that your terminal is inactive. You must then log on again if you wish to initiate a new conversational task at your terminal.

Remote Job Entry (RJE)

An additional facility for running nonconversational tasks in TSS, available at some installations, is the remote job entry (RJE) facility. With RJE it is possible to enter batch jobs at remote terminals in the same format as that used at local, on-line card readers. Printed output is then returned to the originating station, unless another station or local high-speed printer is specified. A complete discussion of this facility may be found in *Time Sharing System: Remote Job Entry*, GC28-2057.

Task Management Commands

These commands allow you to initiate, terminate, or change the system's operation in your behalf. In conversational mode, communication takes place at your terminal. In nonconversational mode, the information is sent to the task's `SYSDATA` data set. The facilities provided are summarized below.

ABEND—unloads all modules in your virtual storage and returns your task to the status that existed immediately after the `LOGON` process.

BACK—changes the mode of your conversational task to nonconversational.

BEGIN—notifies the system that you wish to connect to an MTT application program.

CANCEL—terminates the execution of a nonconversational task prior to its normal end.

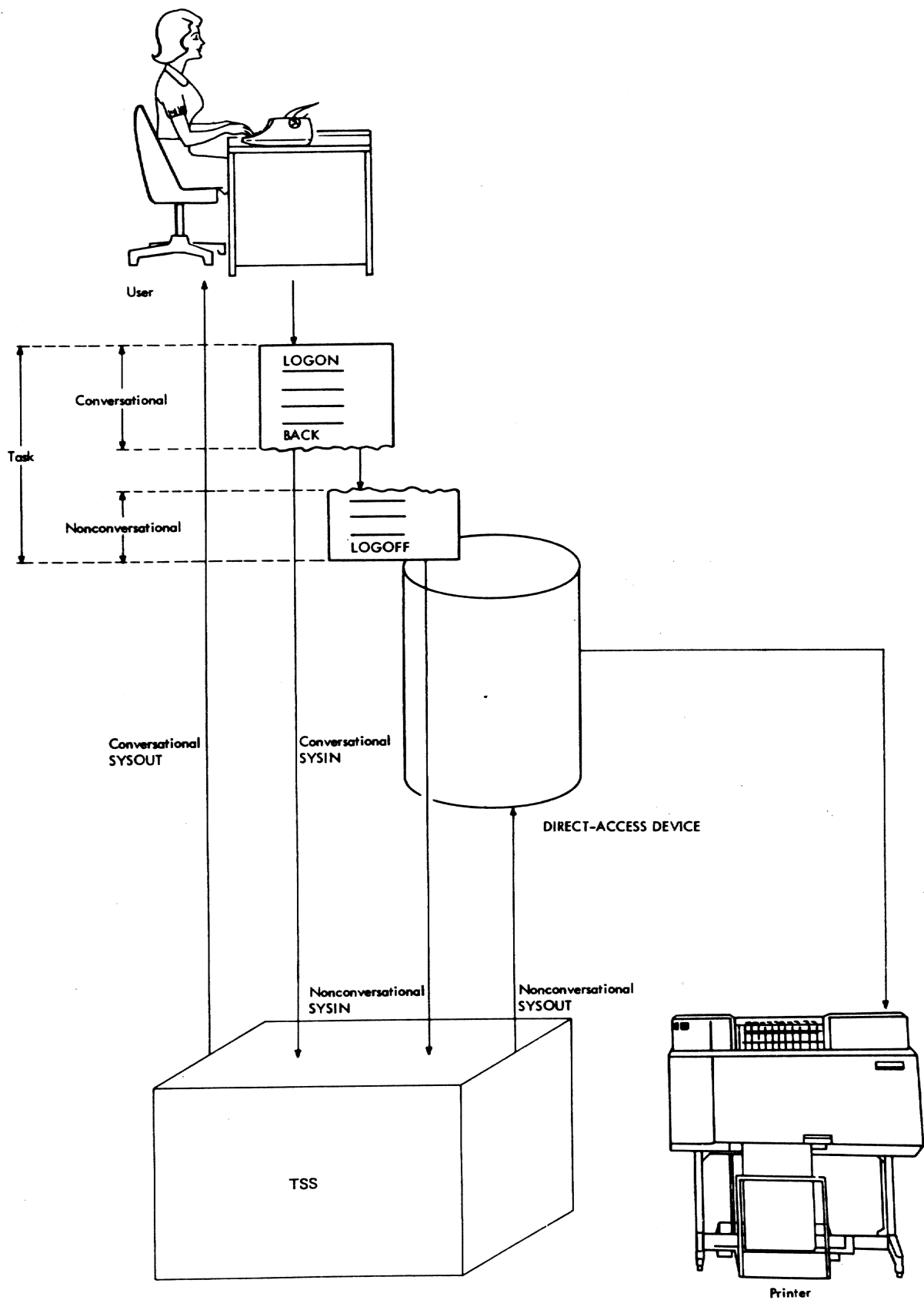


Figure 4. Converting a Conversational Task to Nonconversational Mode Using the BACK Command

CHCPASS—notifies the system that you wish to change your password.

EXECUTE—initiates an independent nonconversational task using a prestored and cataloged command stream.

LOGOFF—notifies the system that you wish to terminate your task.

LOGON—identifies you to the system so that you may begin your task.

SECURE—identifies and reserves types of input/output devices needed for private data sets (in nonconversational tasks *only*).

TIME—establishes a time limit in virtual storage for the execution of a task; it can be changed by you during your task.

USAGE—requests a summary of system resources available to you, as well as those you have used since JOIN time and since the current LOGON.

ZLOGON—performs a user-defined function immediately after LOGON operations have been completed.

Data Set Management

TSS provides you with facilities for systematic and convenient management of your data sets. These data set management facilities make it possible for you to: identify your data sets; efficiently store and retrieve them within the system; share them with other users; copy, modify, and erase them; and define their existence and use in the system.

Naming and Cataloging Your Data Sets

Naming Your Data Set

A data set name uniquely identifies a data set. It is in the form of one or more symbols separated by periods. For example, the data set name AR.TWO.DESIGN consists of three components that are delimited by periods to indicate a hierarchy of categories. Starting from the left, each symbol of the name is a category within which the next symbol is a unique subcategory. A fully qualified name identifies an individual data set. A partially qualified name identifies a group of data sets.

For example: If AR.TWO.DESIGN is a fully qualified data set name, AR and AR.TWO are partially qualified names identifying groups of data sets, one of which is AR.TWO.DESIGN. The group AR.TWO is a subgroup of AR.

These basic rules are to be observed by you in the design of data set names:

1. Each component, or simple name, can consist of from one to eight alphanumeric characters; the first must always be alphabetic.
2. A period must be used to separate components.
3. The maximum number of characters (including periods) in the data set name is 44. For data sets used

exclusively within TSS, you are limited to 35 characters, because the system automatically prefixes each name with your eight-character user identification followed by a period. For data sets to be interchanged with OS or OS/VS, you can employ 44-character data set names. These data sets, however, cannot be cataloged in TSS without being renamed.

4. The maximum number of single-character qualification levels to a single-character basic name is 17, for data sets used in TSS. Normally, however, you will employ only a few qualification levels.
5. The fully qualified data set names in each user's data set name-structure must be unique, and each must uniquely identify one data set.

System Catalog

The system catalog is a special data set that resides on one or more direct-access devices. It is used for filing data set descriptions that must be stored within the system so that, once a data set is created and cataloged, it can subsequently be located by using only its name. To understand the structure and significance of the system catalog, you must become familiar with the basic concepts of data sets, their naming and residence.

Catalog Structure: The system catalog is organized into a hierarchy of indexes: a master index, which consists of a set of user identification codes, one for each user who has been joined to the system; and a collection of separate indexes, each of which is subordinate to one of the user identification codes in the master index. Going down the hierarchy, each of the indexes will correspond to a level of qualification in the data set name structure you have adopted. In effect, the system has *its own catalog* and you have *your own*.

When your data set is cataloged, the required indexes are established in your user catalog, in accordance with the fully qualified name of the data set (see Figure 5). An index is established for each level of qualification. The master index points to the highest-level index of your catalog. This index, and each index thereafter, points to the location of the next lower index. The lowest-level index contains a data set descriptor (DSD) which points to the data set control block (DSCB) which, in turn, points to the specific volumes and pages on which the data set is located.

At the time your user identification is placed in the master index, another special entry is created in your catalog called your USERLIB. Your USERLIB is your own private library for object programs. Except for your USERLIB, you control all entries in your catalog by the way you name your data sets and by the way you use the cataloging and uncataloging facilities of the system.

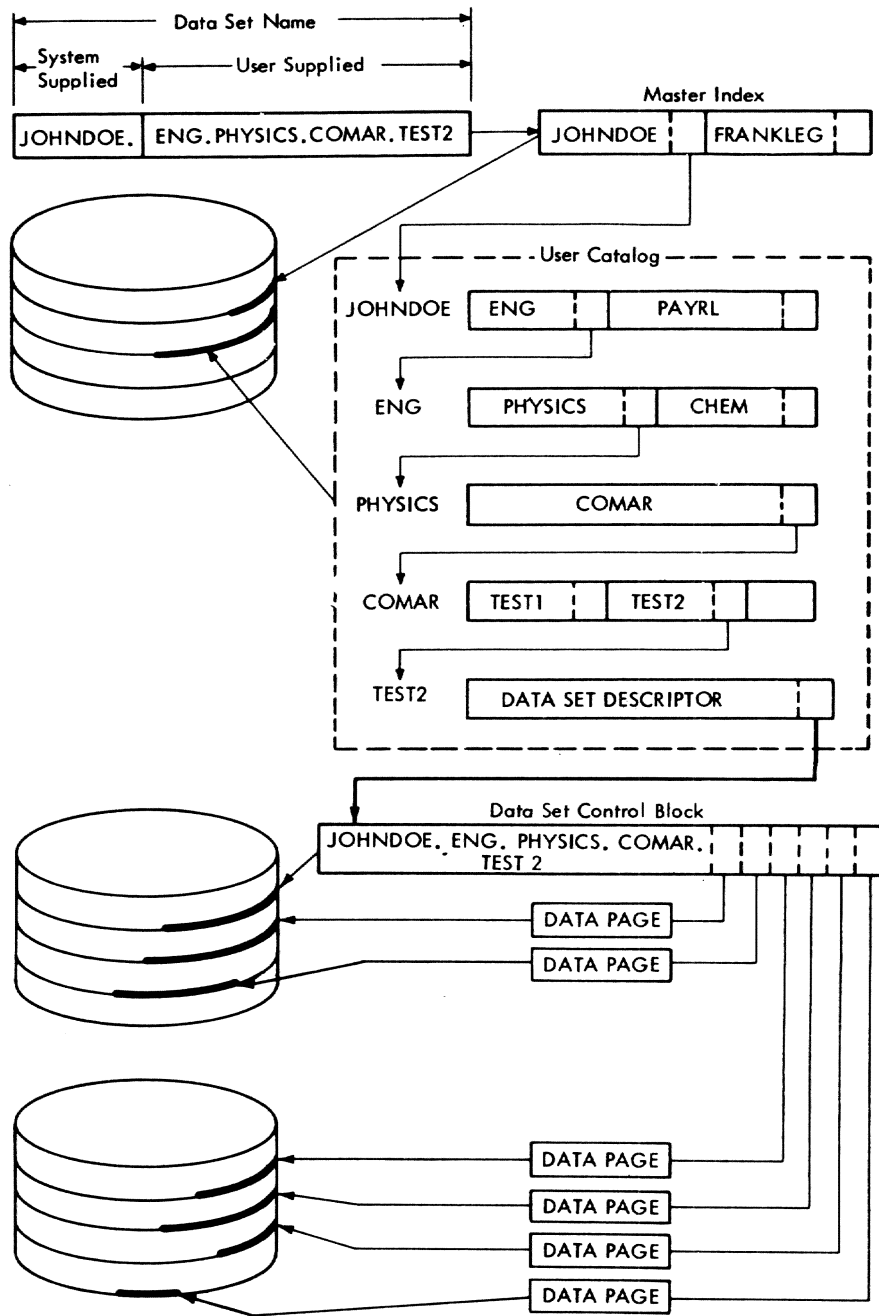


Figure 5. System Catalog Concept

Some of these facilities are for entering, removing, and renaming catalog entries; others are for indicating which data sets can be shared by others, and to what extent. These facilities are described later in this part.

Generation Data Groups: The cataloging facilities of TSS provide an option that assigns numbers to individual data sets in a sequentially ordered collection, thereby allowing you to catalog the entire collection under a single name. You can distinguish among successive data sets in the collection without assigning a

new name to each data set. Because each data set is normally created from the data set created on the previous run, the new data set is called a generation, and the number associated with it is called a generation number. The entire structure of data sets of the same name is called a generation data group (GDG). You can refer to a particular generation by specifying, with the common name of the group, either the relative generation number or the absolute generation name of the data set. The use of generation data groups is illustrated in Example 22 in Part III.

Cataloging Your Data Set

You can catalog and uncatalog data sets in several ways. Sometimes cataloging is automatic; in other cases, you must issue a CATALOG command to catalog the data set. All data sets with virtual storage organization (VAM) are automatically cataloged when they are created.

The CATALOG command may be used to catalog a physical sequential (SAM) data set, or to alter the entry of a previously cataloged data set (e.g., to rename a cataloged data set or to change the version number of a generation data group member). If you employ generation data groups (GDG), you must initially use the CATALOG command to set up the structure for the GDG name, number of generations to be retained, disposition of old generations when the specified number of retentions is exceeded, etc.

When you catalog a data set, you can specify either read-only or unlimited access. You can always erase your own data set, but if you have cataloged it with read-only access, you cannot write into it, thus ensuring against accidentally overlaying data.

You can use the DELETE command to remove a catalog entry for a data set if:

1. You want to remove the catalog entry of a data set from the catalog but not erase it, and the data set resides on a private volume.
2. You want to remove the catalog entry of a data set you are sharing from your catalog (because you no longer have a need to share that data set).

The ERASE command can also be used for uncataloging. ERASE removes the catalog entry, and erases the data set as well if it resides on a direct-access volume. (Erasing means making the storage space of the data set available for other use.)

So that you can specify whether you want to be given one data set name at a time when you enter either the ERASE or DELETE command, provision is made to set the value of DEBPROMPT (a value contained in your User Profile) to either YES or NO by using the DEFAULT command (see "User Profile" in this part). If the value was set to YES, and you specify a partially qualified data set name, the system will issue a prompting message giving you the opportunity to specify that all remaining data sets under that level name are to be erased without prompting. Otherwise, you will be given one data set name at a time for disposition. If the value was set to NO, all data sets grouped under this partially qualified name will be erased or deleted without individual presentation. If you specify a fully qualified name, the data set will be erased or deleted no matter what was specified for DEBPROMPT.

You have the option in certain commands, as PRINT and PUNCH, if a cataloged data set is involved, of speci-

fying whether it is to be erased or not after the output operation.

Data Set Organization

A data set's organization defines the overall relationships of the component records into which the data set is logically subdivided. The component records are called logical records, because each is a logical entity containing information for the problem program that is to process the data set. In TSS, there are two fundamentally different types of data set organizations: virtual storage data sets and physical data sets.

Virtual Storage Data Sets

Data sets with a virtual storage organization reside only on direct-address volumes; they are automatically cataloged by the system when they are created. You create, read, and process these data sets on the basis of the logical records they contain. The system, however, uses the page as the unit of transfer between the direct-access device and your virtual storage. Virtual storage data sets may have any of these organizations:

Virtual sequential (vs): In a virtual sequential data set, the order of logical records is determined solely by the order in which the records were created. In creating this type of data set, you provide the system with a stream of records. The system organizes the data into pages, and stores the data set on a direct-access device. After the data set has been created, you can read back the records in the order in which they were created merely by requesting one record after another.

Virtual Index sequential (vi): In a vi data set, the records are organized in sequence based on a data key associated with each record. The data key may be a control field that is part of the record (such as a part number), or it may be an arbitrary identifier (such as a line number) that is the beginning of each logical record, and is added to each record to give it a unique key.

One special form of virtual index sequential data set is the *line data set*, with a maximum of 132 bytes per record. A line data set is organized by line number, where each line is a record and is prefixed with the line number as its key. Source programs are line data sets. You can inspect and display these data sets by line number using the LINE? command. Other commands enable you to effect replacements, insertions, and deletions on line data sets.

Because records in the virtual index sequential organization have logical and physical relationships, you can request the system to perform any or all of these operations:

- Retrieve or create (in a manner similar to that for sequential organization) logical records whose keys are in ascending collating sequence.

- Retrieve or create individual records whose keys are in any order. (Processing is, of course, slower here than if it were being done in the collating sequence, because a search is required to locate each record's position.)
- Add records, with new keys, to the data set. The system automatically locates the proper position in the data set for the new control and makes all necessary adjustments for subsequent retrieval in logical sequence.
- Delete existing records from the data set. The system automatically updates the page locators (and the page directory if necessary) and makes the space used by the deleted records available for other uses.
- Update existing records in the data set, either expanding or contracting their size.

Virtual Partitioned (vp): A vp data set is used to combine individually organized groups of data into a single data set. Each group of data is called a member, and each member is identified by a unique name. Program module libraries are a good example of a vp data set. Your USERLIB is organized this way, and the compiled object modules you store in USERLIB are its members.

The partitioned organization allows you to refer to either the entire data set (via the partitioned data set's name) or to any member of that data set (via a name consisting of the name of the data set qualified by the member name in parentheses).

Example: A partitioned data set named INVENTORY whose members consist of monthly data sets such as JAN, FEB, and MAR, could be referred to in one of the following manners:

INVENTORY	Entire library of inventory data
INVENTORY(JAN)	January inventory data
INVENTORY(FEB)	February inventory data
INVENTORY(MAR)	March inventory data

The partitioned data set may be composed of vs or vp members or a mixture of both. Individual members, however, cannot be of mixed organization.

You can assign additional names, called aliases, to each member, and subsequently locate a member on the basis of either the member name or any of its aliases. The partitioned data set organization is ideally suited for storage of libraries of programs or other groups of data that are frequently referred to together.

Physical Sequential Data Sets

Data sets with a physical sequential organization can reside on either direct-access or magnetic tape volumes. The logical records in these data sets have an organization which is determined solely on the basis of their position relative to the beginning of the data set. When these records are processed in TSS, the block is used

as the unit of transfer to and from the device involved. A block can consist of one or more logical records. Data sets with physical sequential organization are called ps data sets. You will use ps data sets each time you process magnetic tape in your programs. Volumes containing data sets with ps organization can be interchanged among TSS and IBM OS or OS/VS installations.

Data Set Residence

Maintaining Program Libraries

A program in TSS can consist of one or more object modules that are linked and are executable. A program consisting of only one object module is stored entirely within one library; a program that consists of several object modules may reside in different libraries, depending on how you have stored them. During linkage editing and during execution, the system can automatically retrieve all required object modules if you have defined the libraries that hold them.

There are four categories of program libraries:

- System library (SYSLIB)
- User library (USERLIB)
- User-defined job libraries
- Other user-defined libraries

System library, accessible to all users, includes TSS/360 programs and the installation's standard subroutines and functions.

User library is the private library that was assigned to you when you were joined to the system. This library is available each time you log on. If you do not employ job libraries in a task, all the object modules resulting from your use of the language processors are placed in your user library. In addition, if no special library is assigned for the output of the linkage editor, the linkage editor object modules are placed in your user library.

Job libraries are defined for use within one task when you want to restrict your user library to checked-out standard object modules that you execute frequently or that you use frequently in the buildup of other object modules; or you may want to use a special object module that will temporarily replace one you normally would use.

The program library list, a defined hierarchy of those libraries, is set up at log-on time, and consists of the user library and SYSLIB. Job libraries designated for a task are removed from the hierarchy at log-off time.

The library at the top of the list always automatically receives all object modules resulting from language processing. If no job libraries are defined, the library at the top of the list is always the user library. However, you can specify that a job library be added to the program library list to receive the output of the language processors. You do this by issuing a DDEF command that defines the job library, and contains the

JOBLIB operand (see Example 7 in Part III). When this command is executed, the name of the job library is placed at the top of the program library list. That library then receives all subsequent outputs of the language processors until another job library is defined (and it is placed at the top of the list), an existing job library is moved to the top of the list using the JOBLIBS command, or a RELEASE command is issued for the job library.

In addition to using the program library list to store object modules, the system uses this list to control its order of search when looking for object modules that must be loaded at execution time. The library at the top of the list is searched first, then the next, etc.; finally the user library and SYSLIB are searched.

The program library list can also be used, during linkage editing, to define the following for the system:

- The library that is to receive the link-edited object module.
- The sequence in which libraries are to be searched by automatic call if the system must find other object modules that will complete the link-edited object module.

For example, if no other library is specified, the output of the linkage editor is stored in the library currently at the top of the program library list. If another library is specified at the time the linkage editor run is defined, that library receives the link-edited object module. That library can be the user library, any of the current job libraries, or a special library defined by a DDEF command that has no JOBLIB operand.

Using Public and Private Volumes

When a data set is stored in the system, it resides on one or more direct-access or magnetic-tape volumes; the identification of these volumes is available in the system catalog. A volume can be a removable disk pack or a reel of tape. It should also be noted that physical sequential data sets are not cataloged when they are created (the CATALOG command must be used to accomplish this), and their residence is restricted to private volumes.

At system startup time, the system operator designates each direct-access device and its associated volumes as either public or private. A public volume is a direct-access volume that must be mounted prior to the beginning of system operation, and must remain mounted during operation; it can be used by many users concurrently. A private volume can be mounted or dismounted at any time prior to or during operation; it is restricted to use in one task at a time. For more than one of your tasks (say one conversational and one or more nonconversational) to access the same data set residing on a private volume at the same time, PERMIT and SHARE commands must be issued to give your

userid sharer status, despite the fact that the userid is the same. Magnetic-tape volumes are always classified as private volumes; direct-access volumes can be either public or private. Magnetic tape volumes and physical sequential formatted direct access volumes are always classified as private volumes; VAM (Virtual Access Method)—formatted direct access volumes may be either public or private.

The system assumes that you desire storage on a public volume unless you specifically ask for storage on a private volume. Public volumes are always mounted and available for allocation to your task, thus providing the most efficient type of storage for data sets which must be retained in the system.

If you employ private volumes, you may need to wait for devices on which to mount those volumes. Each time a request is made for a device on which to mount a private volume, the system must determine whether or not it can honor the request, based on the current requirements throughout the system for that device.

Volume and Data Set Labels

All volumes used to store cataloged data sets must contain standard volume and data set labels to permit the system to locate the data sets.

All public direct-access volumes automatically contain standard volume and data set labels, which the system creates and maintains. Direct-access volumes can also contain user's data set labels, which are processed by user-written routines.

Magnetic-tape volumes may contain (1) standard volume and data set labels, or (2) standard volume and data set labels plus user's data set labels, or (3) they may be unlabeled. All labels, on magnetic-tape volumes with standard labels, are also created and maintained by the system; user's data set labels are processed by user-written routines.

Detailed explanations of standard labels and their use on direct-access and magnetic-tape volumes are given in *Data Management Facilities*.

Tailoring TSS to Meet Your Needs

You can tailor the operating environment within which your task is performed to meet your specific needs without affecting anyone else's use of the system. You can rename existing commands and keyword operands, and provide your own default values for omitted operands; these alterations can be temporary or permanent.

User Profile

The system maintains a special data set, called a user profile, which contains the defaults for operands, synonyms for command names and operand keywords, and command symbol values. The first time you log on, the prototype user profile in the system library (SYSLIB) is copied into your virtual storage. You can use this pro-

file as it stands, or you can change it with the `DEFAULT`, `SYNONYM`, or `SET` commands.

- `DEFAULT` allows you to change system-supplied default values for command operands.
- `SET` allows you to define a command symbol that may be referenced or modified by other commands.
- `SYNONYM` allows you to rename commands, operands, expressions and values.

The changes made with these commands will affect only the current task's operating environment. If you want these changes to be included in your permanent user profile, you can issue the `PROFILE` command to copy this altered user profile from virtual storage into your `USERLIB`. Example 30 in Part III illustrates the use of these commands. For a detailed description of user profile management, see *Command System User's Guide*.

Defining Your Data Set

Before a problem program or a command can process a data set, the system requires complete information about the data set, including the manner in which it is to be processed. You can make this information available from a variety of sources; for example:

DEFINITION OF PROBLEM PROGRAM I/O DATA SETS	DEFINITION OF DATA SETS PROCESSED BY COMMANDS
1. I/O source statements	1. <code>DDEF</code> commands
2. <code>DDEF</code> commands or <code>DDEF</code> macro instructions (which in turn may use information provided by your user profile)	(which in turn may use information provided by your user profile)
3. System catalog	2. System catalog
4. Problem program	3. Command itself
5. Data set label	

The following paragraphs describe how to use these sources to identify data sets for the system.

Data Control Block

The information required to identify a data set to be processed by a problem program is contained in the data set's data control block (`DCB`), a group of contiguous fields in your program. The `DCB` contains these types of information:

- The name of the `DDEF` command (the `ddname`) to be associated with the data set
- Type of data set organization
- Record-format information (format type, record length, etc.)
- Device-dependent options
- Exit addresses:

`SYNAD`: synchronous error exit address, for automatically transferring control to a user-supplied routine if an uncorrectable I/O error occurs.

`EODAD`: end of data set address, for automatically transferring control to an end-of-data routine when end of an input data set is detected during processing.

`EXLST`: address of an exit list in which (in the case of sequential data sets intended for interchange with OS or OS/VS you can define the address of routines for creating and verifying the user data set labels that can be employed on magnetic-tape and direct-access volumes; or the address of a routine to be used at `OPEN TIME` for modifying the data control block.

- Working storage used by the access method routines.

You request the system to begin construction of a data control block at assembly or compilation time. There are various ways in which the fields in a data control block may be filled. For example, some may be filled in at assembly/compilation time. Others may be filled in during program execution from user or system-supplied information. In any event, the fields are filled in according to a fixed priority scheme based on the source supplying the information. The sources of information and their priorities are:

1. Your program
2. `DCB` macro instruction
3. `DDEF` command (and system catalog)
4. Data set label

Not every source is valid for every field. These two general rules apply: (1) When a field has been filled by a higher priority source, it cannot be replaced by information from a lower priority source. (2) A field that has not been specified by a higher priority source, may be filled in by a lower priority source if that source is valid for that field (see Figure 6).

1. You can include one or more routines in your program, to add to or modify the contents of a data control block. Generally, these routines can be called at any time during execution. The restrictions on the use of a problem program to modify a data control block are described under the `DCB` macro instruction in *Assembler User Macro Instructions*. These facilities simplify problem program modification of a data control block in the assembler language:

- A `DCBD` macro instruction (described later) can be used to symbolically refer to the fields of a data control block by their field names.
- At `OPEN` time, the system provides a `DCB` exit during which the problem program can, in effect, call upon a user-written `DCB` modification routine that will update the `DCB` and return control to `OPEN`.

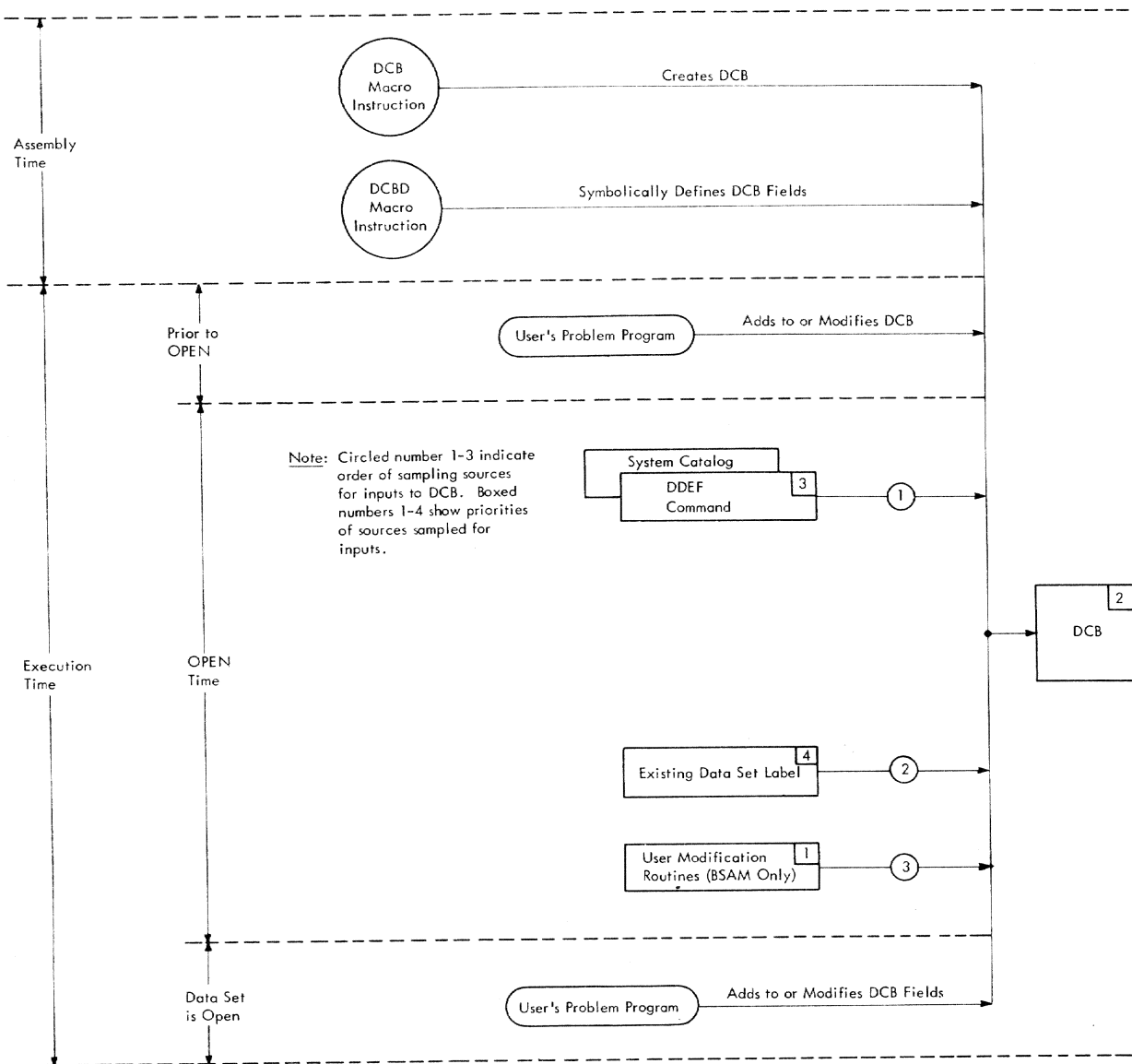


Figure 6. Flow of Information to and from a Data Control Block

2. The DCB macro instruction can be used to fill in any, or all, fields at assembly; however, once a field is specified in this way, it can be changed only by your problem program.
3. At OPEN time, information from the DCB operand of a DDEF command can be, and frequently is, used to complete the data control block. This process is shown in Figure 6. Any field that is empty at OPEN time, and for which the DDEF is a valid source, can be filled by DDEF information. If the data set to be processed is an input data set that was previously catalogued, its DDEF command will indicate this and the system will retrieve certain data control block information (e.g., the data set's location) from the system catalog.
4. Also, at OPEN time a field of the data control block for an existing data set can be filled with information from the data set's label if this field has not been specified by any other source and the data set

label is a valid source for that field.

This procedure for data control block definition and modification can be greatly simplified for most applications; the flexibility is provided for the special case where data control block changes must be made between assembly time and the time a data set is actually processed. In these situations, the facility to modify allows you to change only the required fields; you do not have to restate the entire data control block each time a program is run. To facilitate data control block modification, you should include in the data control block only those fields needed for program execution—others should be left empty for possible subsequent fill-in. Once the data set is closed, the DCB is restored to its pre-OPEN state. When the data set is opened again, the system starts the fill-in procedure based on the data control block information provided by the DCB macro instruction and any problem program modification to the DCB since the last CLOSE.

Identification of Assembler Data Sets

A data set, to be processed by a problem program written in assembler language, must be identified by a DCB macro instruction in the source program. The assembler uses the DCB macro instruction to set up the data control block at assembly time, and, if you have supplied operands in the DCB macro instruction, to enter those operands into the data control block.

The number of operands that can be specified in the DCB macro instruction depends upon the organization of the associated data set.

The symbolic chain that relates the macro instructions used for data retrieval and storage (GET, PUT, READ, WRITE, etc.) to their associated data sets is shown in Figure 7. It also illustrates how information in the data control block and DDEF command identify assembler data sets to the system.

Data Definition Commands

The DDEF command is used to identify a data set during execution of a task and to define its requirements for system resources. It may also be used to define a job library, to define a special data set for the DUMP program control command, to complete the data control block of a program at execution time, and to concatenate input data sets (i.e., relate them so that several different data sets can be read in as if they were one).

Any DDEF command you issue during a task remains in force throughout the task, unless you enter a RELEASE command for that data set. The RELEASE command is the opposite of the DDEF command: the DDEF command sets up task control information for the data set; the RELEASE command removes that information. If the DDEF required a private volume to be mounted, RELEASE can be used to free it for assignment to another task.

The DDEF commands used in a session or in a command procedure need not be issued directly during the session or be included explicitly in the command procedure. One, or more, or all, of the DDEF commands needed can be made available by using the CDD (call data definition) command.

The CDD command is used to retrieve one or more DDEF commands from a data set; you must supply the name of the data set. If this is all you specify, the system assumes that you want to use all the DDEF commands in the data set. If you want to use only selected DDEF commands, you identify each by its ddname. You should prestore frequently used DDEF commands in a data set and call them in this fashion wherever possible. CDD can be used in either conversational or non-conversational tasks.

In a conversational task, the system analyzes the data set's requirements at the time the DDEF command is issued. It will then attempt to allocate the required resources (and, for private volumes, issue any mounting

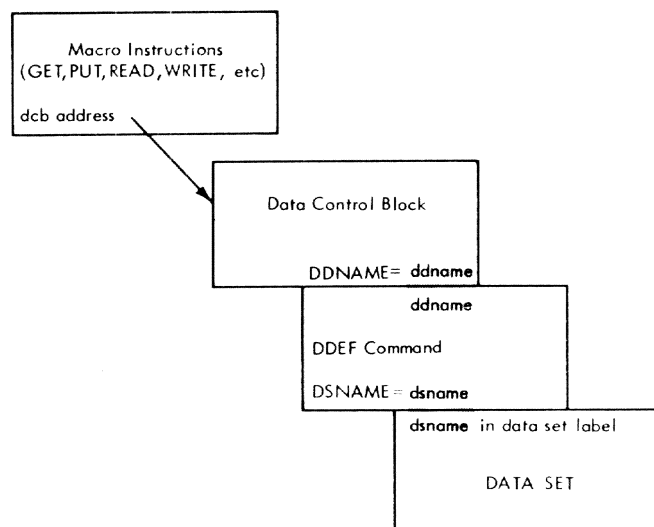


Figure 7. Data Set Identification

messages that are required) at that time. If the required space cannot be allocated, or the specified volumes cannot be mounted, the system will inform you, thereby allowing you to proceed with other work.

The DDEF command is illustrated in the examples, and is discussed in detail in Appendix E.

System Inquiry Commands

There are several commands in TSS with which you can request specific information from the system regarding your data set, catalog, and job libraries. If you issue these commands in a conversational task, the information is displayed at your terminal; in a nonconversational task it is sent to the task's SYSOUT data set. The facilities provided by these commands are summarized below.

The PC? command is used to request the presentation of a concise listing of all or part of your cataloged data sets. You will be presented with the data set name, the access (owner access if owned by you; user access if owned by someone else), and the user identification of the owner if it is not owned by you. The PC? command can conveniently be used at regular intervals without an operand to present the entire catalog listing for help in housekeeping.

The DSS? command is used to request presentation of the status of one or more cataloged data sets. Information is given pertaining to sharing status, access status, device type and volume identification, creation and expiration dates, and data set organization. PC? should be used when a general listing of data sets is required; DSS? should be used only when more detailed information is required about the status or organization of data sets.

The `POB?` command is used to request a list of the member names (and, optionally, the alias names and other member-oriented data) of individual members of virtual partitioned data sets, such as your user library and your cataloged job libraries.

The `DDNAME?` command can be used to request a display of all `DDNAMES` you have defined within a task or just those for the job libraries you have defined. Used with the `JOBLIBS` command, it can be used to review and modify your `JOBLIB` chain.

The `LINE?` command requests presentation of a line or a series of consecutive lines of a line data set that you own or are now sharing. The data set must either be cataloged or defined by a previous `DDEF` in the current task.

Data Set Establishment

The Text Editor

The Text Editor is a powerful command repertoire provided for the `TSS` user. These commands provide for manipulating lines of information, either within an existing region or line data set, or as they are being entered dynamically into a region or line data set. With the text editing facility, you can create and edit data sets simultaneously. You can correct, insert, or delete lines; or segment a data set. You can transfer lines from one data set to another. You can also display lines of a data set at your terminal and nullify previous changes that were made by the text editor commands. *Command System User's Guide* provides a complete discussion of all the facilities of the Text Editor, including a description of the commands available.

Prestoring Data in the System

Data that is prestored in the system has been created as virtual sequential data sets, or virtual index sequential data sets, or members of partitioned data sets, and then stored on public direct-access volumes. System operator initiated commands prestore data on public volumes. Normally, the `DATA` command stores a data set on a public volume. However, you can cause a data set to be prestored on a *private volume* by issuing a `DDEF` command (with `VOLUME=PRIVATE` operand) prior to the `DATA` command. In either case, the data set is automatically cataloged at the time it is created.

Data Command

The `DATA` command prestores data sets entered from the terminal (conversational mode) or from the `sysin` data set (nonconversational mode). This method is particularly effective for relatively small amounts of data, such as small program input data sets, `sysin` data sets for nonconversational tasks and data sets consisting of `DDEF` commands.

The `DATA` command builds a virtual sequential or virtual index sequential data set; or adds to an existing virtual sequential or virtual index sequential data set. A detailed description of the use of this command is contained in *Data Management Facilities*.

Operator-Assisted Input

You can also enter data by means of nonconversational tasks that are initiated by the system operator.

Example: You can have a command procedure entered (and set up a nonconversational task for execution), or you can create a virtual sequential or virtual index sequential data set and store it on a public direct-access volume. The tasks are initiated by an `RR` command issued by the operator.

You can submit data sets on punched cards to the system operator, who can then enter the data into the system via a high-speed reader designated by the system. Two types of input data sets are permitted: command procedure data sets and data card data sets. The two types can be interspersed, one following another, in any order within a single batch of punched cards. The rules for setting up these data sets are given in the following paragraphs.

NOTE: If you want to enter a command procedure together with the data sets it refers to, you must make sure the data sets precede the command procedure. The system, generally, will try to execute the command procedure as soon as it has been read.

Command Procedure Data Set: This contains all commands needed to run a nonconversational task. Each command is punched on a new card, in exactly the format used to enter commands from a terminal. The first card of the data set must be a `LOGON` command; the last card, `LOGOFF` (see Figure 8). A `SECURE` command card must immediately follow `LOGON` if any private devices are required. Other commands are as required for the particular task.

When the command procedure data set is read in, it becomes the `sysin` data set of a nonconversational task and is executed as soon as the necessary system re-

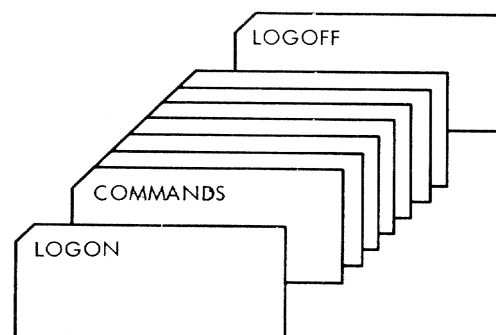


Figure 8. Organization of Command Procedure Data Set

sources are available. After execution, the `sysin` data set is eliminated. It does not remain cataloged nor does it remain in system storage.

Data Card Data Set: This contains any information you want to put into public storage as a cataloged data set. It may also include commands. You may enter a command procedure data set in this way, if you do not wish to have it set up as nonconversational task after entry; or you may prestore `DDEF` commands. When this type of data set is read, a virtual sequential or virtual index sequential data set is created and cataloged in public storage, where it will reside until it is erased. Unlike the command procedure data set, it is not executed upon being read.

The organization of a data card data set is shown in Figure 9. The first card of the data set must be a data descriptor card; the last one a `%ENDDS` card. Each data card corresponds to one logical record.

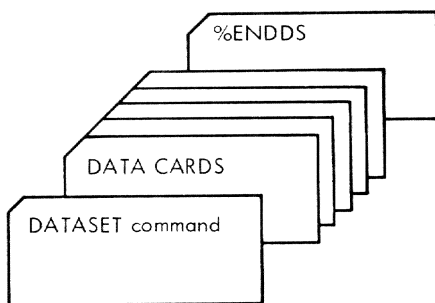


Figure 9. Organization of a Data Card Data Set

The data descriptor record identifies the data set as a data card data set. It must start in column 3 with the operand `DATASET`, followed by the user identification and the data set name under which it is to be cataloged. The following information can be supplied to the system on the same card:

- The code to be used in reading the cards (`EBCDIC` or `BCD`).
- The first card column to be read in creating the data set.
- The last column to be read.
- The organization of the new data set. If `LINE` is specified, a `VISAM` data set will be created, each line prefaced by a seven character line number. If left unspecified, a `VSAM` data set will be created. The system assigns 100 as the first line number in a `VISAM` data set and increments by 100. The maximum number of lines (data records) is 100,000.
- The action to be taken by the system (accept the record, skip the record, or end reading of the data set) if an uncorrectable read error occurs.

The terminating card, `%ENDDS`, must be punched starting in column 3.

The format of the data descriptor record is given in *Command System User's Guide*.

Sharing and Protecting Your Data Sets

You cannot gain access to any data sets other than your own unless you have system authorization to do so, or have been given authorization by another user who owns the data sets involved. In TSS, cataloged data sets may be shared or unshared.

A shared data set is cataloged and belongs to one user, but may be shared with other users on any of these bases:

1. *Read-only access:* The sharer may read the data set, but may not change it in any way.
2. *Read-and-write access:* The sharer can both read and write to the data set, but he may not erase it.
3. *Unlimited access:* The sharer, in effect, can treat the data set as his own; he may even erase it.

You issue a `PERMIT` command to designate the other users who may share your data sets, which data sets they may share, and the type of access those users may have. You may also use the `PERMIT` command to change any access authorization you may previously have given. A separate `PERMIT` command is required for each level of access to a data set, but any number of sharers may be authorized for the same level of access with a single `PERMIT` command. After issuing the `PERMIT` command, you must issue an `ABEND` or `LOGOFF` command to update your catalog entry regarding who may share which data sets and to what level of access. The sharer will not have access to your data set until this update has been effected.

To gain access to a data set for which he has been previously authorized, the sharer must issue a `SHARE` command. To see how this command is used, assume that the sharer's user identification is `JMC200` and that he has been permitted to share one data set. The data set is owned by user `RKP100`, and is cataloged by him under the fully qualified name `ENG.PHYSICS.COMAR.TEST2`. Assume also that the sharer wants to name the data set `ENG.CHEM.NOTAR.TEST1`. He would then issue the `SHARE` command shown at the top of Figure 10. In response to that command, the system would search the owner's catalog to see if the prospective sharer is authorized. If he is not, the command is ignored and the user is informed that he may not share the data set; if he is authorized, the system places in the sharer's catalog a pointer to the *owner's (complete) name of the data set*. This is a sharing descriptor that bears the name by which the sharer refers to the data set. Whenever the *sharer* subsequently refers to the data set by his name, the system locates the data set by the search procedure shown on Figure 10.

The name assigned to a data set by its owner is not affected in any way by other users who assign their

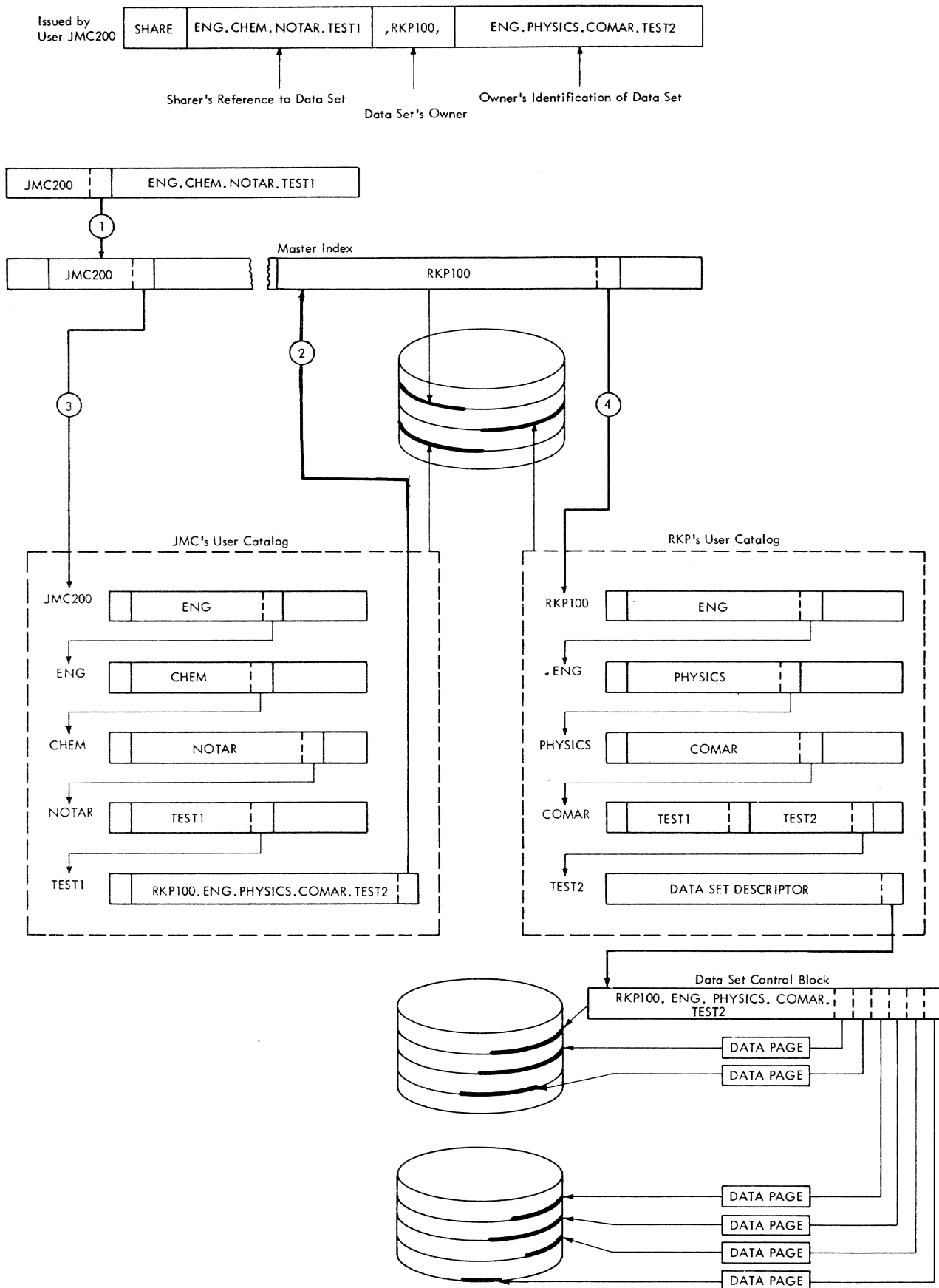


Figure 10. Sharing of Cataloged Data Sets

own names to that data set. Sharers may use the same name as the owner because user identifications are unique in the system.

A sharer's catalog entry is not removed if the owner erases or uncatalogs a shared data set. Each sharer must use the `DELETE` command to update his own catalog (i.e., to get rid of sharing descriptor entries). When deleting a shared data set, the user must enter the complete sharing descriptor; there is no prompting for individual data sets under each sharing descriptor.

If the owner allows another user to share all his data sets, the sharer can refer to them as a group in the `SHARE` command by specifying his name for the collection and then specify `ALL`. In this case, the system places a pointer to the owner's user identification in the sharer's catalog, thereby making all of the owner's catalog available to the sharer. Similarly, groups of data sets with names having common higher-order components can be specified by using partially qualified names for the owner's catalog.

To be concurrently accessible by more than one task, a data set must be cataloged and must be a virtual storage data set.

Data Set Manipulation

Copying, Modifying, and Erasing Data Sets

You can use the `CDS` command to make a copy of any data set (or any member of a partitioned data set) to which you have access except data sets whose records are in undefined format, such as program module libraries. You can also use it to renumber the lines of a line data set as it is being copied. Both the original and copy data sets must be defined in your task.

You can use the `MODIFY` command to insert, delete, replace or inspect records of a `VI` data set, or of a `VI` member of a `VP` data set. You have to identify the record to be modified (by its key or line number). You can review modifications, and play back corrected lines for confirmation of your changes.

You can use the `VV`, `VT`, and `TV` commands to copy your data sets depending on their origin and desired destination. The `VV` command causes a `VAM` data set to be copied into public storage. The `VT` command causes a `VAM` data set to be reproduced on 9-track magnetic tape. The `TV` command retrieves and writes into public storage a data set previously written on 9-track magnetic tape by the `VT` command.

You can use the `ERASE` command to erase data sets that you own. If you are sharing someone else's data set, you can remove its entry from your catalog by issuing the `DELETE` command, and erase it if you have unlimited access.

Transferring Data to Standard Output Devices

The three commands used to transfer data sets to specific output devices are:

`PRINT`—initiates transfer of a specified data set to the printer for high-speed printout.

`WT`—initiates transfer of a specified data set to a magnetic-tape device for recording in a format suitable for printing either off-line or via the `PRINT` command.

`PUNCH`—initiates transfer of a specified data set for card punching.

You can issue these commands in either conversational or nonconversational tasks. Each command requests the system to initiate an independent nonconversational task to perform the function of the command. Once that task is set up, the issuing task continues.

PRINT Command

The `PRINT` command prints data sets on the computer center's high-speed printer. It processes data sets that were created by using basic sequential, virtual sequential or virtual index sequential access methods.

The data set may or may not be cataloged; if not, you must define it by a previous `DDEF` command; if cataloged, you can specify in the `PRINT` command that the data set is to be erased after printing has been completed. The `PR` macro instruction may also be used to perform these functions. System programmers can also invoke the `PRINT` command to print data sets written in ASCII¹ code. See *IBM Time Sharing System: System Programmer's Guide GC28-2008*, for a description of this facility.

WT (Write Tape) Command

The `WT` command writes a data set on tape for later processing, either off-line or by the `PRINT` command. It can process, as input, data sets that were created by using either virtual sequential or virtual index sequential access methods. You must give the name of the input data set. If the input data set is not cataloged, you must define it by a previous `DDEF` command. If the input data set is cataloged, you can specify the `ERASE` option of the `WT` command to erase the input data set after the `WT` task is completed. The `WT` macro instruction may also be used to perform these functions.

PUNCH Command

The `PUNCH` command punches a data set on cards, using the installation's high-speed card punch. It can process data sets that were created by using either the virtual sequential or virtual index sequential access methods. The data set may or may not be cataloged. If not, you must define it by a previous `DDEF` command; if cataloged, you can use the `ERASE` option in the `PUNCH` command to specify that the data set is to be erased

¹ The American National Standard for Information Interchange, ANSI X3.4-1968, hereinafter referred to as ASCII.

after punching is completed. The PU macro instruction provides the same options and facilities as the PUNCH command.

See *Command System User's Guide* for a discussion of commands; *Assembler User Macro Instructions* for macros.

Assembler Language Facilities

Input/Output During Program Execution

TSS includes complete program I/O facilities for the conversational and nonconversational modes of operation. In both modes, conventional I/O facilities and dynamic I/O facilities are provided. Depending upon the application, these dynamic facilities can be used alone, or in conjunction with those for conventional I/O.

The principal differences between these two facilities, illustrated in Figure 11, are summarized below.

- | CONVENTIONAL I/O | DYNAMIC I/O |
|---|--|
| 1. Source program must contain all instructions required for I/O operations. In effect, data processing must be preplanned in detail. | 1. Source program need not contain instructions for conventional I/O. All I/O can be achieved via SYSIN/SYSOUT, using Dynamic I/O source statements, and/or Program control commands and statements (Conditional dynamic I/O is possible). |
| 2. Data to be processed must be made available and defined for system prior to program execution. | 2. Data to be processed can be decided upon, based on results of processing; no predefinition of data for system is required. |

- Because program control facilities are equally useful for program checkout and modification, a description of program control commands and statements is given in Appendix B.
- Dynamic I/O facilities peculiar to source language are described under the summary of the assembler language's problem program I/O facilities.

Conventional Problem Program Input/Output

Assembler language users can apply one or more of the facilities shown in Figure 12 to control conventional program I/O. The access method facilities (VSAM, VISAM, VPAM, BSAM, and QSAM) permit data sets to be created and processed, using system macro instructions that are similar to the I/O statements in higher-level languages.

TSS also includes the resident terminal access method (RTAM) and the multiple access method (MSAM).

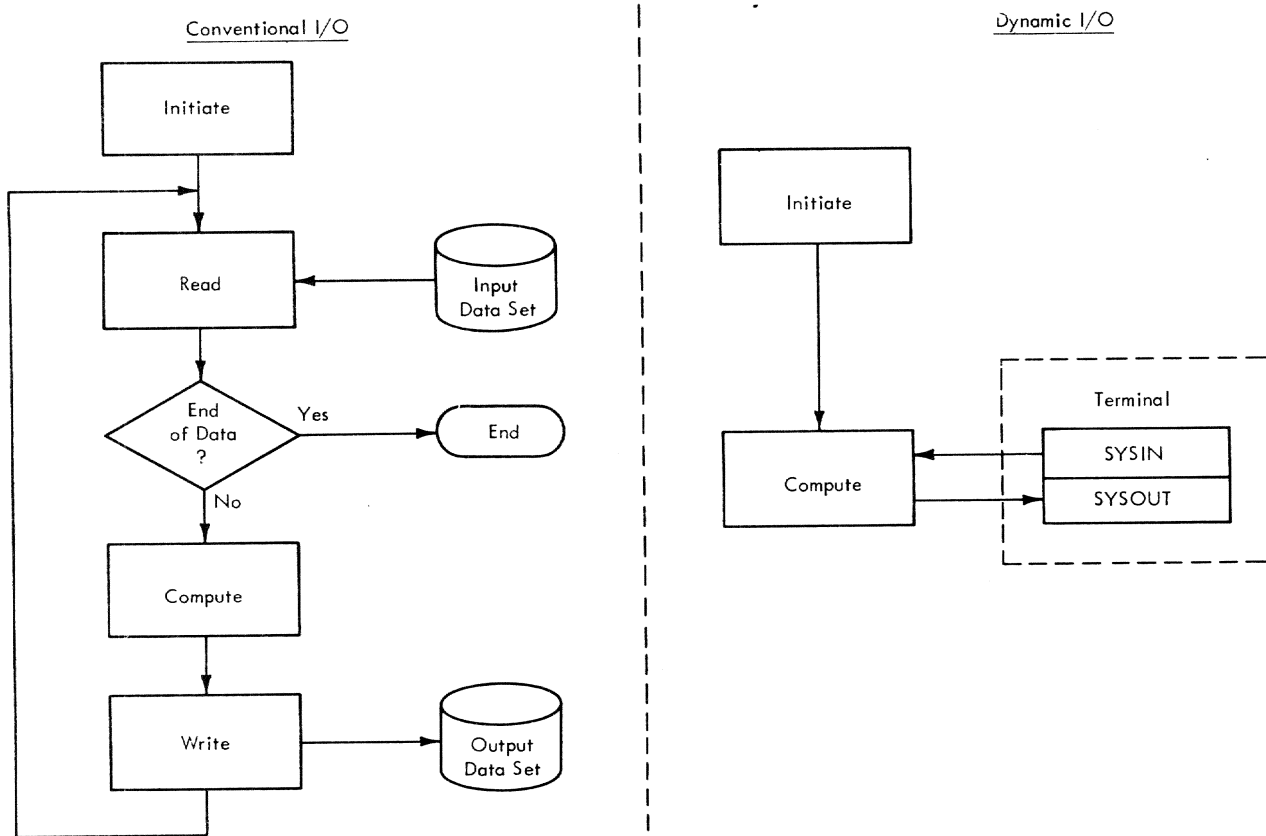


Figure 11. Conventional vs Dynamic I/O

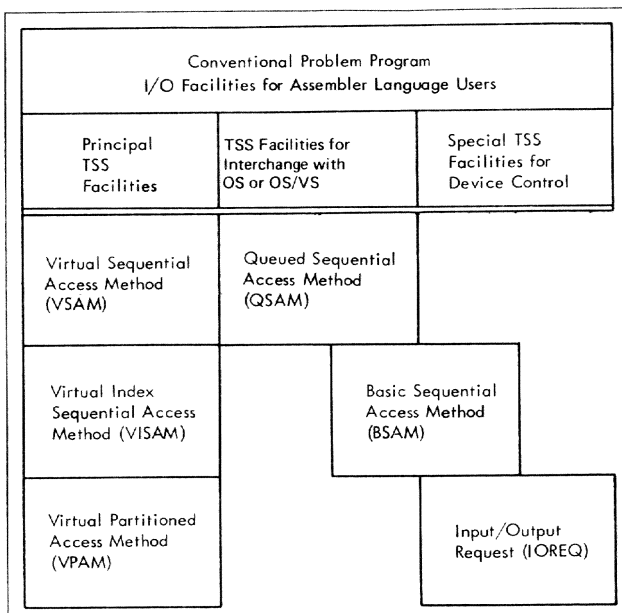


Figure 12. Conventional I/O Facilities

The applications programmer's use of the RTAM facilities is indirect, through the command language. In this publication, the RTAM facilities are considered by describing the effects of inserting commands and data, via `SYSDN`, and of the system's outputs via `SYSDOUT`. MSAM, which can be used only by users in privilege-class E, processes data sets on unit record devices, such as card readers, card punches, and printers. Full descriptions of RTAM and MSAM appear in *System Programmer's Guide*; system programmers generally can use RTAM facilities directly. Depending upon the planning for a specific installation, the MSAM facilities for control of card readers and punches, and printers may be available to users; those facilities are described in *Assembler User Macro Instructions*.

The I/O request (IOREQ) facility permits the control of I/O devices, using system macro instructions similar to those used for machine-level programming (i.e., IOREQ allows you to write your own channel programs).

The virtual storage access methods (VSAM, VISAM, and VPAM) are specifically designed for the programming environment of TSS. They are simple to use, yet they provide a wide range of facilities for data storage and retrieval.

The basic sequential access method (BSAM) is intended primarily for data set interchange with OS, OS/VS, or when the data set is to be written on magnetic tape. Also, BSAM can be used for applications requiring limited device control. For special applications that call for more direct device control, the I/O request (IOREQ) facility can be used.

The relationships between the data-set organization and the data-management system macro instructions of

each I/O facility are summarized in Figure 13. Complete information on these macros is available in *Assembler User Macro Instructions*. A discussion of access method facilities is contained in *Data Management Facilities*.

General Service Macro Instructions

The general service macro instructions (used to identify and prepare data sets for processing, and to terminate their processing) are essentially the same for all access methods. The mnemonics and short titles for these macro instructions are:

- `DCB`—Define data control block for I/O operations
- `DCBD`—Provide symbolic names for fields of a DCB
- `OPEN`—Prepare a DCB for processing
- `CLOSE`—Disconnect a data set from user's problem program

DCB Macro Instruction

The DCB macro instruction is included in a source program to reserve space for a data control block and, if you desire, to place in that data control block, at assembly time, information describing the characteristics and intended uses of a data set. Table 1 briefly describes each of the operands in a DCB macro instruction. Also, it indicates the access methods in which each operand can be specified, if the DCB macro instruction is the source of the information. Table 1 also gives the valid alternate sources for each operand.

A DCB macro instruction is required for each data set processed by the assembler language's conventional I/O facilities.

DCBD Macro Instruction

A DCBD macro instruction is required if you want to refer to the fields of a data control block by their symbolic names in your program. A dummy control section (`DSECT`) will be generated at assembly time to provide a symbolic name for each field that can be specified in any data control block. By properly initializing your base registers you can thus refer symbolically to any or all fields of the data control blocks in your program. Only one DCBD macro instruction may be issued during an assembly; if you issue more than one the instruction will be ignored and a diagnostic message will be issued.

OPEN Macro Instruction

The OPEN macro instruction completes one or more specified data control blocks so their associated data sets can be processed.

OPEN is common to all access methods; however, other aspects of the OPEN process (label processing, specification of the volume disposition when volume switching occurs, identification of the I/O access characteristics of the data sets involved and the related `DUOPEN` macro instruction) differ with the access method being used and the intended processing of the data itself.

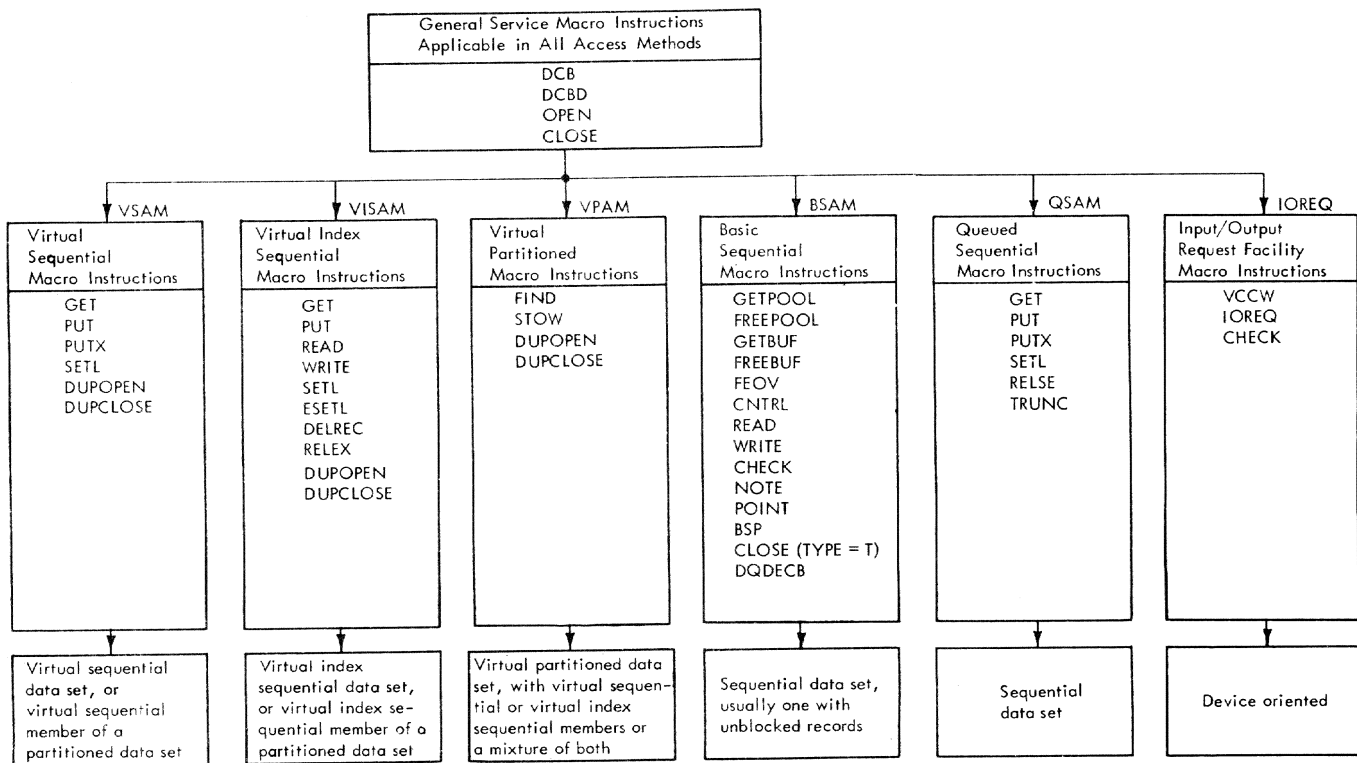


Figure 13. Summary of Data Management System Macro Instruction and Data Set Organizations

CLOSE Macro Instruction

A CLOSE macro instruction logically disconnects a data set from your program and should be issued when a data set's processing is completed.

Duplexing a Data Set

Critically important virtual storage (VAM organized) data sets on public volumes may be safeguarded against loss of data by duplexing them. The DUOPEN macro instruction links a primary and secondary data set together such that all changes to the primary data set are immediately reflected by corresponding changes in the secondary data set. At any instant, therefore, the data sets should be exact duplicates. If read errors occur in the primary copy, the secondary copy is used for error recovery. To ensure that the two data sets are always identical, you should never perform an operation on either data set without invoking the duplexing mechanism.

You duplex a data set by issuing a DUOPEN macro instruction instead of the OPEN macro instruction, specifying as operands the addresses of the data control blocks for the primary and secondary data sets. Whenever possible the two data sets should be allocated space on separate physical volumes. The data set properties specified in both data control blocks, and their

corresponding DDEF statements, must be consistent.

The external storage required when duplexing a data set is exactly double that required by non-duplexed data sets, and the time required for data output is almost doubled. To save on time and resources, you should therefore be judicious in your duplexing requests.

Data sets that have been opened with a DUOPEN macro instruction are closed with a DUPCLOSE macro instruction, with the address of the two data control blocks as operands.

Dynamic Input/Output for the Assembler Language

In addition to the program control facilities available to all users, the following macro instructions may be used for problem program communication with the system I/O streams:

- GATRD (read record from SYSIN)
- GATWR (write record to SYSOUT)
- GTWRC (write record to SYSOUT with ASA carriage control character)
- GTWAR (write record to SYSOUT and read response from SYSIN)
- GTWSR (write record on SYSOUT and read record from SYSIN)

Table 1. DCB Operands, Their Specification, Access Methods, and Alternate Sources

DCB OPERAND	SPECIFIES	APPLICABLE ACCESS METHOD								VALID ALTERNATE SOURCES			
		VSAM	VISAM	VPAM	BSAM	IOREQ	QSAM	MSAM	TAM	USER'S PROGRAM	DDEF COMMAND	DATA SET LABEL	
DDNAME	Symbolic name identical to that used in ddname operand of DDEF command associated with data set	X	X	X	X	X	X				X		
DSORG	Data set organization	X	X	X	X	X	X				X	X	
RECFM	Record format information	X	X	X	X	X	X				X	X	X
LRECL	Logical record length	X	X	X	X		X				X	X	X
EODAD	Address of user's end-of-data routine for input data sets	X	X	X	X		X				X		
SYNAD	Address of user's synchronous error exit routine (entered when an uncorrectable error occurs in I/O operation)		X	X (only for VISAM members)	X	X	X				X		
KEYLEN	Key length		X	X (only for VISAM members)	X	X					X	X	X
RKP	Displacement of key from first byte of logical record		X	X (only for VISAM)							X	X	
PAD	Space to be left on each page of virtual index sequential data set (to allow subsequent insertions)		X	X (only for VISAM members)							X	X	X
MACRF	Type of macro instructions used in processing data set (GET, PUT, READ, WRITE, etc.)				X		X				X	X	
DEVD	Device on which data set resides plus, for some device types, device-dependent information (data code, tape density, etc.)				X	X	X				X	some device dependent information	some device dependent information
OPTCD	Optional service desired, write with validity check (for direct-access devices only)				X		X				X	X	X
BLKSIZE	Maximum block length				X		X				X	X	X
IMSK	Number code indicating what system error recovery and recording procedures (if any) are to be invoked				X		X				X	X	
EXLST	Address of user's exit list				X		X				X		
NCP	Number of consecutive READ, WRITE, or IOREQ macro instructions issued before CHECK macro instruction				X	X					X	X	
BUFNO	Number of buffers				X						X	X	
BFALN	Buffer alignment				X						X	X	
BUFL	Buffer length				X						X	X	
EROPT	Option to be executed if an error occurs						X	X				X	
BFTEK	Buffer technique				X				X		X	X	
PRTS	Print spacing option					X		X				X	
STACK	Card stacker selection					X		X			X	X	
MODE	Mode of operation					X		X			X	X	
TRTCH	Recording technique for 7-track tape				X						X	X	
BUFCB	Buffer control block address				X						X		

- **PAUSE** (switch conversational task from program mode to command mode)
- **COMMAND** (switch conversational or nonconversational task from program mode to command mode)
- **SYSIN** (write and/or read a message in **SYSIN/SYSOUT**)

GATRD

The **GATRD** macro instruction reads a line data set record from your **SYSIN** and places it in your specified area. In conversational mode, the system prints an underscore on your terminal typewriter and unlocks your keyboard. The program containing **GATRD** then waits for you to insert a record. If no record is inserted, the task is terminated.

In nonconversational mode, the system refers to the **SYSIN** data set and reads its next record. You must arrange the records in the **SYSIN** data set so that the appropriate record is obtained by the system in response to each **GATRD** macro instruction. If the input record exceeds one line, a **GATRD** macro instruction is required for each line.

GATWR

The **GATWR** macro instruction writes a record to your **SYSOUT** from a user-specified area. In conversational mode, the record is printed on the terminal typewriter; in nonconversational mode, the record is stored in the task's **SYSOUT** data set.

GTWRC

The **GTWRC** macro instruction writes a message on the user's **SYSOUT**, with **ASA** carriage control character. Either Type I or Type II linkage is used, depending upon the privilege class of the user's program.

GTWAR

The **GTWAR** macro instruction writes a record from a user-specified output area to **SYSOUT**, and then reads a record from **SYSIN** into a user-specified input area. In conversational mode, the output record is printed at your terminal, and the program issuing **GTWAR** waits for you to insert the input record. If no record is inserted, the task is terminated.

In nonconversational mode, the system writes the output record to the task's **SYSOUT** data set, and reads the next record in the **SYSIN** data set. It is your responsibility to have the appropriate record available for each **GTWAR** macro instruction. If the input record exceeds one line, a **GATRD** macro instruction is required for each additional line.

GTWSR

The **GTWSR** macro instruction may be used only in the conversational mode; the system will terminate the

task if an attempt is made to execute a **GTWSR** macro instruction in the nonconversational mode. The **GTWSR** macro instruction prints the output message on your terminal typewriter and waits for you to provide the input record, which, when entered, will be stored by the system in the area specified in the **GTWSR** macro instruction. If the input record exceeds one line, a **GATRD** macro instruction is required for each additional line.

SYSIN

The **SYSIN** macro instruction services the program in which it appears by providing information about the current operating task. This is accomplished by retrieving input (i.e. either a command or data) from the Source List or the **SYSIN** device for the task. A user can alter the action of the **SYSIN** routine by entering the system command prompting string (usually an underscore followed by a backspace) following the prompting string of the **SYSIN** macro routine produced at the terminal.

PAUSE

The **PAUSE** macro instruction switches a conversational task from program mode to command mode, while still retaining program control. A message specified in the **PAUSE** macro instruction is typed at your terminal. Control is then returned to you, who can then enter any commands. Any system output generated by a command issued after the **PAUSE** is typed at your terminal. After each command is executed, the system prompts you for the next command. To resume a previously interrupted **CALL** command (one that was executing the object module containing **PAUSE**) you issue another **GO** command. This **GO** can specify that the interrupted object module be resumed at the point of interruption, or at any other point, or a new object module can be called and its execution begun. If a **PAUSE** macro instruction is encountered in a program executing in the nonconversational mode, the message is written on **SYSOUT**, and program execution continues.

COMMAND

The **COMMAND** macro instruction has a function similar to **PAUSE**; however, it can be executed in either conversational or nonconversational tasks. In a conversational task, **COMMAND** has the same effect as **PAUSE**.

In a nonconversational task, the system refers to the **SYSIN** data set when **COMMAND** is executed. You can prestore any commands you want in the **SYSIN** data set, to subsequently control the system. Any system messages resulting from the execution of these commands are sent to the task's **SYSOUT** data set. The program execution is resumed by a **GO** command.

The **LINE?** command can also obtain output dynam-

ically. One or more lines from a line data set that belongs to you, or that you are currently permitted to share, can be specified in this command. The `LINE?` command can be issued in either the conversational or nonconversational mode. In conversational mode, the specified line or group of lines is printed at your terminal; in nonconversational mode, the specified line or group of lines is written on the task's `SYSDATA` data set.

Table 2 summarizes the processing rules for input data through use of the input `GATE` macro instructions (`GATRD`, `GTWAR`, and `GTWSR`). Table 3 summarizes the processing rules for output data through use of the output `GATE` macro instructions (`GATWR`, `GTWAR`, and `GTWSR`).

Communication with the Operator

These macro instructions may be included in assembler-written problem programs to communicate with the system operator:

- `WTO` (write-to-operator),
- `WTOR` (write-to-operator-with-reply).

These macro instructions should be used only in programs with specialized I/O routines to request operator intervention.

Communications with the System Log

The system log is a data set that is maintained by the system on a direct-access device. Its characteristics are established according to the needs of an installation, and are defined at the time that the system is generated.

Sources of information for the system log are:

- The operator, who may enter any noteworthy events that occurred on his shift (`MESSAGE` command).
- Assembler-written problem programs—`WTL` (write-to-log) macro instruction.

Table 2. `SYSDATA` Records Specified with `GATE` Macro Instructions

DEVICE	SOURCE RULES	DESTINATION RULES
Terminal keyboard	Each record is terminated by end-of-block character (EOB); this character is registered when system detects RETURN key has been pressed and not immediately preceded by hyphen; if necessary to continue record over more than one line, hyphen indicates record is being continued; hyphen does not become part of record; maximum line length: IBM 1052 and IBM 2741—130 bytes; IBM 3277—255 bytes; Teletypewriter Model 35KSR—80 bytes	These macro instructions specify expected length of input record Record is placed in area specified in macro instruction
Terminal card reader	Each record is terminated by EOB, which can be registered in one of two ways: If terminal's EOB switch is ON, EOB code is registered automatically after card is read or when EOB code is detected on card If EOB switch is OFF, an EOB code is transmitted only when detected on card or program tape Cards are 80 bytes long	
Direct-access	Each input record is a single record of a virtual sequential or virtual index sequential data set	

Table 3. `SYSDATA` Records Specified with `GATE` Macro Instructions

SOURCE RULES	DEVICE	DESTINATION RULES
These macro instructions specify length and location of data to be produced as output <code>GATWR</code> , <code>GTWSR</code> , <code>GTWRC</code> , and <code>GTWAR</code> are used for problem program output	Terminal	In conversational mode, output of these macro instructions appears on <code>SYSDATA</code> device Records longer than one line are continued Maximum line lengths: 1052 and 2741—130 bytes; IBM 3277—255 bytes; Teletype Model 35—80 bytes
	Direct-access	In nonconversational mode, output is written on <code>SYSDATA</code> data set for subsequent off-line printing

Commands and Macro Instructions

The following chart (Table 4) shows the commands available to you. The commands are grouped under ten general categories. The chart shows commands

themselves, the corresponding macro instructions (if any), sample usages, and the examples in Part III which illustrate the command. Positional operand notation is used. The Command System User's Guide gives a fuller description of all command formats.

Table 4. Commands and Macro Instructions (Continued)

FUNCTION	COMMAND	MACRO INSTRUCTION	SAMPLE USAGES	EFFECT	ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES
Task Management	Attention Button		(User presses button)	Gains attention of the system for logging at the very beginning of the session.	1-11,13-19, 21,22,24-30
	LOGON		ADUSERID,MYPASS,, ADACCT29	Thereafter during your conversational task, halts current activity. See Appendix D for specific effect. Identifies you to the system for initiation of your task. Here you enter your identification, password, and account number. Confirmation follows and full messages are standard.	All
	CHGPASS		CHGPASS	Notifies the system that you wish to change your password.	2
	BEGIN		CHGPASS NEWPSWD=WORD BEGIN CALC	Notifies the system that you wish to change your password to WORD.	None
	LOGOFF		LOGOFF	Notifies the system that you wish to connect to an MTT application program.	All
	BACK		BACK ALPHA	Notifies system that you want to terminate your task.	11
	EXECUTE		EXECUTE BETA	Switches your conversational task to nonconversational mode. Here you specify the data set ALPHA as the source of further commands.	11
	CANCEL		EXECUTE BETA	Requests the execution in nonconversational mode of a sequence of commands contained in data set BETA, while you continue in conversational mode at the terminal.	7,19
	TIME		CANCEL 4120	Terminates execution of nonconversational task which was assigned batch sequence number 4120.	2
	USAGE		TIME 15	Allocates 15 minutes of processing time to the task before the user is notified by a message at the terminal if in conversational mode; by ABEND if in nonconversational mode.	21
ZLOGON		USAGE	Presents a summary of system resources available to you as well as those that have been used by you since you were first joined and since the current LOGON.	1	
General Data Management	CDD	CDD	CDD MYDDEFS	Causes execution of all the DDEF commands that you placed in a data set named MYDDEFS.	13
	CATALOG	CAT	CATALOG GAMMA,,R	Causes system to create an entry in your catalog for a physical sequential data set, or change an entry. Here an entry is created for the data set GAMMA. By default, the system will recognize it as a new data set, with access = R (read only).	4, 10, 22

Table 4. Commands and Macro Instructions (Continued)

FUNCTION	COMMAND	MACRO INSTRUCTION	SAMPLE USAGES	EFFECT	ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES	
General Data Management			CATALOG DELTA,U,, SIGMA	Here you update (U) your catalog so that the data set SIGMA is cataloged under the name DELTA. The CATALOG command cannot be used for changing access for a VAM-organized data set and the access is therefore defaulted by a comma.		
		CDS	CDS SIGMA, SIGMA2	Copies the data set SIGMA, naming the copy SIGMA2.	18	
		CLOSE	CLOSE IOTA,T	Causes the system to temporarily close the data set, IOTA.		
		DELETE	DEL	DELETE KAPPA	Removes the entry for the data set KAPPA from your catalog.	21
		DATA		DATA EPSILON	Requests the system to build a data set named EPSILON from the data or commands which follow.	11,13,16, 20,23
		DDEF	DDEF	DDEF MYDD,, MYDATA	Defines a data set and describes its characteristics to the system for the current task. The data set exists, or is being created. Here you define a data set named MYDATA. The second comma defaults its organization. The name of the definition is MYDD. Appendix E describes the other parameters.	3-11,13-15, 17,18,20, 22,23
		ERASE	ERASE	ERASE DELTA	Erases data set (releases direct-access storage for other use), and if cataloged, deletes name from catalog. Here you release the storage space of the data set DELTA.	4,6,7,14,21
				ERASE USERLIB (MYPGM)	Here you erase an object program module named MYPGM from your USERLIB.	
		EVV		EVV 2311,387542	Causes a catalog entry to be created for a private VAM volume. Here you specify the device type and the volume serial number.	17
		JOBLIBS		JOBLIBS DDNAME= OMEGA	Causes your JOBLIB, OMEGA, to be moved to the logical top of your library list.	7
		MODIFY		MODIFY PHI	Permits you, with subsequent parameters, to insert, replace or delete records in a VISAM data set named PHI.	4,7
			OBEY	OBEY 'DDEF OUTDD,, OUTDS'	Causes the system to create a JFCB with a DDNAME of OUTDD and a DSNAMES of OUTDS.	31
		PERMIT		PERMIT SIGMA2, ADPAL,RO	Authorizes other user to have access to your data set(s). Here you authorize read-only (RO) access to your SIGMA2 data set to a user whose identification is ADPAL.	18
		RELEASE	REL	RELEASE MYDD	Revokes the data definition established by the previously issued DDEF command named MYDD.	9,10,17
	RET		RET OMEGA,TCR	Causes modification to be made to the catalog entry for your VAM-organized data set OMEGA. It will occupy temporary virtual storage (T) and be deleted when the CLOSE macro instruction is executed (C). Access is changed to read only.	5,6	

Table 4. (Continued)

FUNCTION	COMMAND	MACRO INSTRUCTION	SAMPLE USAGES	EFFECT	ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES
General Data Management	SHARE		SHARE MINE,ADHISID, HISN	Creates entry in your catalog for data set for which owner has granted you authorization with PERMIT command.	18
	TV		TV ABC,XYZ	Here you cause an entry to be created in your catalog under MINE for the data set HISN belonging to a user whose identification is ADHISID.	25
	VT		VT ONE,TWO	Retrieves data set that was written onto tape via VT command (ABC) and writes it on a VAM volume, with name XYZ.	25
	VV		VV FOUR,FIVE	Copies VAM data set (ONE) to magnetic tape as physical sequential data set (TWO). Copies VAM data set (FOUR) onto direct access storage assigning name as FIVE.	25
Bulk Output	PUNCH	PU	PUNCH SIGMA	Causes the data set SIGMA to be punched on cards.	21
	PRINT	PR	PRINT SOURCE.PGM3	Causes the data set SOURCE.PGM3 to be printed on the high-speed printer.	5,9
	WT	WT	WT GAMMA	Causes the data set GAMMA to be written on magnetic tape for subsequent off-line printing.	21
Device Management	SECURE		SECURE (DA=3, 2311) (TA=3, 9)	Reserves devices required for private volumes during execution of nonconversational tasks. This command at the beginning of your sequence of commands for the nonconversational task secures three 2311 disk units and three 9-track tape units.	20
Program Management	LOAD	LOAD	LOAD MAIN2	Transfers the specified object module from its containing library to user's virtual storage.	9
	UNLOAD	DELETE	UNLOAD MAINB	Removes object module MAINB from user's virtual storage.	7,15,17,23
	CALL		CALL MYPG	Here you cause your object module MYPG to be loaded and executed.	5-7,9,10, 11,13,15
	GO		GO	Your program was interrupted. The GO command causes execution to begin at the point of interruption.	8,9
BRANCH		BRANCH NEW	Your program was interrupted. You decide to branch to another entry point (NEW) in your current program.	9	

Table 4. Commands and Macro Instructions (Continued)

FUNCTION	COMMAND	MACRO INSTRUCTION	SAMPLE USAGES	EFFECT	ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES
Obtaining Information About Data Sets	DDNAME?		DDNAME?JOB LIB=N	Causes printing of all DDNAMES and DSNAMES currently defined.	7
	DSS?		DSS?	Causes printing of detailed information about each of your cataloged data sets.	21
	PC?		DSS? PHI,SIGMA PC?	Here you ask for catalog information about PHI and SIGMA. Prints abbreviated descriptions (name, access and, if shared, owner's identification) of all your cataloged data sets.	21
	POD?		PC? IOTA.KAPPA POD?JOB LIBA,ALIAS=Y	Presents information on all data sets with the qualification IOTA.KAPPA. Requests information about a specified partitioned data set. Here you ask for the names and aliases for each member of the partitioned data set JOBLIBA.	21
	LINE?		LINE? SOURCE.MAIN	Causes printing of records from the specified line data set. Here you print the contents of the line data set SOURCE.MAIN at the terminal.	8,9,16
	EXHIBIT		LINE? MU,800, (1200,1900) EXHIBIT UID	Here you print line 800 and lines 1200-1900 of the line data set MU. Causes a display of all active tasks on the system.	7
Text Editor Facilities	EDIT		EDIT DSONE	The Text Editor is invoked. DSONE is the data set name associated with the data set to be edited.	26,27
	END		END	This denotes the completion of editing initialized by an EDIT command.	26,27
	REGION		REGION XYZ	This defines region XYZ in the current data set.	26,27
	DISABLE		DISABLE	Revisions made to a data set after DISABLE are collected in a temporary area.	27
	ENABLE		ENABLE	Revisions made since the last DISABLE are permanent.	27
	CONTEXT		CONTEXT,,ABCDEF, UVWXYZ	The entire data set (current region) is searched, replacing ABCDEF with UVWXYZ.	27
	CORRECT		CORRECT 400 s t e m s 3 7 7 0 @ * \$ * % * y s @	Characters from line 400 of the current region are adjusted as requested. SYSTEM 370 is the resultant line.	27
	UPDATE		UPDATE	Lines entered following UPDATE are inserted into the current region according to the given line number.	26
	EXCERPT		EXCERPT ABC, ABC2	Region ABC2 from data set ABC will be inserted into the current data set.	27
	EXCISE		EXCISE-1	The line preceding the current line pointer location will be deleted, from the current region.	26
	INSERT		INSERT +10	Insertion in the current data set will begin 10 lines beyond the current position, with a default increment of 100.	26
	NUMBER		NUMBER 100,500, 1000,100	The range of lines (100-500) in the current region will be renumbered, beginning with 1000 (also in increments of 100).	27
	LIST		LIST 400,700	Lines 400-700 inclusive of the current region are displayed.	27
LOCATE		LOCATE,, 'ABC'	The entire current region will be searched for the character string ABC.	27	

Table 4. Commands and Macro Instructions (Continued)

FUNCTION	COMMAND	MACRO INSTRUCTION	SAMPLE USAGES	EFFECT	ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES
Text Editor Facilities	POST		POST	Makes all previous editing changes permanent.	27
Program Control	AT		AT MAIN.AB100	Causes notification to be printed on SYSOUT when program execution reaches specified location. Here you request the message when the program MAIN reaches the instruction named AB100.	9
	DISPLAY		AT MAIN.AB100;IF MAIN.AB>MAIN.AC; STOP DISPLAY MAIN.AB	Here you cause execution to stop at the instruction named AB100 if AB is greater than AC. Prints on SYSOUT the current contents of the data field AB in program MAIN.	8,9
	DUMP		DUMP MAIN.AB	Causes the name and contents of the data field AB in program MAIN to be placed in the PCSOUT data set for later printing.	9
	IF		IF M.AC > M.AD SET M.AB = 2	Defines a logical condition (true or false) that must be true to cause execution of the remainder of the IF statement. Here you cause the data field AB in program M to be set to 2 if the current value of AC is greater than AD.	9
	QUALIFY		QUALIFY MAIN	Causes subsequent names to be qualified by MAIN. You can then write .AB instead of MAIN.AB.	9
	REMOVE		REMOVE ALL REMOVE 10	Deletes all previously issued AT commands or PCS statements that include AT commands. Here you specify deletion of the statement to which the system assigned the number 10 when it was first entered.	9
	SET		SET .AB = .AC	Causes specified data field in virtual storage to be changed. Here you set the qualified field AB equal to AC.	8,9
	STOP		STOP	Stops program execution and causes printing on SYSOUT of current instruction location and program status information.	8
User Profile Management	DEFAULT		DEFAULT ACC=R	Access code for the CATALOG command will now be defaulted to read-only.	30
	SYNONYM		SYNONYM SPECIAL= ZLOGON PROFILE	The ZLOGON procedure may now be invoked with either name, ZLOGON or SPECIAL.	30
	PROFILE			The session profile replaces the user profile in USERLIB.	30
	MCAST	MCAST	MCAST CONT=@, CP=///:	The continuation control character is changed to an @ character; the default prompt string is replaced with a series of three slashes and no carriage return.	28
	MCASTAB		MCASTAB INTRAN=Y	Allows you to replace the system's input character translation and switch table with one which you have written for your task.	

Table 4. Commands and Macro Instructions (Continued)

FUNCTION	COMMAND	MACRO INSTRUCTION	SAMPLE USAGES	EFFECT	ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES
Command Creation	BUILTIN		BUILTIN NAME= TEST2	Defines TEST2 as the name of the object program which the user can invoke as if it were a command.	29
	KEYWORD		KEYWORD KEYWORD COMNAME=GO	Causes printing of all the command names, and their associated parameters, currently defined in your USER-LIB. Here you ask for the parameter keywords of the command GO to be printed.	29
	PROCDEF		PROCDEF NAME=TEST3	Defines TEST3 as the name of a user-written command procedure.	28

Macro Instructions Used in Examples

This table (Table 5) lists the macro instructions whose use is shown in Part III, grouped by function. Detailed coding information on these macro instructions is provided in the publication *Assembler User Macro Instructions*.

Table 5. Macro Instructions Used in Examples

FUNCTION	MACRO INSTRUCTION	USE	ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES
VSAM Data Management	DCB	Reserves space for a data control block (DCB) which describes a virtual sequential (VS) data set.	5,6,11,14
	OPEN	Initializes a specified DCB for processing and catalogs new data sets.	5,6,11,14
	GET	Moves a virtual sequential data set record to a virtual storage location.	6
	PUT	Includes a record from virtual storage in a virtual sequential data set.	5,6,11,14
	CLOSE	Logically disconnects a specified data set from your program.	5,6,11,14
	DUPOPEN	Initializes two specified DCBs for processing in duplex mode and causes creation of a catalog entry if data set is new.	
	DUP-CLOSE	Logically disconnects a duplexed data set from your program.	
VISAM Data Management	DCB	Reserves space for a data control block (DCB) which describes a virtual index sequential (VIS) data set.	14
	OPEN	Initializes a specified DCB for processing and catalogs new data sets.	14
	PUT	Includes the next sequential record from virtual storage in a virtual index sequential data set.	14
	READ	Transfers a virtual index sequential record to a virtual storage location.	14
	DELREC	Deletes a specified record from a virtual index sequential data set.	14
	CLOSE	Logically disconnects a specified data set from your program.	14
	DUPOPEN	Initializes two specified DCBs for processing in duplex mode and causes creation of a catalog entry if data set is new.	
DUP-CLOSE	Logically disconnects a duplexed data set from your program.		

FUNCTION	MACRO INSTRUCTION	USE	ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES
BSAM Data Management	DCB	Reserves space for a data control block (DCB) which describes a physical sequential data set.	10
	OPEN	Initializes a specified DCB for processing.	10
	READ	Transfers a block of data from a physical sequential data set to a virtual storage location.	10
	WRITE	Writes a block of data from virtual storage in a physical sequential data set.	10
	CHECK	Required when processing physical sequential data sets to check the I/O operation requested by a READ or WRITE macro instruction for I/O completion, errors, or exceptional conditions.	10
	CLOSE	Logically disconnects a specified data set from your program.	10
SYSIN-SYSOUT I/O	GATRD	Reads a record from SYSIN and places it in a specified area in your virtual storage.	2-4,11,12, 16, 19
	GATWR	Transfers a message from your program to SYSOUT.	2-4, 6, 7, 12, 13, 16, 19, 23
Program Linkage	SAVE	Stores the contents of specified registers in a save area.	6,7,10,11, 14, 20
	RETURN	Restores the contents of specified registers from a save area, and returns control to the location specified in register 14.	6, 7, 20, 23
	EXIT	Terminates program execution and causes the next command from SYSIN to be processed.	2-5,10,12, 14, 16, 17, 19, 20
Interrupt Management	SPEC	Specifies the entry point of an interrupt-handling routine to which control is to pass with the occurrence of a specified type of program interrupt.	20
	SIR	Informs the system of the presence of your interrupt-handling routine.	20
	DIR	Terminates possibility of your interrupt-handling routine receiving control.	20
User-Defined Procedures	BPKD	Supplies the linkage between the assembler object module and BUILTIN procedure name.	29

Part III. Examples

Part III is devoted to thirty examples showing user-system interaction. The dialog between you and the system appears (along with explanatory comments) as it would at the terminal. They are typical examples of system use. Use the examples as a learning device, and as models for designing your own work.

Commands and concepts are presented in an ordered sequence: the most necessary and basic ones appear first, and are reviewed in subsequent examples. The examples are designed so that the beginner should read them in sequence. Precise system responses are not indicated. Instead, short narratives describing system reactions to your input are given throughout. The expanded facilities of the Command System such as the Text Editor, PROCDEF, BUILTIN, and User Profile are depicted for your guidance. Those familiar with the commands and concepts can use the examples for reference.

All VSAM, VISAM, and VPAM data sets are automatically cataloged at the time they are created. DDEF time includes the specific issuance of the command (or macro) by the user, as well as the implied system issuance of DDEF by such facilities as the DATA command and the ASM command. The system creates the initial catalog entry and provides the user with unlimited access. You must deliberately update the initial catalog entry if this access is not desired. The examples stress this concept in all of its forms, using a narrative wherever the system will take such automatic action.

Assembler programs are shown where they are necessary to clarify use of the commands. Only the

relevant statements are included, and usually do not show base register usage. Full program linkage and reenterable programs are shown in the later examples.

Various types of messages are issued to your terminal by the system. The three types are as follows:

Prompting Messages—Request that you supply command operands or other information. Since the system does not recognize confirmation mode as such, you will be prompted only for omitted operands that have no default option specified.

Information Messages—Either inform you of actions the system has taken in executing a command, or request additional information.

Diagnostic Messages—Inform you of errors and prompt you for corrections.

In these examples, lines typed by the system are headed SYS, lines you enter are headed YOU. Lines in which both the system and you enter something are headed S, Y. Lines printed by your program are headed PGM, and cards entered from the terminal card reader and reprinted are headed CIP, for card image printout.

The use of the PRINT command for obtaining language processor output listings is illustrated in the examples as follows:

```
PRINT LIST.module-name, ,EDIT
```

You will automatically be given the latest generation of your list data set.

Some examples use the ERASE option so that unwanted data sets may be removed from the system. This procedure is recommended whenever practical so that public storage will not be burdened with unwanted user data. The format is as follows:

```
PRINT LIST.module-name, ,EDIT,ERASE
```

Example 1: Initiating and Terminating a Conversational Task

In this example, you initiate a simple conversational task and then terminate it. The commentary explains the keyboard entries required to converse with the system.

To begin a conversational task, first make sure that the terminal is properly prepared (refer to instructions provided by your installation or to the *Terminal User's Guide*). When you dial up the system or press the attention button for the first time in your task, the system assumes a log-on operation and the keyboard is unlocked for you to enter the LOGON command along with the appropriate LOGON parameters. Since the system will not prompt for individual LOGON operands, all of them must be entered at the same time. You cannot begin a task until you have logged on properly.

During your dialog with the system, your commands are not entered into the system until you press the return key.

YOU: (press attention button or dial up the system)

From this point on, pressing the attention button halts current activity in most situations. Consult Appendix D for the specific action taken in each situation. The keyboard is unlocked to receive your LOGON command and operands.

```
LOGON ADUSERID,MYPASS*,24,ADACCT30,N,5,P
      29,N,5,P
```

Before pressing the return key, you notice a typing error in the charge number (ADACCT30). To correct this error you backspace 8 characters, move the paper up one line to avoid overtyping, and then enter the proper characters.

SYS: TSS/370 RELEASE 2.0

This is the first message you will receive, indicating the system and level you have dialed, and informing you that your LOGON attempt has been recognized by the system. You must still wait for LOGON acknowledgement before you can begin your task.

SYS: TASKID=1111 LOGON AT 15:21 ON 04/12/76

With this message the system acknowledges your LOGON; you may now begin processing.

Explanation of LOGON Operands

ADUSERID

User Identification

User identity is the first of the LOGON parameters. You enter your full identification. It was assigned to you when you were joined to the system. Its first two characters identify the administrator who authorized your access to the system.

MYPASS*

Password

This code word (password) provides protection against unauthorized use of your user identification. Conversationally it must be used if one was assigned at JOIN time. Non-conversationally it is optional. The system will prompt you and allow you to overprint it conversationally to ensure password security.

24

Addressing

24 or 32 bit addressing may be specified. The present system addressing will be assumed. (32 bit addressing is valid for System 360 only.)

ADACCT29

Charge Number

This is the charge or account number that was assigned to you by your administrator.

N

Control Section Packing

This operand specifies the type of control section packing provided for you by the Dynamic Loader. Possible values are as follows:

A = pack all control sections

P = pack all prototype control sections only

O = pack only those control sections having neither PUBLIC nor PROTOTYPE attributes

X = pack all control sections, except prototype

N = no control section packing will be done

5

Maximum Auxiliary Storage

You may specify the number of pages needed. If not, the system will assume the number of pages specified at SYSGEN.

P

Pristine

Permits you to log on with only system supplied defaults and, if you wish, without your USERLIB. Possible values are:

P=USERLIB is defined but session profile reflects only system defaults, etc.

X=USERLIB is not defined and session profile reflects only system defaults, etc.

SYS:

ZLOGON will now be invoked, if it has been defined by you. You can continue with other commands or procedures as soon as the system underscore appears.

S,Y: KB

After logging you on, the system prints a single underscore and then backspaces; this is the standard signal that it is ready to receive your next command on the same line. Here you specify that you want folded mode; that is that certain lower case characters (as a-z and ! "¢) be translated by the system into their upper case equivalents (A-Z and \$ # @, respectively). Thus, with KB, you no longer need to perform many shifting operations.

When you initiate a conversational task, the system automatically assumes folded mode; hence in this example you need not have specified KB. However, there are other character control commands, such as KA, which invoke EBCDIC mode at the keyboard. Thus, if you specify KA and at a later time in your session wish to return to folded mode, you must enter KB.

YOU: LOGoff
SYS:

You decide to conclude your session by logging off. The system will respond with an acceptance message, indicating the date and time your task was terminated. Note that LOGoff translates to LOGOFF.

Example 2: Assembling and Correcting from the Terminal

In this example, you type in the source statements of a short program and correct several errors while assembling the program. The assembled object module is stored in your USERLIB. The listings you selected are printed as a separate task, only if requested using the PRINT command.

YOU: (press attention button or dial up the system)
LOGON ADUSERID, MYPASS*, , ADACCT29

You enter your identification, password, and account number. System defaults are taken for the remaining operands.

SYS:

The system will complete the LOGON procedure and invite you to enter the next command with an underscore.

S, Y: CHGPASS

At this time you decide to change your password. You thus enter the CHGPASS command.

SYS: ENTER CURRENT PASSWORD

The system will prompt you for your current password with an overprinted line. Because you have entered the correct password, the system will prompt you to enter your new password.

SYS: ENTER NEW PASSWORD

The system validates your new password and invites you to enter your next command.

S, Y: TIME MINS=15

The TIME command establishes a period of time a task will be allowed to run in virtual memory. Since your task requirements will be small, you decide to override the SYSGEN value established for "task time," and set 15 minutes as the upper limit. You will be alerted when this new interval is exhausted. TIME is useful to monitor tasks which may inadvertently loop, or otherwise take abnormal actions.

S, Y: ASM NAME=ATIMES2, STORED=N, ASMLIST=Y, CRLIST=Y, PMDLIST=Y, LINCRL=(1300, 100)

The system acknowledges receipt of the ASM command. Language processing commences.

Explanation of ASM Operands

NAME=ATIMES2

Object Module Name

You assign the name ATIMES2 to the object module. The object module created by the assembler is placed in the library at the top of your program library list—in this case, your USERLIB. This parameter cannot be defaulted.

STORED=N

Prestored Source Data Set

The N indicates that you are going to enter source statements rather than assemble from a prestored source data set. The system creates a data set from your source statements and automatically creates a name for it by prefixing "SOURCE." to the name you supplied as the first assembly parameter (SOURCE.ATIMES2)

MACROLIB=

Macro Library

This parameter permits you to indicate additional macro libraries on which you have stored macro definitions you created. Your default by omission of this parameter means that macro definitions are to be obtained only from the system macro library during assembly.

- VERID=** **Version Identification**
You may assign an identification to the assembled object module to distinguish it from other assemblies of the same module name. It will appear on the PMD output listing. Your default (by omission) of this parameter will yield the current date and time.
- ISD=** **Internal Symbol Dictionary**
For each source program symbol, the Internal Symbol Dictionary (ISD) shows its type, length, and the relative internal locations assigned by the assembler. This information is necessary for full utilization of the Program Control System (PCS) debugging capabilities.
By default (omission) an ISD is produced.
- SYMLIST=** **Source Listing**
The listings you request with this and the next five parameters will form your listing data set. (See Appendix A for a detailed explanation of these listings.) The system creates a name for the listing data set by prefixing "LIST." to the name you supplied as the first assembly parameter (LIST.ATIMES2), using generation data group logic. The source listing will reveal the source input statements.
By default, you will not receive a source statement listing.
- ASMLIST=Y** **Object Listing**
The Y indicates you wish to receive the object listing. This listing shows the assembled object code and the assembler-assigned displacement addresses, both in hexadecimal form. A separate source listing (SYMLIST) should be requested if continuation of source input statements is very frequent because statements listed in the object listing are the concatenated forms of continued source statements. In other words, the SYMLIST shows how the source statements were received, whereas the ASMLIST shows the form used in the assembly of the object module.
- CRLIST=Y** **Cross-Reference Listing**
You request the cross-reference listing, which indicates the type, length, and assembled hexadecimal location for each symbol. It also indicates the hexadecimal location of each symbol reference.
- STEDIT=** **Edited Symbol Table**
The edited symbol table is merely the cross-reference listing without the reference locations.
By default, it will not be produced.
- ISDLIST=** **Internal Symbol Dictionary Listing**
To obtain the listing of the Internal Symbol Dictionary (ISD) you must also have requested an ISD above. You omit this parameter; it therefore will not be produced, by default.
- PMDLIST=Y** **Program Module Dictionary Listing**
You specify a listing that shows the entries in the Program Module Dictionary (PMD). It is helpful in determining the structure of your object module and its relocation properties.
- LISTDS=** **List Data Set**
In nonconversational mode you must specify if you want your listings placed in a list data set. By default they will be placed on SYSOUT, and no record of them retained in the system after printout. Conversationally, a list data set is automatically created unless you specify otherwise. In the latter case they will be printed out at your terminal.

LINCR=(1300,100) **Starting Line Number, Increment**

The system creates a number for each line of input as the source data is formed. You specify that the first line is to be numbered 1300 and that additional line numbers are to be incremented by 100. Line numbers and increments can consist of three to seven digits, the last two of which must be zero when the data set is initially formed. Since the line numbers for a source data set are supplied at the time it is created, this parameter has no meaning when assembling from a prestored source data set.

SYS: The user is invited to enter source statements.

S,Y: 0001300CST CSECT

You enter your source statements in free form, i.e., by separating the fields with a single space. Notice that you must leave a space for a null name (label) field.

This basic program reads an integer from the terminal, multiplies it by two, and writes the product at the terminal. It is limited to integers between 0 and 4.

S,Y: 0001400BEGIN BASR 11,0
S,Y: 0001500 USING *,11 LOCAL BASE REG
S,Y: 0001600 GATRD AREA+3,LENGTH READ FROM SYSIN
S,Y: 0001700 MVZ AREA+3(1)=X'00' CONVERT TO BINARY
SYS: 0001700 E***OPERAND FIELD IMPROPERLY DELIMITED
SYS: 0001700 MVZ AREA+3(1)=X'00' CONVERT TO BINARY

The assembler examines each statement for syntactical errors. It discovers that you have omitted a comma and informs you with an error message, then prints out the line requiring correction. See Appendix A for a further explanation of assembler diagnostics.

S,Y: #
1700, MVZ AREA+3(1),=X'00' CONVERT TO BINARY

The system then prints the number sign (#) after which you enter the number of the erroneous line, a comma, and then the content of the corrected line. Then you press the return key.

At this point you can make any number of modifications, deletions, or insertions of new lines.

S,Y: #(press return key)

Instead you indicate the end of modifications by pressing the return key.

S,Y: 0001800 L 5,AREAL

The system then prompts you with the line number for the next statement, which you enter.

S,Y: 0001900 SLA 5,1 MULT BY 2
S,Y: 0002000* RESTRICTED TO INTEGERS FROM 0 to 4
S,Y: 0002100 ST 5,AREA
S,Y: 0002200 MVZ AREA+3(1),=X'FF' CONVERT TO EBCDIC
S,Y: 0002300 GATWR AREA+3,LENGTH WRITE ON SYSOUT
S,Y: 0002400 EXIT 'PGM FINISHED'
S,Y: 0002500AREA DC F'0' RD/WR AREA
S,Y: 0002600LENGTH DC F'1' LENGTH OF AREA
S,Y: 0002700 END

The END statement identifies the last source statement.

SYS: 0002700 E *** 'AREAL ' UNDEFINED SYMBOL

After the last source statement has been entered, the assembler expands your macro instructions and searches for global errors. Here it has discovered one. The system invites you to correct your source program, if you so desire. It does *not* perform a syntactical check on the statements you modify or enter at this point. The line in which the error was located is first printed out to help you in making corrections.

YOU: Y
S,Y: #
1800, L 5,AREA

You indicate that you wish to modify your source (response of Y), and then enter the correct statement.

S,Y: #(press return key to indicate end of modifications)

The system now reassembles your modified program, rescanning all the statements as if this were a new assembly. The assembler indicates it has found no errors.

YOU:

Your listings were automatically placed in a list data set since you are operating in conversational mode. The printing of a list data set is not an automatic function. You must therefore issue the PRINT command.

S,Y: PRINT LIST.ATIMES2,,EDIT

The system will establish a nonconversational task to print the current generation of LIST.ATIMES2.

SYS:

The system assigns a batch sequence number (BSN) for your listing data set. It contains the listing you specified earlier (i.e., object, cross-reference, and PMD).

S,Y: ERASE SOURCE.ATIMES2

SYS:

The system confirms the erasure. Since all VAM data sets are automatically cataloged when created (in this case as a result of the ASM command), you are urged to erase data sets for which you have no further use. This allows public storage to be freed for other purposes.

The list data set is automatically cataloged by the system as the current generation of LIST.ATIMES2. The assembler has stored your object module in the library at the top of your program library list (in this case, your USERLIB, which is an automatically cataloged data set).

S,Y: LOGOFF

SYS:

The LOGOFF is accepted by the system.

Example 3: Assembling and Executing

In this example, you enter and assemble the same program you assembled in Example 2, but give it a different name. You cause the resulting object module to be stored in a temporary library. After executing the assembled program, you save the source program for use in a future session.

The terminal is used as `sysin` for your program input as well as `sysout` for your program output.

YOU: (press attention button or dial up the system)
LOGON ADUSERID,,,ADACCT29

You log on, defaulting your password. If you were joined with a password, the system will prompt for it with an overprinted line.

SYS: ENTER PASSWD
XXXXXXXX

After prompting, the carriage is positioned at the first overprinted position, allowing you to overprint your password. This facility is used to ensure password security.

SYS:

The system will complete the LOGON procedure and invite you to begin your task.

S,Y: DDEF DDNAME=TEMPDD,DSORG=VP,DSNAME=SCRATCH,OPTION=JOBLIB

The DDEF command is used to describe a data set to the system. It defines a data set only during the session in which the command appears. Every data set you use must be defined for the current session, even if it has been previously cataloged. Some data sets, such as listing and source data sets, are automatically defined by the system and, thus, do not require an explicit DDEF on SYSIN.

Here you define a JOBLIB data set. All libraries require virtual partitioned (VP) organization. Since SCRATCH is the most recently defined library, the system places it at the top of your program library list. Object modules created by the assembler, therefore, will be stored in it.

S,Y: KA

With KA, you indicate you wish to use the full EBCDIC character set during input. Both upper and lower case letters will be translated as their respective equivalents.

S,Y: DEFAULT ASMALIGN=N

You do *not* want the source code in your program listing aligned in columns 1, 10, and 16. Instead you want the source code to appear exactly as you entered it.

S,Y: ASM AT2,N,PMDLIST=Y,LINCR=(300,100)

A combination of positional and keyword parameter notation is illustrated here. The format of the module name must be as indicated (see AT2). Since the name used becomes a member of a virtual partitioned data set when the object module is created, partially-qualified names and generation data group names cannot be used. Virtual partitioned data set members must be identified with simple names.

In this and in following examples you press the tab key to separate source statement fields. You have set terminal tabs at columns 17, 23, and 40, so that the typewriter listing of your input (following the seven-digit line number supplied by the system) conforms to standard coding-sheet format. When setting your terminal tab stops during your task, you will create several spurious tab characters which you want to prevent the system from interpreting. Therefore, after setting your tab stops, erase the unwanted line by backspacing and then immediately pressing the return key.

The system now prompts you by printing the number it has assigned to the first source line.

```
S,Y: 0000300CST      CSECT
S,Y: 0000400BEGIN   BASR  11,0
S,Y: 0000500        USING *,11          LOCAL BASE REG
S,Y: 0000600        GATRD AREA+3,LENGTH  READ FROM SYSIN
S,Y: 0000700        MVZ  AREA+3(1),=X'00'  CONVERT TO BINARY
S,Y: 0000800        L    5,AREA
S,Y: 0000900        SLA  5,1             MULT BY 2
S,Y: 0001000*      RESTRICTED TO INTEGERS FROM 0 TO 4
S,Y: 0001100        ST   5,AREA
S,Y: 0001200        MVZ  AREA+3(1),=X'FF'  CONVERT TO EBCDIC
S,Y: 0001300        GATWR AREA+3,LENGTH  WRITE ON SYSOUT
```


S,Y: 0001400	EXIT	'pgm finished'	
S,Y: 0001500AREA	DC	F'0'	RD/WR AREA
S,Y: 0001600LENGTH	DC	F'1'	LENGTH OF AREA
S,Y: 0001700	END		

SYS:

Your source input is scanned and you are told that no errors were found. The assembler completes the assembly process and your next command is solicited.

S,Y: PRINT LIST.AT2,,,EDIT

System will establish nonconversational task to print the current generation of LIST.AT2. Your program has been assembled without error. The listings you have requested (a PMD listing and, through default, an object listing) form your listing data set. It will be printed as a separate task.

S,Y: AT2

This command causes your object module to be loaded from your SCRATCH job library and executed. Execution begins at the first location in the CSECT.

SYS: (unlocks keyboard)

When the GATRD macro instruction in your program is executed, the system unlocks the keyboard.

YOU: 3

Then you enter your input data from the terminal, and press the return key.

PGM: 6

GATWR prints program output on SYSOUT (the terminal in a conversational task).

PGM: EXIT, RELEASE ALL UNNEEDED DEVICES.

The EXIT macro instruction causes this message to be printed. If you had private data sets you no longer needed, you would issue a RELEASE command to free the devices on which their volumes were mounted.

PGM: pmg finished

The EXIT macro instruction then prints the message you specified and returns control to the terminal, which is indicated by the underscore. You decide to log off.

S,Y: LOGOFF
SYS:

The LOGOFF is accepted by the system. Since all VAM data sets are automatically cataloged, SOURCE.AT2 remains cataloged for future use. You must specifically issue ERASE for data sets you no longer desire, *prior* to entering the LOGOFF command.

Example 4: Correcting and Reassembling a Prestored Source Program

In this example, you modify the source data set you cataloged in Example 3 so that, when it is assembled, the program will accept input more than once. Then you execute the program and enter the data several times.

Having completed the LOGON procedure, you enter your first command.

S,Y: MODIFY SETNAME=SOURCE.AT2

You want to modify the source program you created in the previous example. If not already defined in this current session, the data set named in a MODIFY command must be cataloged.

SYS:

The system acknowledges the MODIFY command and invites your input using a # sign.

S,Y: #
R,500,600

The system prompts you with the number sign (#). Before you make any modifications to your source data set, you review several of its statements. You enter the R (for review), a comma, and the numbers of the source lines you want to review; then you press the return key.

SYS: 0000500
SYS: 0000600

```
USING *,11          LOCAL BASE REG  
GATRD AREA+3,LENGTH READ FROM SYSIN
```

Since you entered your source data set in tab format, statement fields are separated by a tab character. The number of spaces in the tab is not recorded. When printed on your terminal, fields appear wherever the terminal tabs are now set.

S,Y: #
550,HERE

```
EQU * CHECK IF END BRANCH IF YES
```

After printing the two lines, the system again prompts you with the number sign. You insert a new statement following the number you assign to it. You can replace an existing statement with this same procedure.

S,Y: #
630,

```
CLI AREA+3,C'E'
```

S,Y: #
670,

```
BE LEAVE
```

You insert two more source statements. They will check for your selected value of E, indicating end of data.

S,Y: #
R,1300,1400

You review another part of your program.

SYS: 0001300
0001400

```
GATWR AREA+3,LENGTH WRITE ON SYSOUT  
EXIT 'PGM FINISHED'
```

The EXIT message is presented by the system in upper case this time, since KB is the mode by default.

S,Y: #
1350,

```
B THERE
```

Here you insert a statement. Notice that, within the MODIFY command, no checks are made for line errors. The incorrect THERE will be discovered later, during assembly.

S,Y: #
1400,LEAVE

EXIT 'PGM FINISHED'

You add a name field to the EXIT statement.

To remind you that you changed the source data set, you decide to rename the current source data set. Before this can be done, the csect name must be changed, even if the new module will be going into a separate library.

S,Y: #
R,300

You review the line containing the csect name.

SYS: 0000300CST CSECT

S,Y: #
300,SECT CSECT

You change the name of the csect.

S,Y: #
%E

You signal the end of modifications to terminate the MODIFY command.

S,Y: CATALOG DSNAME=SOURCE.AT2, STATE=U, NEWNAME=SOURCE, AT2EX4

You use the CATALOG command to rename the current source data set SOURCE.AT2EX4. At assembly time, the associated list data set will be named LIST.AT2EX4 by the system. The U indicates the updating of an existing catalog entry. This command corresponds to the CAT macro instruction.

S,Y: DDEF TEMPDD,VP,SCRATCH,OPTION=JOBLIB

This command defines your job library established in an earlier session. The system places it at the top of your program library list. Disposition is defaulted by the system to OLD, since SCRATCH already exists in your catalog.

S,Y: ASM AT2EX4,Y

The Y specifies that the source data set is prestored.

SYS: 0001700 E *** 'THERE 'UNDEFINED SYMBOL

This is the error that was not detected during modification. The line in which the error was located is printed out to help you in making corrections. The number of the END statement is given when undefined symbols are encountered.

SYS:

Your source input is scanned and you are asked if you wish to enter any modifications.

YOU: Y

You indicate that you wish to modify your source data set (response of Y).

S,Y: #
1350,

B HERE

S,Y: #
(press return key to signal end of modifications)

The assembler rescans the source input, and finds no further errors.

SYS:

The assembly process is completed, without errors. The assembled object module now resides in your job library (SCRATCH), the library at the top of your program library list.

This time you do not issue a PRINT command but the data set still exists as the current generation of LIST.AT2EX4. If the listing is later desired, you need only to issue: PRINT LIST.AT2EX4,,EDIT,Y.

S,Y: AT2EX4

This command causes the object module which includes the external symbol BEGIN to be loaded from SCRATCH and executed.

SYS: (unlocks keyboard)
YOU: 4

You enter a number at the keyboard (SYSIN to be read by GATRD).

PGM: 8

GATWR causes the computed results to be printed at the terminal (SYSOUT).

SYS: (unlocks keyboard)
YOU: 1
PGM: 2
SYS: (unlocks keyboard)
YOU: E
PGM: EXIT, RELEASE ALL UNNEEDED DEVICES.

PGM: PGM FINISHED

Your program detects the entry in SYSIN of E and branches to the EXIT macro instruction, which prints its messages and returns control to the keyboard. The system prompts for the next command with an underscore.

S,Y: ERASE USERLIB(ATIMES2)

Now that you know that your modified program runs correctly, you decide to erase from USERLIB the object module you assembled in Example 2. With this form of the ERASE command, only the module named within the parentheses is erased.

S,Y: LOGOFF
SYS:

The LOGOFF is accepted by the system. The listing data set (LIST.AT2EX4) will automatically become the current generation of the pre-established generation data group. Your new object program module (AT2EX4) resides in SCRATCH, which was cataloged in a previous session. You cataloged your source data set (SOURCE.AT2EX4) when you changed its name.

Example 5: Writing a Data Set and Printing It

In this example, you execute a program that you have previously assembled and checked out. Its object module resides on your USERLIB. Your program causes a data set to be written. You request that it be printed later on the system high-speed printer as a separate task.

After the LOGON procedure is completed, you begin processing. The program which you are going to run, named PROC5, includes the following source statements:

```
CST5  CSECT
      ENTRY  STRT5
STRT5 EQU  *
      .
      .
      LA     2,20
      OPEN  (DCBNM,(OUTPUT))          SET FOR 20 CYCLES
LABEL EQU  *                          OPEN DCB
      (create record at AREA)
      .
      .
      PUT   DCBNM,AREA                PUT RECORD IN DATA SET
      BCT  2,LABEL                   RECYCLE
      CLOSE (DCBNM)                  CLOSE DCB
      EXIT
AREA  DS   80C                       DATA AREA
DCBNM DCB  DDNAME=OUTDD,RECFM=FA
      END
```

Your program will write a data set with 80-character records from the storage area named AREA. Notice that your DCB macro instruction includes the DDNAME that is a parameter in the DDEF command, which in turn contains the name of the data set (OUT5). The DDEF command relates the correct data set to your program because every data set name must be unique in your task.

S,Y: DDEF OUTDD,VS,OUT5, (LRECL=80)

With this command, you define for this session the data set which your program will write. Record length=80. The DISP field in the DDEF command is defaulted to existence (i.e., default is NEW if the data set is being created initially in the current task; default is OLD if data set already exists and is cataloged). Since this data is being created now, the default for disposition is NEW.

See Appendix E for further details of the DDEF parameters.

S,Y: CALL STRT5

This command causes the object module defining STRT5 to be loaded into virtual storage and executed.

PGM: EXIT, RELEASE ALL UNNEEDED DEVICES

Your program completes its work and this message is issued by the EXIT macro instruction. Control is returned to the terminal.

S,Y: RET OUT5,R

A public volume was selected for your data set because you defaulted the volume field in your DDEF command, and it was cataloged for you automatically, with access qualifier=U. You decide to protect the data set by updating the access qualifier to read-only, using the RET command. You can also use the RET command to change a temporary data set to a permanent one (or vice versa) by specifying P (or T) in the retention code (and you could have it erased automatically at CLOSE or LOGOFF by specifying C or L in the code, if it is a temporary data set).

S,Y: PRINT DSNAME=OUT5, PRTSP=EDIT

To print your newly-written data set, this command creates a separate (nonconversational) task. You could have used the PRINT macro instruction to create the task.

Explanation of PRINT Operands

DSNAME=OUT5

The data set to be printed with this command must either be defined within the current task by a DDEF command, as it is in this example, or it must be cataloged. Its records must be fixed or variable length, and must include a USASI control character (RECFM=FA or VA).

STARTNO=

You want printing to begin with the first byte of each data set record. You can enter a number consisting of one to six digits. You default this parameter by omission.

ENDNO=

This parameter specifies at which byte in each data set record printing is to end. Since your records are shorter than the default length, your printing will end at the last (80th) byte of each record. You default this parameter by omission.

PRTSP=EDIT

Since you want spacing to be controlled by the control character your program has supplied in each record, you choose EDIT. The default is 1. Since EDIT was selected, the values for header, lines per page, and page number will not prevail. However, if one of the other spacing options (1, 2, or 3) has been selected, these three values would be required.

ERASE=

This parameter is meaningful only if the data set being printed is cataloged. In that case, you can specify that the data set be erased after it is printed. By parameter omission, there will be no data set erasure.

ERROROPT=

This parameter applies only to data sets on tape. It specifies the action to be taken if an unrecoverable error is found while a data set record is being read. Since the data set is on a direct access device, the parameter is ignored by omission (default).

FORM=

Here you can specify the form number of the printer paper you desire for your output. The default (STANDARD FORM) is determined by your installation.

STATION=

This parameter applies only at installations where the user has been given the privilege of directing print jobs to an RJE station. It permits you to indicate the station at which you want your output printed.

SYS:

The system informs you that it has accepted the requested nonconversational task, and assigned it a batch sequence number (BSN).

S,Y: LOGOFF
SYS:

The LOGOFF is accepted by the system. Your conversational task is therefore terminated.

conclusion of your program, the RETURN macro instruction restores the saved registers and returns control to the system (the caller), which unlocks the keyboard.

It is good coding practice to place all variable data in your PSECT: refer to Appendix C for a more complete explanation of linkage conventions and TSS programming practices.

If the end of input data is reached before 10 cycles, the system transfers control to the location you specified in the end of data (EODAD) field in your DCB macro instruction. Your program then executes its normal return.

S,Y: DDEF INPDD,VS,INP6,DISP=OLD,RET=TLU

You define the data set from which your program reads input. Although the data is cataloged, you must define it for this task. The system locates it from the information in the catalog.

Some of the parameters you omitted in both the DCB macro instruction and the DDEF commands, such as the data set organization, are provided from the catalog entry. Others, such as RECFM, LRECL, and BLKSIZE, are obtained from the data set label. Appendix E explains these alternate sources. OLD indicates that the data set already exists. The retention code, TLU, specified by the RET parameter will cause the data set to become temporary with erasure at LOGOFF and with read-write access.

S,Y: DDEF OUT6A,VS,OUT6A

S,Y: DDEF OUT6B,VS,OUT6B

Now you define the data sets your program is to write. You decide to make the DDEF and data set names identical in each DDEF command. This makes it easy to relate the name of the DDEF to the output data set it defines. You default the disposition field by omitting it. NEW (the default) indicates that your two output sets do not already exist. Since these data sets are VAM organization, cataloging is automatic.

S,Y: CALL STRT6

Your object module is loaded and executed. Its output goes to the two output data sets. There will be no messages at your terminal until your program executes the GATWR macro instruction in your exit routine.

PGM: FINISHED WRITING TWO DATA SETS

This is the message from your GATWR macro instruction.

Your program contains the standard SAVE/RETURN linkage, so control is returned to you at the terminal; this is indicated by the underscore.

S,Y: RET OUT6A,R

OUT6A was automatically cataloged when opened, with access=U and you desire to protect it from further modification by issuing a RET command to change the access to R (read only). INP6 will be automatically erased at LOGOFF since you specified it as temporary in your DDEF command, with deletion at LOGOFF.

S,Y: LOGOFF

SYS:

The LOGOFF is accepted by the system.

Example 7: Multiple Assemblies and Program Linkage

In this example, you assemble three programs that refer to one another and then place them on two different libraries. Two programs are assembled in express mode from prestored source data sets, and the third program is assembled from the terminal. A control section is rejected during loading of the programs. You correct the error causing the rejection and run your programs.

After the LOCON procedure is completed, you begin processing.

S,Y: DEFAULT LPCXPRSS=Y

You request that your assembly be done in express mode which will allow you to assemble a number of source programs consecutively without a possibly time-consuming return to the Command System after each assembly.

S,Y: ASM MAIN7,Y

The Y specifies the existence of a prestored source data set named SOURCE.MAIN7. All modules that you assemble in the express mode will be governed by the parameters you specify with your ASM command for the first source module.

SYS:

Your first source program is assembled. When assembly is completed your keyboard is unlocked and the language processor control will read the next word entered at SYSIN as the name of the next module to be assembled.

S,Y: SUB7A

SUB7A is your next module. The language processor control will ignore any parameters you specify at this point and default to the parameters you specified on your entry into express mode. SUB7A is therefore assumed to be a prestored source data set.

SUB7A includes the following statements:

```

*SUBPROGRAM 7A
PST1  PSECT
      ENTRY  EPI
      DC     F'76'  SAVE AREA LENGTH
      DC     18F'0' REMAINDER OF SAVE AREA
      .
      .
CST7A CSECT
EPI   SAVE   (14,12) SAVE REGISTERS IN CALLER'S SV AREA
      L     14,72(0,13) GET RCON FROM CALLER'S SAVE AREA
      ST   14,8(0,13)  STORE FORWARD POINTER
      ST   13,4(0,14)  STORE BACKWARD POINTER
      LR   13,14      SET PSECT AND SAVE AREA REGISTER
      USING PST1,13   PSECT COVER REGISTER
      LR   12,15
      USING EPI,12    CSECT COVER REGISTER
      .
      .
      L     13,4(0,13) RELOAD SAVE AREA BASE REG
      RETURN (14,12)  RESTORE REGISTERS
      END

```

This and your other subroutine are reenterable programs. You use a standard form for such programs that require a separate PSECT for your variables. See Appendix C for more details.

SYS:

Your second source program is assembled. When assembly is completed, your keyboard is unlocked for you to enter the next module name.

YOU: SUB7B

A prestored source data set was expected as a result of the STORED=Y parameter when you entered express mode. No such prestored module can be found.

SYS:

The language processor control causes an exit from express mode, issues a diagnostic message and returns to the Command System with an underscore. To return to non-express mode without causing a diagnostic message you should have typed an underscore when the keyboard was unlocked, or you could have interrupted the language processor by pressing the attention button, issued the command DEFAULT LPCXPRSS=, and then continued processing with the GO command.

You decide to have your two listing data sets printed now as background tasks before proceeding with the assembly of your third module.

S, Y: PRINT LIST.MAIN7, ,,EDIT, Y

SYS:

MAIN7 was successfully assembled, and the printing of its listing data set is assigned as a separate task (BSN=0624). The MAIN7 object module is stored in the library at the top of your program library list (in this case, your USERLIB).

The format of the PRINT command as given above is recommended for use whenever practical. The EDIT option allows line spacing to be regulated by the print control character in the first byte of each record. The ERASE option (Y) affords timely public storage release so that unwanted data is not occupying space in the system.

Note: Example 5 indicates the individual operands of the PRINT command.

S, Y: PRINT LIST.SUB7A, ,,EDIT

SYS:

The print task is accepted and assigned a BSN (0625). The object module for SUB7A is also stored in your USERLIB.

S,Y: DDEF DDNAME=LIBADD,DSNAME=LIBA,OPTION=JOBLIB,DISP=OLD

Now you define a cataloged job library (LIBA), which the system places at the top of your program library list. Object modules from any successive assembly are placed in it instead of in your USERLIB. The OLD indicates that LIBA already exists. The omitted data set organization (VP) is supplied from the catalog entry.

You are now ready to proceed with the assembly of your third module. Since you are no longer in express mode you must enter the ASM command with all appropriate parameters.

S,Y: ASM SUB7B,N

The N specifies a data set to be entered dynamically (i.e., it does not yet exist). It will automatically be named SOURCE.SUB7B. You enter your third source program from the terminal, using tab stops at columns 17, 23 and 25. By default, line numbering will start at 100, with increments of 100.

S,Y: 0000100* SUBPROGRAM7B

```
0000200PST2      PSECT
0000300          ENTRY  BGN7
0000400          DC      F'76'          SAVE AREA LENGTH
0000500SAVE      DC      18F'0'        REMAINDER OF SAVE AREA
.
.
.
0000900EP1      CSECT
0001000BGN7     SAVE  (14,12)          SAVE REGISTERS IN CALLER'S SAVE AREA
0001100          L      14,72(0,13)   GET RCON FROM CALLER'S SAVE AREA
0001200          ST      14,8(0,13)   STORE FORWARD POINTER
0001300          ST      13,4(0,14)   STORE BACKWARD POINTER
0001400          LR      13,14        SET PSECT AND SAVE AREA REGISTER
0001500          USING  PST2,13       PSECT COVER REGISTER
0001600          LR      12,15
0001700          USING  BGN7,12       CSECT COVER REGISTER
.
.
.
0002200          B      SYMB
0002300CST7B     CSECT
0002400SYMB     EQU      *
.
.
.
0003100          GATWR  AR,LNG
0003200          L      13,4(0,13)   RELOAD SAVE AREA BASE REG
0003300          RETURN (14,12)       RESTORE REGISTERS
0003400AR        DC      C'SUBPROGRAM7B FINISHED'
0003500LNG       DC      A(L'AR)
0003600          END
```

SYS:

The assembler scans the source input and finds no errors. The assembly process is completed and you are invited to enter your next command.

S,Y: Print LIST.SUB7B,, ,EDIT

SYS:

The print task is accepted for non-conversational processing. If you attempt to assemble a program with a module, control section, or external entry point name that already exists in the current library, your assembly will be completed but the module will not be stowed. You will then be allowed to enter a new JOBLIB name, after which the stow will be performed. Assume BSN=0626.

Because SUB7A and SUB7B object modules reside on different libraries, you don't notice that a control section name (EP1) in SUB7B duplicates an entry point name in SUB7A.

S,Y: MAIN7

Here you run MAIN7. It contains V-type address constants that name external entry points in both SUB7A and SUB7B. During the loading of MAIN7, SUB7A and SUB7B are loaded.

SYS: *** CSECT(EPL) IN MODULE (SUB7B) IS REJECTED BECAUSE PREVIOUSLY NAMED AS ENTRY POINT IN MODULE (SUB7A)

Your duplicated name is discovered at load time. This message tells you that, although SUB7B was loaded, its duplicated control section was not. Execution of MAIN7 is cancelled.

You decide to change the control section's name so that it will be loaded when you again run MAIN7.

S,Y: CANCEL BSN=0626

First you cancel the separate task that may still be printing the listings from the erroneous SUB7B assembly.

S,Y: UNLOAD NAME=MAIN7

Then you unload the erroneous module from your virtual storage. To do so, you unload MAIN7, which had caused the loading of SUB7B.

YOU: DDDNAME? JOBLIB=Y

Before you can reassemble, you must either cause a different library to be placed at the top of your program library list, or erase the erroneous object module. You choose to move one of your libraries. You request a review of your library chain.

SYS: DDNAME DSNAME
 LIBADD LIBA
 LIBCDD LIBC
 SYSULIB USERLIB
 LIBEDD LIBE

YOU: JOBLIBS DDNAME=SYSULIB

You request that your USERLIB be placed at the top of your program library chain.

YOU: DDDNAME? Y

You request that your JOBLIB chain be displayed.

SYS: DDNAME DSNAME
 SYSULIB USERLIB
 LIBADD LIBA
 LIBCDD LIBC
 LIBEDD LIBE

The system redefines your USERLIB to place it at the top of your JOBLIB chain and displays the chain. Your reassembled program will be placed in your USERLIB, eliminating the problem of duplicate entry point names.

S,Y: MODIFY SETNAME=SOURCE.SUB7B

Using the MODIFY command, you change the duplicate control section name in your source statement.

SYS:

Modifications are now solicited using the # sign.

S,Y: #
 900,CST7B CSECT
 #
 %E

You correct the source statement and then indicate the completion of modification with %E. Since review was not requested, the original form of the corrected line will not be presented to you.

S,Y: ASM SUB7B,Y

Now you reassemble the corrected source data set, which already exists.

Note that you never need to issue a DDEF command for a source data set that has been typed in earlier during the current session.

SYS:

The assembler scans the source input (as updated) and finds no errors. The assembly process is completed and you are invited to enter your next command.

S,Y: PRINT LIST.SUB7B,, ,EDIT

SYS:

The PRINT task is assigned a batch sequence number and accepted for non-conversational processing. Assume BSN=0627.

S,Y: CALL MAIN7

You run your main program again.

PGM: SUBPROGRAM7B FINISHED

This message is printed by the GATWR macro instruction in SUB7B, indicating its completion (and successful loading of your two subprograms). The RETURN macro instruction causes control to be returned to the caller (MAIN7). A RETURN macro instruction in MAIN7 is eventually executed, causing control to be returned to the terminal. For a more complete discussion of CALL/SAVE/RETURN linkage conventions, see Appendix C.

S,Y: ERASE DSNAME=SOURCE.MAIN7

S,Y: ERASE DSNAME=SOURCE.SUB7A

You no longer need your two prestored source data sets, so you erase them from storage and delete their catalog entries. You decide to retain the source data set named SOURCE.SUB7B.

S,Y: EXHIBIT BWQ

Before logging off, you decide to check on the status of your PRINT requests. This command causes a display of all Batch Work Queue entries assigned to your userid.

SYS:

```
BATCH WORK QUEUE STATUS AT 14:55          9/15/70
BSN  USERID  TID  TYPE  STAT  DEV  STAID  DSNAME
0625 ADUSERID 18  LIST  A    UR           SUB7A
0627 ADUSERID 18  LIST  P    UR           SUB7B
```

This display indicates that 0625 is active (A) and that 0627 is awaiting execution and pending (P). The absence of 0624 from the BWQ tells you that the job has been completed; 0626 does not appear since you cancelled it earlier.

S,Y: LOGOFF

SYS:

The LOGOFF is accepted by the system.

Example 8: Use of PCS Immediate Statements

In this example, you are executing a program for the first time. Since the Program Control System (PCS) provides complete debugging capability at execution time, you have not included any debugging facilities in your assembled program. Anticipating the use of PCS, you requested an ISD when the source program was assembled.

After the LOGON procedure is completed, you enter your first command.

S,Y: DDEF LIB8DD,,LIB8,OPTION=JOBLIB,DISP=OLD

You use this command to define the job library data set LIB8, which contains your assembled object modules. Although LIB8 is cataloged, you must define it with a DDEF command to make it available during this session.

S,Y: DEFAULT LIMEN=I

You desire all information messages to be presented at your terminal.

S,Y: PGM8

You cause the named object module to be loaded and executed.

When a module name is given as the command, execution begins at the module's standard entry point. It is the instruction named by the operand of the assembled END statement, or, if no operand is given, the first executable instruction in the first CSECT.

YOU: (press attention button)

When you do not receive the expected output after several minutes, you interrupt your program.

S,Y: !
STOP

The system prints an exclamation mark to indicate its readiness to accept a command after an attention interrupt. You enter the PCS STOP command to determine the location in your program of the next instruction that was to be executed when you interrupted execution.

SYS: STOP AT PGM8EXT.(X'DA') PSW 2 0 0 004A3070

The STOP command causes the display of the symbolic location and the PSW at the point the interrupt occurred. In this case, the interrupt occurred just prior to the instruction X'0A' (hexadecimal) bytes beyond the external symbol PGM8EXT. You can use this information to determine the corresponding source statement in the object listing.

The location of the interrupt is indicated as a displacement beyond the nearest internal symbol if you have issued a PCS command such as SET or AT. They make the ISD (and its internal symbols) available.

The rightmost field of the PSW gives the virtual storage address of the next instruction to be executed.

S,Y: LINE? DSNAME=SOURCE.PGM8,(2500,2600)

Suspecting that an undesirable loop has occurred in the convergence portion of your program, you request a printout of several of the source lines at the end of your convergence.

SYS: 0002500 CP DIFF, EPSILON
0002600 BH RECYCLE
S,Y: DISPLAY PGM8.EPSILON, PGM8.DIFF

You request a printout of the appropriate variables, and you explicitly qualify the internal symbols (EPSILON and DIFF by the module name (PGM8).

SYS: PGM8.EPSILON=+.10000000E+04
PGM8.DIFF=+.21301962E-02

S,Y: SET PGM8.EPSILON=1E-4

You decide to reestablish the value of the constant EPSILON to cause your program to converge more quickly.

SYS: PGM8.EPSILON=+.10000000E-03

After each SET is performed, a printout confirming the modification is available. The message filter code of I must be specified to obtain such information messages.

S,Y: GO

You issue the GO command to resume execution of the program. Since no operand is specified, execution resumes at the point of interruption.

PGM: JOB COMPLETED

Your program issues a message to the terminal to indicate successful completion of the program. Your program's RETURN macro instruction causes the typing of an underscore requesting the next command.

**S,Y: LOGOFF
SYS:**

The LOGOFF is accepted by the system.

Example 9: Use of PCS Dynamic Statements

In this example, you use some of the most powerful commands of the Program Control System to debug a complex program. PCS provides trace facilities, conditional program interruptions and modification of variables, and dumps.

After completing the LOGON procedure, you begin processing.

S,Y: DDEF DDCURR,,CURRENT,OPTION=JOBLIB,DISP=OLD

This DDEF command causes your job library CURRENT to be placed at the top of your program library list. CURRENT has been previously cataloged and contains assembled object modules.

S,Y: DDEF PCSOUT,VI,PCSOUT9

With the second DDEF command, you define the data set that will be filled by the PCS DUMP command, which you may print later. It requires the data definition name PCSOUT and virtual indexed (VI) organization. You name the data set PCSOUT9. It is automatically cataloged, since it will reside in public storage. The system defaults disposition to NEW, since the data set is being created in this task.

S,Y: LOAD MAIN9

The CALL command causes an object module to be loaded and then executed. Here you cause it to be loaded only. You do this so that you can insert AT statements in the module before executing it.

SYS: ***** UNDEFINED REF(FABLE) IN MODULE (MAIN9). ADDRESS FFFFFFF000 ASSIGNED.

The system issues a message indicating that MAIN9 has a reference to an external symbol (FABLE) that does not exist in the libraries searched. An invalid address had been assigned for the reference in MAIN9 that will cause an interrupt if program execution reaches it.

When you realize that the symbol has been misspelled in the source program, you enter the necessary commands to correct the situation.

S,Y: LOAD TABLE

You request the object module defining the external symbol TABLE to be loaded into virtual storage. The module would have been implicitly loaded when MAIN9 was loaded if the spelling had been correct. Loading the module at this point, however, does not correct the problem entirely. MAIN9 still contains the invalid reference, a V-type adcon. Before entering a SET command to place the proper value into the adcon, you qualify your program's internal symbols.

S,Y: QUALIFY MNAME=MAIN9

After issuing this command, you can refer to internal symbols without the qualifying module name; they will be automatically qualified with the prefix "MAIN9."

S,Y: SET ADDTAB=A'TABLE'

You request that the adcon defined in your source program by the name ADDTAB be set to the value of the address of external symbol TABLE. If you had not already explicitly loaded TABLE, you would have been prompted at this point to load the module containing it.

SYS:

Before it prints a symbol that you have qualified, the system reminds you of the qualification.

SYS: ADDTAB=0084C000

The contents of the modified adcon are displayed in hexadecimal. This is the virtual storage address of TABLE.

S,Y: AT LAST;STOP

This statement will cause your program to be interrupted when execution reaches the address corresponding to the statement named LAST.

SYS: 00001

The system assigns a number to each statement containing an AT (here 00001) that can be used for reference in removing the statements.

S,Y: CALL MAIN9

You initiate execution of the module. You must provide an operand in this call command, since a LOAD command naming another module has been entered after the loading of MAIN9.

SYS: E008 FIXED POINT DIVIDE INTERRUPT. PSW = BFC000900280A1A
INTERRUPT OCCURRED IN CSECT MAIN9C WITH DISPLACEMENT 000A1A FROM THE BEGINNING
OF THE CSECT

Your program does not contain a routine for handling this type of interrupt.

S,Y: LINE? DSNAME=SOURCE.MAIN9, (3200,3500)

You request a printout of several of your source statements that correspond to the location of the interrupt. Tab stops are set at columns 18 and 24.

SYS: 0003200 DIVRTN L 2,DVND
0003300 SRDA 2,32
0003400 D 2,DVSR
0003500 ST 3,QUOT

Your program does not provide protection against division by zero, so you insert the necessary checking.

S,Y: AT DIVRTN; IF DVSR=0;SET 3R=0;BRANCH DIVRTN. (12)

With this statement, you request that the value of DVSR be compared to zero upon arrival at DIVRTN. If it is equal, general register 3 is set to zero, and control transfers to the instruction twelve bytes beyond DIVRTN.

SYS: 00002

This is the number the system assigns to your AT command.

S,Y: BRANCH DIVRTN

You cause your program to begin execution at DIVRTN so that you can immediately check the effectiveness of the PCS statements.

SYS: AT DIVRTN PSW 3 0 0 00280A12 2

The system issues a response to the statement indicating that the IF command has resulted in a "TRUE" comparison. The 2 to the right of the PSW printout is the number of the AT statement that caused the printout.

SYS: RUNNING FROM DIVRTN. (12)

This indicates that the branch has been taken.

SYS: STOP AT LAST PSW 2 0 0 00280F02 1

Execution has reached the location corresponding to LAST. The STOP you specified earlier is executed.

S,Y: DISPLAY QUOT, RESULT

You request a printout of two key variables in your program.

SYS: QUOT=0
RESULT=1726

S,Y: REMOVE 1

You are convinced that the program is operating correctly, so you remove the dynamic STOP to prevent future interruption.

S,Y: GO

You cause your execution of your program to resume at the point of interruption.

PGM: JOB COMPLETED

Your program issues a message indicating its successful completion and then returns control to the keyboard.

S,Y: DUMP MN9PST

You request a hexadecimal dump of your PSECT by specifying its external name. It will be written in the PCSOUT9 data set you defined earlier. If you had used the internal name of the PSECT (MAIN.MN9PST), you would receive a formatted dump showing symbols and code in source format.

S,Y: RELEASE DDNAME=PCSOUT

If you wish to print the data set during this session, you must first issue a RELEASE command for its data definition. This causes the data set to be closed.

S,Y: PRINT PCSOUT9,,,,Y

Positional operand notation is used. The data set will be erased (Y) after it is printed. The commas specify options for which you have chosen the default.

SYS:

The data set will be printed as a separate task. A batch sequence number will be assigned for system control.

S,Y: LOGOFF

SYS:

The LOGOFF is accepted by the system. Remember that the alterations you made to your program with the PCS commands (SET,AT) exist only in virtual storage. If you want to make permanent changes to a program, you must reassemble from an altered source data set. This causes the changes to be incorporated into the object module, which you would then load.

Changes you make with the SET command remain in effect as long as the program is loaded. By contrast, changes you make with AT commands in *any* of your programs are completely removed if you issue an UNLOAD command, even if the program you unload does not contain AT statements and is not linked to other programs. Logging off causes all of your programs to be unloaded from virtual storage.

Example 10: Input and Output on Magnetic Tape

In the previous examples, all of your data sets resided on direct-access devices (disks). In this example, your data sets reside on tape.

In Part 1, you execute a program that reads a cataloged data set from tape and writes a data set on a new tape, which you then catalog.

In Part 2, the same program reads a cataloged data set created on tape by OS or OS/VS and then writes a data set on the same tape you cataloged in Part 1.

Part 1: Reading a Cataloged Labeled Data Set

You complete the LOGON procedure and begin your task. Your previously-assembled program includes the following source statements:

```

MN1OPST  PSECT
          ENTRY  CST10
          ENTRY  EOD10
          ENTRY  SYN10
          DC     F'76'          SAVE AREA LENGTH
          DC     18F'0'        REMAINDER OF SAVE AREA
AREA      DS     80C
DCBIN1   DCB     DDNAME=IN1ODD,EODAD=EOD10,SYNAD=SYN10
DCBOUT1  DCB     DDNAME=OUT1ODD,RECFM=F,LRECL=80,SYNAD=SYN10
MN1OCST  CSECT
CST10    SAVE    (14,12)      SAVE REGISTERS IN CALLER'S SAVE AREA
          L      14,72(0,13)  GET RCON FROM CALLER'S SAVE AREA
          ST    14,8(0,13)    STORE FORWARD POINTER
          ST    13,4(0,14)    STORE BACKWARD POINTER
          LR    13,14         SET PSECT AND SAVE AREA REGISTER
          USING MN1OPST,13    PSECT COVER REGISTER
          LR    12,15
          USING CST10,12     CSECT COVER REGISTER
          .
          .
          .
AGAIN    OPEN    (DCBIN1,,DCBOUT1,(OUTPUT))  OPEN DCBS
          READ   IN1DECB,SF,DCBIN1,AREA      READ INPUT RECORD
          CHECK  IN1DECB
          .
          .
          .
          (modify record)
          .
          .
          .
          WRITE  OUT1DECB,SF,DCBOUT1,AREA    WRITE OUTPUT RECORD
          CHECK  OUT1DECB
          B      AGAIN                       RECYCLE
EOD10    CLOSE  (DCBIN1,,DCBOUT1)          CLOSE DCBS
          LA    1,OKMSG
EXIT     EXIT  (1)                          RETURN TO TERMINAL
SYN10    LA    1,SYNMSG
          B      EXIT
OKMSG    DC    AL1(L'M1)                    MESSAGE LENGTH IN FIRST
M1       DC    C'PROGRAM FINISHED OK'
SYNMSG   DC    AL1(L'M2)                    BYTE OF MESSAGE
M2       DC    C'SYN ERROR'
          END

```

The program reads a record from one data set, modifies the record, and then writes it in a data set on another tape.

The CHECK is required to complete a READ or WRITE I/O request. It detects any errors or exceptional conditions that may occur and, when these arise, transfers control to the external symbol specified in the EODAD or SYNAD DCB field. When the program attempts to read past the last record, control is passed to EOD10 and the DCB's are closed.

The EXIT macro instruction causes an appropriate message to be printed, and then returns control to the terminal. Notice that each DCB contains the name of one of your DDEF commands, which in turn specifies the data set described by the DCB.

S,Y: DDEF IN10DD,,IN10,DISP=OLD

Since your input data set is already cataloged, you need entry only these parameters. The omitted information is provided by the catalog entry and by the tape label, which was created by the system when the data set was written. OLD indicates that the data set exists.

SYS:

You will be notified that your task is waiting for the system operator to mount your tape reel (a private volume). The system obtains its volume serial number from your catalog. When the tape volume has been mounted and activated, your task will proceed.

S,Y: DDEF DDNAME=OUT10DD,DSORG=PS,DSNAME=OUT10,UNIT=(TA,9),VOLUME=-
(PRIVATE),LABEL=(,SL)

You found it necessary to continue your command operands on a second line. Here you define the output data set your program will write on tape. It is not cataloged and is not yet created, so you must supply all the necessary parameters in your DCB and DDEF. Note that the continuation hyphen may occur anywhere so long as it is the last non-blank character in the line.

The data set is to have physical sequential (PS) organization, as do all data sets residing on magnetic tape.

The UNIT field of this DDEF command indicates that your data set is to reside on a 9-track tape.

The DISPOSITION field is defaulted (by omission), indicating that the data set is NEW (i.e., does not now exist).

The VOLUME field specifies a private volume (all tapes are private). You have not specified the volume serial number of a tape reel in VOLUME field; so the system instructs the operator to choose a tape reel from the installation pool.

The LABEL field specifies that the system is to create standard labels (SL) on the tape when creating the data set.

SYS:

You must wait for the operator to select a tape reel, mount it, and inform the system of its volume serial number. You will then be informed of the selected volume, at your terminal, for future reference.

SYS: MAIN10

Now you run your program.

PGM: EXIT, RELEASE ALL UNNEEDED DEVICES
PROGRAM FINISHED OK

At the conclusion of your program, EXIT prints the messages and returns control to the terminal; this is indicated by the underscore.

YOU: CATALOG OUT10

You catalog your data set. Only VAM data sets are automatically cataloged when created.

S,Y: LOGOFF

SYS:

LOGOFF was accepted by the system. In previous examples, your data sets were all automatically cataloged on public disks. Public disks remain mounted while the system is operational; they contain data sets belonging to the users with whom you share the system.

Your private volumes (all tapes and your own private disks) are dismounted at the end of your task and later retained. Thus, it is not necessary to catalog them in order to preserve them. However, cataloging your private volumes (disks and tapes) enables you to write DCB macro instructions and issue DDEF commands with the minimum required parameters. The system obtains the missing parameters from your catalog entry.

Part 2: Reading a Cataloged but Unlabeled OS or OS/VS Data Set

You complete the LOGON procedure and enter your first command.

S,Y: DDEF IN1ODD,,*STUFF,DISP=OLD

You define your input data set. It differs from the input data set in Part 1 in several ways:

- It was created under OS or OS/VS. You indicate this by specifying the data set name with an asterisk preceding.
- It is unlabeled. This means that you cannot use the label to provide any of the DCB and DDEF parameters. Those not specified in your DCB macro instruction or DDEF command are taken from the catalog entry. Appendix E provides further details about these sources and the order in which they are searched.

SYS:

You will be notified that your task is waiting for the system operator to mount your tape reel (a private volume). The system obtains its volume serial number from your catalog. When the tape volume has been mounted and activated, your task will proceed.

S,Y: DDEF OUT1ODD,PS,OUT1OA,UNIT=(TA,9),VOLUME=(,101010),LABEL=(2,,)

You decide to write your output data set on the same tape reel you used in Part 1. You indicate that it will be the second data set on the tape with the 2 in the LABEL field. You previously omitted this parameter (default=1, or first). The data set does not now exist, so you choose the default for disposition (NEW) and omit the field.

S,Y: CALL MAIN10

You run the program described in Part 1 of this example. Note that the DDEF command enables you to supply various data set and volume information at the terminal.

PGM: EXIT, RELEASE ALL UNNEEDED DEVICES

PGM: PROGRAM FINISHED OK

S,Y: RELEASE IN1ODD

This command deletes the DDEF command you issued earlier, thereby withdrawing definition of the data set. Accordingly, the system instructs the operator to dismount your tape reel and save it. The unit on which it was mounted is now free for other use.

S,Y: CATALOG OUT1OA,N

Positional operand notation is used here. You catalog your new data set, indicating with the N that the catalog entry to be created for it is new (not currently cataloged). By default, access will be unlimited.

S,Y: LOGOFF

SYS:

The LOGOFF is accepted by the system. The label for a data set on tape is similar to the data set control block (DSCB) provided by the system when a data set on a disk is first created. Both contain information about the data set that may be required when the data set is processed. Appendix E provides further details.

Example 11: Conversational Initiation of Nonconversational Tasks

It is often more convenient to have your programs run after you have left the terminal—that is, to have them run in nonconversational mode. Two ways of doing this are shown in this example.

In Part 1, you begin your task conversationally and then use the `BACK` command to switch its execution to the nonconversational mode.

In Part 2, you construct a nonconversational task and then use the `EXECUTE` command to cause it to be executed at a later time.

Part 1: The BACK Command

You complete the LOGON procedure and begin processing.

S,Y: DATA DSNAME=BACKPROG

With this command, you build the SYSIN data set (named BACKPROG) that will provide input to your task after you have switched to nonconversational mode. You do not need to issue a DDEF command for the data set created by a DATA command.

S,Y: #DDEF OUT11,,OUTDS,DISP=OLD

The system prompts (with #) for the first command to be executed in your nonconversational task. This DDEF command defines the cataloged data set that MAIN11 has previously written and which will be written over when MAIN11 is run. It resides on a public disk.

S,Y: #CALL MAIN11

This program is already assembled and its object module resides on your USERLIB data set, which never requires a DDEF command. It includes the following statements:

MN11PST	PSECT		
	ENTRY	STRT11	
	DC	F'76'	SAVE AREA LENGTH
	DC	18F'0'	REMAINDER OF SAVE AREA
AREA	DS	80C	DATA AREA
DCBOUT	DCB	DDNAME=OUT11	
MN11CST	CSECT		
STRT11	SAVE	(14,12)	SAVE REGISTERS IN CALLER'S SV AREA
	L	14,72(0,13)	GET RCON FROM CALLER'S SAVE AREA
	ST	14,8(0,13)	STORE FORWARD POINTER
	ST	13,4(0,14)	STORE BACKWARD POINTER
	LR	13,14	SET PSECT AND SAVE AREA REGISTER
	USING	MN11PST,13	PSECT COVER REGISTER
	LR	12,15	
	USING	STRT11,12	CSECT COVER REGISTER
	.		
	.		
	.		
ALPHA	OPEN	(DCBOUT,(OUTPUT))	OPEN OUTPUT DCB
	GATRD	AREA,LNG	READ FROM SYSIN
	CLI	AREA+3,C'E'	REACHED END?
	BE	FINISH	BRANCH IF YES
	.		
	.		
	.		
	create a record		
	.		
	.		
	.		

	PUT	DCBOUT,AREA	WRITE RECORD
	B	ALPHA	RECYCLE
FINISH	CLOSE	(DCBOUT)	CLOSE DCB
	.		
	.		
LNG	DC	F'80'	AREA LENGTH
	END		

Notice how the DDEF command specifying the same data definition name as specified in your DCB statement contains the name of the desired output data set.

S,Y: #
PART 0049628-49-11-MODEL 879

S,Y: #
PART 0078928-49-11 MODEL 127

S,Y: #
PART 0078927-49-10 MODEL 127
.
.
.
This is part of the data to be read by GATRD.

S,Y: #
E

You identify the end of your data with E. Your task will be abnormally terminated if GATRD attempts to read past the end of SYSIN.

Note that errors made while entering this data and the entire command sequence under the DATA command are not detected until the nonconversational task is executed.

S,Y: #
LOGOFF

S,Y: #
%E

You enter %E to indicate the end of your BACKPROG data set. The system then prompts you with the underscore to continue your conversational task.

S,Y: BACK DSNAME=BACKPROG
SYS:

Beginning with the first command in your BACKPROG data set (DDEF OUT11...), your task is continued nonconversationally. If the system is not able to accept your request, the BACK command is rejected. It can be re-issued later during this session.

Your nonconversational task will be abnormally terminated if it attempts to access a data set on a private volume for which you have not issued a DDEF command prior to issuing the BACK command. The operator must have mounted any required volumes before the nonconversational task is created.

The conversational part of the task is now finished. You can leave the terminal or log on again.

WARNING: The BACK command may not complete its operation if the attention key is depressed shortly after issuing the command. The result is a non-conversational task still connected to a terminal. Wait a few seconds before reinitiating LOGON procedures.

Part 2: The EXECUTE Command

You complete the LOGON procedure and begin your task.

S,Y: DATA DSNAME=EXECPROG

You now build the SYSIN for the separate nonconversational task that is to be executed later. The system prompts for commands and data with the number sign. When the data set EXECPROG is completed, it will be automatically cataloged. This cataloging is a function of the DDEF issued when the DATA command is used.

S,Y: #

LOGON ADUSERID,,,ADACCT29

You provide information for the LOGON of the nonconversational task (LOGON starts in column 3). Except for the inclusion of this command, the task is exactly the same as the one you constructed in Part I of this example. No password is given for a non-conversational task.

If any private volumes were to be used during the nonconversational task, a SECURE command would be needed at this point. The command would notify the operator to secure a unit for your private volume(s) and mount them before the task is initiated.

S,Y: #

DDEF OUT11,,OUTDS,DISP=OLD

This command defines the cataloged data set on which your program (MAIN11) will write its output.

S,Y: #

MAIN11

This program is already assembled and stored on your USERLIB, which doesn't require a DDEF command. Its relevant statements are shown in Part I.

S,Y: #

PART 0049628-49-10 MODEL 879

S,Y: #

PART 0078928-49-11 MODEL 127

S,Y: #

PART 0078927-49-10 MODEL 127

This is your input data.

S,Y: #

E

S,Y: #

LOGOFF

S,Y: #

%E

S,Y: EXECUTE DSNAME=EXECPROG

SYS:

Your request for a nonconversational task has been accepted by the system. The task is initiated when system resources are available.

The data set EXECPROG will provide the SYSIN for your nonconversational task. Its SYSOUT will consist of system messages and any output to SYSOUT generated by your program. SYSOUT is printed later as a separate nonconversational task, and the listing is identified as yours. The system prompts you with an underscore (below). You are free to enter any command sequence to continue your conversational task.

S,Y: LOGOFF

This LOGOFF is for your conversational task.

SYS:

LOGOFF is accepted by the system.

Example 12: Preparing a Job for Nonconversational Processing

It is not always convenient or efficient to use remote terminals to create or initiate nonconversational tasks. In this example, your task is on punched cards. You submit to the machine room the card deck that contains the commands and data for your task. The operator then enters them into the system.

```
LOGON ADUSERID,,,ADACCT29
```

You initiate your nonconversational task with the LOGON command. All LOGON parameters must be included on one card. For nonconversational tasks, the password parameter must be omitted. This command must begin in the third column. The first two columns *must* be blank.

```
ASM AT2EX12,N,LISTDS=N
```

You construct the same program as in Example 4 specifying different external symbols to avoid duplication when your assembled object module is placed on USERLIB.

Remembering that you cataloged the source data set in Example 4, you use a different module name so that the source data set created during this assembly will have a different name. You indicate that you do not want a list data set. Your listings will therefore be printed automatically on SYSOUT and no record of them retained after printing.

```
PST12      PSECT
           ENTRY BEGIN12
           DC     F'76'
           DC     18F'0'
AREA       DC     F'0'          RD/WR AREA
CST12      CSECT
BEGIN12    SAVE    (14,12)
           L      14,72(0,13)
           ST     14,8(0,13)
           ST     13,4(0,14)
           LR     13,14
           USING  PST12,13
           BASR  11,0
           USING *,11          LOCAL BASE REG
HERE       EQU     *
           GATRD AREA+3,LENGTH READ FROM SYSIN
           CLI   AREA+3,C'E'   CHECK IF END
           BE    LEAVE         BRANCH IF YES
           MVZ  AREA+3(1),=X'00' CONVERT TO BINARY
           L    5,AREA
           SLA  5,1           MULT BY 2
* RESTRICTED TO INTEGERS FROM 0 TO 4
           ST   5,AREA
           MVZ AREA+3(1),=X'FF' CONVERT TO EBCDIC
           GATWR AREA+3,LENGTH WRITE ON SYSOUT
           B    HERE
LEAVE      EXIT   'PGM FINISHED'
LENGTH     DC    F'1'          LENGTH OF AREA
           END
```

You could have assembled from a prestored source data set, just as in conversational mode.

AT2EX12

2
1
3

When your program is executed, it will attempt to read data from SYSIN, which is this stream of commands and data. Here you supply the input for three cycles of GATRD.

E

This entry signals the end of data input and will cause your program to branch to EXIT, which will return control to SYSIN. The next command in the SYSIN stream below will then be executed.

At the completion of your task, SYSOUT will be printed as a separate task. It will contain commands, listings, and the program output generated by GATWR. SYSOUT will include neither program input (2,1,3) nor assembler parameters (AT2EX12,N). It will include your listings since you specified in your ASM command that no list data set was required.

LOGOFF

Unlike the LOGON command, LOGOFF permits no parameters. All data set disposition must be completed before LOGOFF. The data set named SOURCE.AT2EX12 will be automatically cataloged by the system. No user action is necessary. A DDEF is issued at ASM time, accommodating the module name AT2EX12, by prefixing SOURCE to the object module name.

After completion of this task, you may execute AT2EX12 again, since the object module will be retained on USERLIB.

The LOGOFF command must begin in card column 3.

Example 13: Storing DDEF Commands for Later Use

In this example, you create a data set containing DDEF commands for frequently used data sets. Your DDEF commands create a library hierarchy that permits you to select various versions of identically named subroutines.

You complete the LOGON procedure and enter your first command.

S,Y: DATA DDPACK,I,(100,100)

Positional parameter notation is used here. The DATA command can be used to store any data, source statements, or commands you wish to enter through the terminal. Here you store a set of frequently-used DDEF commands in a data set you name DDPACK. They are stored as character strings in a line data set, but are interpreted as commands when they are later retrieved with the CDD command. The system prompts you by typing a line number for each line, since indexing was specified. The data set named DDPACK will be automatically defined and cataloged by the system.

S,Y: 0000100DDEF JOB1DD,,JOB1,OPTION=JOBLIB

S,Y: 0000200DDEF JOB2DD,,JOB2,OPTION=JOBLIB

A mixture of positional and keyword parameter notation is used here. These two DDEF commands define the cataloged job libraries that contain the object modules of your subroutines. They already exist, so you specify their dispositions as OLD, by default.

S,Y: 0000300DDEF IN13DD,,IN13,DISP=OLD

Your program is to retrieve its input from the cataloged data set in IN13.

S,Y: 0000400DDEF OUT13DD,VS,OUT13,VOLUME=(,131313),UNIT=(DA1,2311)

Your output data set will reside on a private disk whose volume serial number is 131313.

S,Y: 0000500%E

You signal the end of the data set containing your DDEF commands. The system then prompts for the next conversational command with the underscore.

S,Y: CDD DSNAME=DDPACK,(JOB2DD,IN13DD,OUT13DD)

This command causes the three DDEF statements in DDPACK that you specify to be entered in SYSIN. If you omit the DDNAME field, all the DDEF commands are entered in SYSIN.

The data set containing the DDEF commands must be defined for the current session (which it was when created by the DATA command), or be cataloged.

SYS: DDEF JOB2DD,,JOB2,OPTION=JOBLIB

SYS: DDEF IN13DD,,IN13,DISP=OLD

Each DDEF command that is issued is printed at the terminal.

SYS: DDEF OUT13DD,VS,OUT13,VOLUME=(,131313),UNIT=(DA,2311)

SYS:

You must wait for the operator to mount your private disk. No wait was required for the two data sets above because they are on public volumes which remain mounted while the system is operational. A message will advise you of the wait state.

S,Y: CALL MAIN13

Your program, which is stored on your USERLIB, calls two subroutines (SUB13A and SUB13B).

You previously assembled a version of SUB13A and stored it on JOB1. Later you re-assembled another version and stored it on JOB2. For this session, you want to use the version on JOB2, so you issue a DDEF command for JOB2, but not for JOB1 (see CDD parameters). Thus, your program library list begins with JOB2, then USERLIB, and then SYSLIB; this is the order in which the loader searches for object modules.

Versions of SUB13B are stored in JOB1 and USERLIB. Since JOB1 job library is not in your program library list, the version on USERLIB will be loaded.

PGM: MAIN13 FINISHED

Your program prints this message with a GATWR macro instruction and then returns control to the caller (the system) with a RETURN macro instruction. The system then prompts with the underscore.

S,Y: LOGOFF
SYS:

The LOGOFF is accepted by the system.

All VAM data sets are automatically cataloged. Your private volume is dismounted by the operator and retained at the installation.

Example 14: Writing and Updating Virtual Index Sequential Data Sets

In the first part of this example, you run a program that reads a virtual sequential (vs) data set. After reading a record, the program adds a key to it and then writes the record into a virtual index sequential (vi) data set. The process is then repeated until all the records have been indexed.

In the second part, another program modifies the VISAM data set by deleting records.

Both of these data sets are on disks.

Part 1: Writing a VI Data Set

You complete the LOGON procedure and begin processing your task.

You are going to run a program which adds an index to each record of a VS data set, and then writes the modified records in a VI data set. The program includes the following statements:

```
MN14APST  PSECT
          ENTRY  MN14
          ENTRY  EOD14A
          ENTRY  SYN14A
          DC     F'76'                SAVE AREA LENGTH
          DC     18F'0'              REMAINDER OF SAVE AREA
AREA      DS     84C                 TEMP RECORD STORAGE
DCBIN14   DCB    DDNAME=IN14DD,EODAD=EOD14A
DCBOUT14  DCB    DDNAME=OUT14DD,SYNAD=SYN14A,LRECL=84,RECFM=F,DSORG=VI,KE-
          YLEN=4,RKP=0

MN14ACST  CSECT
MN14      SAVE   (14,12)             SAVE REGISTERS IN CALLER'S SV AREA
          L      14,72(0,13)        GET RCON FROM CALLER'S SAVE AREA
          ST     14,8(0,13)         STORE FORWARD POINTER
          ST     13,4(0,14)         STORE BACKWARD POINTER
          LR     13,14              SET PSECT AND SAVE AREA REGISTER
          USING  MN14APST,13        PSECT COVER REGISTER
          LR     12,15
          USING  MN14,12            CSECT COVER REGISTER
          .
          .
          OPEN   (DCBIN14,,DCBOUT14,(OUTPUT)) OPEN DCB'S
          LA     10,0               INITIALIZE KEY VALUE
ALPHA     GET    DCBIN14,AREA+4     GET VSAM RECORD
          ST     10,AREA            SET KEY VALUE
          LA     10,1(10)           INCREMENT VALUE
          PUT    DCBOUT14,AREA      PUT VISAM RECORD
          B      ALPHA              RECYCLE
EOD14A    CLOSE  (DCBIN14,,DCBOUT14) CLOSE DCB'S
          EXIT   OKMSG
SYN14A    CLOSE  (DCBIN14,,DCBOUT14) CLOSE DCB'S
          EXIT   SYNMSG
OKMSG     DC     A(L'OK)
OK        DC     C'FINISHED OK'
SYNMSG    DC     A(L'SYN)
SYN       DC     C'SYN ERROR OCCURRED'
          END
```

S,Y: DDEF IN14DD,,MYVSDATA

You define the VS data set which provides input to your program. At execution time, the parameters that you omitted from the DCB macro instruction and from this command will be provided from the catalog and the data set's DSCB. These fields are: LRECL(80),RECFM(F),UNIT(DA,2311).

S,Y: DDEF OUT14DD,VI,MYVIDATA,UNIT=(DA,2311),VOLUME=(,141414)

The data set which your program creates is to reside on one of your own disks. Since there is no DSCB until the data set is created, and no catalog entry, you must specify all the required parameters in your DCB macro instruction and in this DDEF command. The DSORG parameter is not necessary, but supplying it prevents the system from providing a default option that you may not want.

S,Y: MAIN14A

Now you run your program. Entry is at the first byte of the first CSECT since the operand of the END statement was blank.

PGM: EXIT, RELEASE ALL UNNEEDED DEVICES
FINISHED OK

When it has finished, the EXIT macro prints a message and causes control to be returned to the terminal. It then prompts with the underscore.

S,Y: ERASE MYVSDATA

No longer needing your input data set, you erase it from public storage and delete its catalog entry.

S,Y: LOGOFF
SYS:

LOGOFF is accepted by the system.

Part 2: Updating a VI Data Set

You complete the LOGON procedure and begin your task.

A program named UPDATER reads records from the data set you saved in part 1. It deletes any that begin with "A". It includes the following statements:

UPDPST	PSECT		
	ENTRY	START	
	ENTRY	EODUPD	
	ENTRY	SYNUPD	
	DC	F'76'	SAVE AREA LENGTH
	DC	18F'0'	REMAINDER OF SAVE AREA
DCBDEL	DCB	DDNAME=OUT14DD,SYNAD=SYNUPD,EODAD=EODUPD	
KEYLOC	DS	F	
AREA	DS	84C	
UPDCST	CSECT		
START	SAVE	(14,12)	SAVE REGISTERS IN CALLER'S SAVE AREA
	L	14,72(0,13)	GET RCON FROM CALLER'S SAVE AREA
	ST	14,8(0,13)	STORE FORWARD POINTER
	ST	13,4(0,14)	STORE BACKWARD POINTER
	LR	13,14	SET PSECT AND SAVE AREA REGISTER
	USING	UPDPST,13	PSECT COVER REGISTER
	LR	12,15	

	USING	START,12	CSECT COVER REGISTER
	.		
	.		
	OPEN	(DCBDEL,(UPDAT))	OPEN DCB FOR INPUT & UPDATE
	LA	4,0	INITIALIZE KEY VALUE
ALPHA	ST	4,KEYLOC	SET VALUE IN KEYLOC
	READ	DCBDEL,KY,DCBDEL,AREA,KEYLOC	READ RECORD AT KEY VALUE
	CLI	AREA+4,C'A'	BEGINS WITH A?
	BNE	BUMP	BRANCH IF NO
	LA	0,KEYLOC	SET KEYLOC ADDRESS
	DELREC	DCBDEL,K,(0)	DELETE RECORD
BUMP	LA	4,1(4)	INCREMENT KEY VALUE
	B	ALPHA	RECYCLE
EODUPD	CLOSE	(DCBDEL)	CLOSE DCB
	LA	1,OKMSG	SET OK MESSAGE
LEAVE	EXIT	(1)	EXIT
SYNUPD	LA	1,SYNMSG	SET ERROR MESSAGE
	B	LEAVE	
OKMSG	DC	A(L'OK)	
OK	DC	C'FINISHED DATA SET'	
SYNMSG	DC	A(L'SYN)	
SYN	DC	C'SYN ERROR OCCURRED'	
	END		

S,Y: DDEF OUT140D,,MYVIDATA

You define the data set which your program reads, and from which it deletes records. Since it is cataloged, you need provide only the minimum DDEF parameters.

S,Y: UPDATER

You have previously assembled this program. Its object module resides on your USERLIB.

PGM: EXIT, RELEASE ALL UNNEEDED DEVICES
FINISHED DATA SET

After your program is completed, the EXIT macro instruction prints its messages and returns control to the terminal.

S,Y: LOGOFF

SYS:

LOGOFF is accepted by the system.

Example 15: Missing Subroutines

In this example, you attempt to execute a program that refers to a missing subroutine. In Part 1, you proceed without the subroutine; in Part 2, you alter your program library list to make the subroutine available.

Part 1: Proceeding Without a Missing Subroutine

You complete the LOGON procedure and enter your first command.

S,Y: CALL MAIN15

The CALL command causes the object module to be loaded from your USERLIB and then executed.

SYS: *****UNDEFINED REF(SUB15) IN MODULE (MAIN15) ADDRESS FFFFFFF000 ASSIGNED.
(MAIN15) ERROR IN LOADING MODULE.
STATEMENT REJECTED.

MAIN15 contains a reference to SUB15. During loading, SUB15 could not be found, so the loader assigned an invalid address that will cause an interrupt if the execution of MAIN15 ever reaches that reference.

The second message indicates that MAIN15 has been loaded but that the execution part of CALL has been rejected.

S,Y: CALL MAIN15

You know that this reference will not be encountered during execution, so you decide to run without SUB15.

PGM: MAIN15 COMPLETED

Successful completion of your program is indicated by this message.

S,Y: LOGOFF
SYS:

LOGOFF is accepted by the system.

Part 2: Supplying the Missing Subroutine

S,Y: MAIN15

After logging on, you again attempt to load and execute your program.

SYS: *****UNDEFINED REF(SUB15) IN MODULE (MAIN15) ADDRESS FFFFFFF000 ASSIGNED.
(MAIN15) ERROR IN LOADING MODULE.
STATEMENT REJECTED.

And again your subroutine cannot be found. But this time you decide to provide it.

S,Y: UNLOAD MAIN15

First you must unload MAIN15 from virtual storage, since it contains the invalid references to SUB15.

S,Y: DDEF LIB15DD,VP,LIB15,DISP=OLD,OPTION=JOBLIB

The object module for SUB15 is stored in your LIB15 job library. Issuing this DDEF command places the library at the top of your program library list. Now, when MAIN15 is loaded, the reference to SUB15 will be satisfied.

S,Y: MAIN15

This time when MAIN15 is loaded the reference is satisfied from your LIB15 job library.

PGM: MAIN15 COMPLETED

And your program runs to completion.

S,Y: LOGOFF
SYS:

LOGOFF is accepted by the system.

Example 16: Entering Data for Later Use

In this example, you use the terminal keyboard to enter statements of a source data set directly into the system, rather than keypunching them and then entering the card deck.

After completing the LOGON procedure, you enter your first command.

S,Y: EDIT SOURCE.READER

Positional operand notation is used.

You specify the fully-qualified name of the source data set that you are about to enter at the keyboard. The EDITOR will create a virtual indexed-sequential data set. This indexing is necessary if you should enter an erroneous line and want to correct your keyboard input. ASM also requires the line numbering (indexing). The data set is automatically defined, cataloged, and placed on a public disk.

The system prompts for your statements by issuing the next line number it has assigned.

Seven digit line numbers are shown, to indicate the maximum length of the numbers.

```
S,Y: 0000100PST16      PSECT
S,Y: 0000200          ENTRY  BEGIN16
S,Y: 0000300          DC      F'76'
S,Y: 0000400          DC      18F'0'
S,Y: 0000500CST16     CSECT
S,Y: 0000600BEGIN16  BASR    11,0
S,Y: 0000700          USING  *,11          LOCAL BASE REGISTER
S,Y: 0000800          L      13,72(0,13)
S,Y: 0000900          USING  PST16,13
S,Y: 0001000HERE     EQU     *
S,Y: 0001100          GATRD  AREA+3,LENGTH  READ FROM SYSIN
S,Y: 0001200          CLI    AREA+3,C'E'    CHECK IF END
S,Y: 0001300          BE     LEAVE         BRANCH IF YES
S,Y: 0001400          MVZ   AREA+3(1),=X'00' CONVERT TO BINARY
S,Y: 0001500          L      5,AERA
                      REA
```

You notice your typing error before you press the carriage return key. You backspace three times, move the paper up a line to avoid over-typing, and enter the correct letters. Then you press the carriage return key.

```
S,Y: 0001600          SLA    5,1          MULTIPLY BY 2
S,Y: 0001700*RESTRICTED TO INTEGER FROM 0 TO 4
S,Y: 0001800          ST     5,AREA
S,Y: 0001900          MVZ   AREA+3(1),=X'FF'  CONVERT TO EBCDIC
S,Y: 0002000          GATWR AREA+3,LENGTH  WRITE ON SYSOUT
S,Y: 0002100          B      THERE
S,Y: 0002200LEAVE    EXIT   'PGM FINISHED'
S,Y: 0002300AREA     DC     F'0'          READ/WRITE AREA
S,Y: 0002400LENGTH  DC     F'1'          LENGTH AREA
S,Y: 0002500 _REVISE 2100
```

After you are prompted for the number 2500, you notice an error in line 2100. You enter _REVISE 2100 and then the new line. To insert a new line, simply give it a line number that falls between two existing line numbers.

```
S,Y: 0002500          B      HERE
S,Y: EXCISE 1700
```

Here you delete line number 1700.

```
S,Y: INSERT 0002500
S,Y: 0002500          END
```

You are again prompted to enter line number 2500 and you do so.

S,Y: 0002600 _END

The _END indicates completion of your data set. The system then prompts for another command with the underscore.

S,Y: EDIT SOURCE.READER
S,Y: LIST

To check on the accuracy of your corrections, you cause your source data set to be printed at the terminal. (You could also have printed it on the high-speed printer by issuing a PRINT command; the dsname parameter would be SOURCE.READER).

```

S,Y: 0000100 PST16 PSECT
S,Y: 0000200 ENTRY BEGIN16
S,Y: 0000300 DC F'76'
S,Y: 0000400 DC 18F'0'
S,Y: 0000500 CST16 CSECT
S,Y: 0000600 BEGIN16 BASR 11,0
S,Y: 0000700 USING *,11 LOCAL BASE REGISTER
S,Y: 0000800 L 13,72(0,13)
S,Y: 0000900 USING PST16,13
S,Y: 0001000 HERE EQU *
S,Y: 0001100 GATRD AREA+3,LENGTH READ FROM SYSIN
S,Y: 0001200 CLI AREA+3,C'E' CHECK IF END
S,Y: 0001300 BE LEAVE BRANCH IF YES
S,Y: 0001400 MVZ AREA+3(1),=X'00' CONVERT TO BINARY
S,Y: 0001500 L 5,AREA
S,Y: 0001600 SLA 5,1 MULTIPLY BY 2
S,Y: 0001800 ST 5,AREA
S,Y: 0001900 MVZ AREA+3(1),=X'FF' CONVERT TO EBCDIC
S,Y: 0002000 GATWR AREA+3,LENGTH WRITE ON SYSOUT
S,Y: 0002100 B HERE
S,Y: 0002200 LEAVE EXIT 'PGM FINISHED'
S,Y: 0002300 AREA DC F'0' READ/WRITE AREA
S,Y: 0002400 LENGTH DC F'1' LENGTH AREA
S,Y: 0002500 END
S,Y: INSERT 450

```

You notice a modifiable work space named AREA in the CSECT. You decide to follow recommended programming practice and put it in the PSECT.

S,Y: 0000450 AREA DC F'0' READ/WRITE AREA

S,Y: EXCISE 2300

S,Y: _END

You have successfully deleted line 2300. This was the AREA entry in the CSECT. Now you signal the end of modifications by typing _END.

S,Y: LOGOFF
SYS:

LOGOFF is accepted by the system.

The data set SOURCE.READER will be available for future use, since it was automatically cataloged. If you decide at a later time to add extensively to the data set named SOURCE.READER (line 2500 and beyond), you simply issue a DDEF command for the data set. After removing the present END statement (using the MODIFY command), a DATA command with a start line number of 2500 will allow you to continue the building of the line data set begun earlier. The DATA command will function with existing data sets as well as with ones that are being created in the current task.

Example 17: Data Set Considerations When Interrupting Program Execution

In this example you discover that a program you are running is reading the wrong data set. You interrupt it, supply the correct data set, and continue.

After completing the LOGON procedure, you begin processing your task.

S,Y: EVV 2311,171717

The data set from which your program will receive its information (IN17A) resides on a private volume which was created originally for another system and has therefore not been cataloged for your system. You present it to the present system with the Enter Vam Volumes (EVV) command, specifying device type (2311) and volume number (171717). All data sets on volume 171717 that have not been previously cataloged for this system will be automatically cataloged.

S,Y: DDEF IN17DD,,IN17A

The data set was automatically cataloged as a result of the EVV command. Only minimum parameters are now required to describe it in the DDEF command.

SYS:

A message will advise you the task is waiting for the operator to mount your private disk volume. Once the volume is mounted, you will be advised that your task is ready to proceed.

S,Y: MAIN17

PGM: AVERAGE I.Q. OF COMPUTER PROGRAMMERS IS: 0.30103

Your program contains a GATWR macro instruction to print the results of its computation on the terminal.

YOU: (press attention button)

Noticing slightly incorrect output, you interrupt your task during printout of output. See Appendix D for a discussion of attention interrupt handling.

SYS: !

YOU: UNLOAD MAIN17

The system prompts you with the exclamation point; you can now enter any command.

Suspecting incorrect input data, you decide to select another input data set that resides on a different disk. The DCB for data set IN17A in your program has been opened. It contains information that describes the incorrect data set. Unloading your program closes all of its open Data Control Blocks (DCB).

S,Y: RELEASE IN17DD

Now you release the DDEF for the incorrect data set. The previous DDEF is canceled and the operator is instructed to remove your private disk. The unit on which it was mounted is now available for other use.

S,Y: DDEF IN17DD,,OTHER17

You define another data set that is on a public disk. No waiting is necessary since public volumes remain mounted while the system is operational.

S,Y: MAIN17

You again load your program. This time the DCB for DDNAME=IN17DD is filled in for the data set named OTHER17.

PGM: AVERAGE I.Q. OF COMPUTER PROGRAMMERS IS: 198.6

Your program prints correct results, and returns control to the terminal.

S,Y: LOGOFF

SYS:

LOGOFF is accepted by the system.

Example 18: Sharing Data Sets

This example shows how data sets can be shared by several users of the system. Part 1 shows a session during which another user makes one of his data sets available to you. Part 2, shows how you copy the data set so that you can make changes to it.

Part 1: Permitting Access to a Data Set

USR: (presses attention button or dials up the system)
LOGON ABPALID,PASSME,,ABACCT2

Another user's LOGON is shown here. His identification is ABPALID.

SYS:

The system will complete the LOGON procedure and invite the user to begin his task.

S,Y: PERMIT DATA,ADUSERID,RO

Positional operand notation is used here. He makes available to you all of his cataloged data sets whose left-most name qualifier is DATA. Thus you may share his data sets below this level of index in the catalog, such as those named DATA.Q1, DATA.Q2, DATA.Q1.AA, DATA.Q1.AB, etc. He could have made only a certain data set available by specifying its fully qualified name, e.g., DATA.Q5.

Read-only (RO) means that you may only read the specified data sets. He could have permitted read/write (RW), or unlimited (U) access. The latter would allow you to erase the data set. Notice that these access types differ from those of the CATALOG command.

S,Y: PERMIT INFO,ADUKU,R

With this command the user withdraws the access (R means restrict) to his INFO data set that he has previously permitted to the user whose identification is ADUKU.

S,Y: LOGOFF

SYS:

LOGOFF is accepted by the system.

The LOGOFF command has caused this user's (ABPALID) catalog entry for the specified group of data sets to be marked so that you can access them by issuing the proper SHARE command. An ABEND command could also have been used to update his catalog.

Part 2: Accessing a Shared Data Set

YOU: (press attention button or dial up the system)
LOGON ADUSERID,MYPASS*,,ADACCT29

Now you log on to share ABPALID's data set.

SYS:

The system will complete the LOGON procedure and invite you to begin your task.

S,Y: SHARE MYDATA,ABPALID,DATA

Positional operand notation is used. For each data set the owner has cataloged with the left-most qualifier "DATA," an entry will be created in your catalog under the left-most qualifier "MYDATA." This command is rejected if the owner has not granted access to you with the PERMIT command.

Since you have been permitted read-only-access, you must make your own copy of the data set MYDATA.Q1.AA before you can modify it. Before issuing the CDS command, you may define the data set into which the contents of MYDATA.Q1.AA will be copied. However, if you do not define it, CDS will do it for you.

S,Y: CDS DSNAME1=MYDATA.Q1.AA,DSNAME2=MYOWND.Q1.AA

To refer to a specific data set to which you have been permitted access, you must append to the partially-qualified name you have assigned it, the same rightmost name that the owner has assigned it; in this case Q1.AA.

The name you assign to the new data set (MYOWND.Q1.AA) makes it easy to relate it to the original data set; you could have assigned any name.

You still have read-only access to the original data set (MYDATA.Q1.AA in your catalog).

S,Y: LOGOFF

The SHARE command caused entries to be created in your catalog for the group of data sets whose left-most qualifier is MYDATA. They point to the owner's data sets.

You must remember that if the owner erases or deletes one of his data sets which you share, its entry in *your* catalog is not removed. You would then use the DELETE command to update your catalog.

You should also note that the ERASE command for a shared data set is disregarded if there are any active users for that data set. Conversationally, a diagnostic will be issued, to alert you to system action.

SYS:

LOGOFF is accepted by the system.

Example 19: Switching Between Terminal and Card Reader for Input

If a card reader is available at your terminal, it can be used for entering commands and data.

In this example, you switch the SYSIN of your conversational task from keyboard to card reader. You have prepared a deck of cards that contains part of your command stream, your source program, and input data.

Your card deck is shown below. It includes a source program similar to the one you used in Examples 4 and 12.

```

ASM ATMS2,N
PST19    PSECT
        ENTRY  BEGIN19
        DC     F'76'
        DC     18F'0'
AREA     DC     F'0'
CST19    CSECT
BEGIN19  BASR   11,0
        USING  *,11
        L     13,72(0,13)
        USING  PST19,13
HERE     EQU    *
        GATRD  AREA+3,LENGTH
        CLI   AREA+3,C'E'
        BE    LEAVE
        MVZ   AREA+3(1),=X'00'
        L     5,AREA
        SLA   5,1
* RESTRICTED TO INTEGERS FROM 0 TO 4
        ST    5,AREA
        MVZ   AREA+3(1),=X'FF'
        GATWR  AREA+3,LENGTH
        B     HERE
LEAVE    EXIT   'PGM FINISHED'
LENGTH  DC     F'1'
        END
        PRINT LIST.ATMS2(0),,,EDIT,ERASE
        KB    Return to keyboard
ATMS2
2        Input
1        data for
3        program ATMS2
E        End of data
KB

```

LOGON and
assembler
parameters

READ/WRITE AREA

LOCAL BASE REG

Source
Statements

LENGTH OF AREA

After completing the LOGON procedure, you place your card deck in the card reader and begin your task. The cards must be cut in the upper left corner.

YOU: CB

You switch SYSIN to the card reader. You can do this anytime the system is waiting for keyboard input if the desired cards are ready in the card reader.

Since the terminal is in send-receive mode, each card image is printed on the terminal as if it had been typed in at the keyboard.

S,C: ASM ATMS2,N

Positional operand notation is used. The system prompts for source statements by issuing a line number. It then reads the statement from the card reader.

```

S,C: 0000100PST19      PSECT
S,C: 0000200          ENTRY  BEGIN19
S,C: 0000300          DC      F'76'
S,C: 0000400          DC      18F'0'
S,C: 0000500AREA      DC      F'0'          READ/WRITE AREA
S,C: 0000600CST19     CSECT
S,C: 0000700BEGIN19  BASR    11,0
S,C: 0000800          USING  *,11          LOCAL BASE REGISTER
      (rest of source program)
      .
      .
S,C: 0002200LENGTH    DC      F'1'          LENGTH OF AREA
S,C: 0002300          END

```

SYS: The source input is scanned and you are notified that your assembly has been completed.

S,C: PRINT LIST.ATMS2,,,EDIT,Y
SYS: Your program has been assembled without error. The printing of its listings has been assigned to a separate nonconversational task with a unique BSN. You decide to erase the data set as soon as the printing is completed.

S,C: KB
This card causes SYSIN to switch to the keyboard, and the system then prompts with the underscore. SYSIN is also transferred to the keyboard when you press the attention button.

S,Y: CANCEL 0137
You decide that you don't want your listing data set printed now, so you cancel the print request. BSN 0137 is assumed here.

S,Y: CB
You can enter CB to switch SYSIN to the card reader at any time. Your program reads data from the card reader and prints results (with GATWR) on SYSOUT.

S,C: ATMS2
Execution of your program has reached the GATRD macro instruction. The system prompts you for SYSIN data, which you have included in the card deck.

```

CIP: 2
PGM: 4
CIP: 1
PGM: 2
CIP: 3
PGM: 6

```

CIP: E
END of data for program ATMS2.

S,C: KB
This card causes SYSIN to be switched to the keyboard, and the system then prompts with an underscore.

S,Y: ERASE SOURCE.ATMS2
The data set named SOURCE.ATMS2 will have been automatically cataloged by the system. You have no further need of it, so you erase it.

S,Y: LOGOFF
SYS: LOGOFF is accepted by the system.

Example 20: Anticipating an Interrupt in a Nonconversational Task

In this example, you create a nonconversational task on cards. To prevent your task from being abnormally ended if a fixed-point overflow occurs during the running of your program, you include in the program an interrupt handling routine. Your program uses the SPEC, SIR and DIR macro instructions. Refer to Appendix D for more details.

The SYSIN for your task consists of the cards below.

LOGON ADUSERID, , , ADACCT29

A nonconversational task is initiated with a LOGON command that must include the parameters on the same card. The password is not used.

This command must begin in column 3; columns 1 and 2 must be blank.

SECURE (DA=1,2311)

All devices required for private volumes in a nonconversational task must be specified by a SECURE command. It must immediately follow the LOGON command.

You specify that your task requires one 2311 disk unit.

DDEF JOBLDD, , JOBL, UNIT=(DA,2311), VOLUME=(,202020), OPTION=JOBLIB

This command will define your job library for this session. It causes the operator to mount your disk (volume serial number 202020) on the device secured in the preceding command. If you do not issue it, your task will be terminated when it reaches this point.

EDIT SOURCE.MYPGM

You specify that a data set is to be constructed from the cards that follow, and is to be named MYPGM. You plan to assemble from it later in your task.

Your program computes $\Sigma (A_i + B_i)$ where $i=10$. If a fixed-point overflow occurs, Σ is set to zero.

Your program includes the following source statements.

PSTMYP	PSECT		
	ENTRY	MYSTRT	
	ENTRY	SIGMA	
	DC	F'76'	LENGTH SAVE AREA
	DC	18F'0'	REMAINDER OF SAVE AREA
DELTA	SPEC	EP=SIGMA, COMAREA=RHO, INTTYP=IF	
RHO	DS	4F	INTERRUPT COMMUNICATION AREA
ALPHA	DS	10F	ALPHA VALUES
BETA	DS	10F	BETA VALUES
CSTMYP	CSECT		
MYSTRT	SAVE	(14,12)	SAVE REGISTERS IN CALLER'S SV AREA
	L	14,72(0,13)	GET RCON FROM CALLER'S SAVE AREA
	ST	14,8(0,13)	STORE FORWARD POINTER
	ST	13,4(0,14)	STORE BACKWARD POINTER
	LR	13,14	SET PSECT AND SAVE AREA REGISTER
	USING	PSTMYP,13	PSECT COVER REGISTER
	LR	12,15	
	USING	MYSTRT,12	CSECT COVER REGISTER
		.	
		.	
		.	
	SIR	DELTA,127	SPECIFY INTERRUPT ROUTINE
	LA	8,4	INCREMENT BY 4
	LA	9,40	SET FOR 10 SUMMATIONS
	SR	6,6	INITIALIZE SUMMATION REGISTER
	SR	5,5	AND BEGINNING DISPLACEMENT
OMEGA	L	4,ALPHA(0,5)	GET ALPH VALUE
	A	4,BETA(0,5)	ADD BETA VALUE
	AR	6,4	SUM PO R6
	BXLE	5,8,OMEGA	RECYCLE UNTIL FINISHED


```

DIR      DELTA
.
.
EXIT     'MYPGM FINISHED'
*INTERRUPT ROUTINE FOR FIXED-POINT OVERFLOW
SIGMA    SAVE (14,12)
SR       4,4
LR       3,0
ST       4,36(0,3)
RETURN   (14,12)
END

```

DELETE INTERRUPT ROUTINE

SET REG 4 (SUM) TO ZERO
SAVE AREA TO REG 3
ZERO IN SAVE AREA'S REG 4
RETURN

Since you cannot process from the terminal any interrupts which may occur during the execution of your nonconversational task, you include in your program a routine to handle a type of interrupt which may occur. The SPEC macro instruction generates an interrupt control block (ICB), and specifies the entry point of that routine (SIGMA). The name specified on the SPEC macro instruction becomes the name of the ICB to which the SIR and DIR macro instruction will refer.

Control is transferred to the routine beginning at SIGMA when a fixed-point overflow (interrupt type IF) occurs. The routine sets the value of the register containing the overflowed sum to zero.

The SIR macro instruction establishes system references to the interrupt routine you specify in the SPEC macro instruction. When the specified interrupt occurs, your program's registers are stored in a save area to which register zero points. Your interrupt routine must therefore store in this save area any registers for the interrupted routine it wishes to alter. After executing the interrupt routine, your program's registers are restored from the save area, and execution of your program resumes at the next instruction past the interrupt.

The DIR macro instruction disables the specified SIR macro instruction. It is needed only when you want the same type of interrupt to be handled by a routine which specifies a lower priority, or by the system.

Execution of the EXIT macro instruction causes the specified message to be printed on SYSOUT and control to return to the system. The next record will then be read from SYSIN.

END

This card will signal the end of your source data set. SOURCE.MYPGM will be automatically cataloged.

ASM MYPGM, Y

Positional notation is used for ASM operands. This command will activate the assembler and cause the program named in the parameter card to be assembled from the prestored source data set.

You are not asked for modification when running in nonconversational mode.

MYPGM

This command will cause your newly-assembled program to be run.

LOGOFF

The LOGOFF command *must* begin in card column 3.

Example 21: Housekeeping

Periodically you should take inventory of your data sets and dispose of the ones you no longer need. In this example, you delete several old data sets residing on tapes, erase some unneeded data sets residing on public storage, convert a source data set to punched cards, and copy another data set from a public disk to tape.

After completing the LOGON procedure, the system invites you to begin your task.

S,Y: PC?

This command causes brief catalog entries for all of your data sets to be printed at your terminal. If you had specified a fully qualified data set name as operand, you would be presented with the status of that data set only; if you had specified a partially qualified data set name as operand, each data set possessing the same qualification would be presented.

```
SYS: DATA SETS IN CATALOG WITH QUALIFIER ADUSERID
ADUSERID.ABLE.1, ACCESS=RW
ADUSERID.ABLE.2, ACCESS=RO
ADUSERID.BAKER, ACCESS=RO, OWNER=ROGERG**
.
.
ADUSERID.OUT10, ACCESS=RW
ADUSERID.SOURCE.AT2, ACCESS=RW
ADUSERID.SOURCE.AT2EX12, ACCESS=RW
```

YOU: (press attention button)

By pressing the attention button you have terminated the presentation of the catalog. You need more information about two of your data sets and request this with a DSS? command.

S,Y: DSS? OUT10

```
SYS: ADUSERID.OUT10
VOLUME:101010 (9-TRACK TAPE)
ORGANIZATION: PS
```

S,Y: DSS? SOURCE.AT2EX12

```
SYS: VOLUME: PB8171 (2314)
ORGANIZATION: VI
REFERENCE DATE: 195/70
RECORD FORMAT: V
KEY LENGTH: 00007
PAGES: 00001
CHANGE DATE: 195/70
RECORD LENGTH: 00132
KEY POSITION: 00004
```

S,Y: DELETE OUT10

You decide to use tape 101010 as a scratch tape, and to ignore the data set named OUT10. So you issue this command to delete the entry in your catalog for the data set.

S,Y: PUNCH DSNAME=SOURCE.AT2EX12, STARTNO=9,ENDNO=88,ERASE=Y

You decide that your AT2EX12 program is used too infrequently to warrant retention on the system. With this command you cause its source program to be punched on cards which you will retain. By specifying the ninth character of your terminal line as the first character to be punched in column 1 (STARTNO=9) you will cause the suppression of the system-supplied 7-digit line number and of the input indicator in column 8. Your last character (ENDNO=88) will be punched in column 80 on the card. You specify that the data set is to be erased at the conclusion of the punch task.

SYS:

The system informs you that a nonconversational task has been established for your PUNCH request. A unique batch sequence number (BSN) will be given to you at the terminal.

S,Y: ERASE SOURCE.AT2

You decide to also erase another source program which is similar to the one you had punched on cards. It is erased from storage, and its catalog entry is deleted.

S,Y: POD? USERLIB,,Y

Now you request a list of each object module on your USERLIB. You specify that for each module, the listing of any aliases. An alias is an external name other than the module name such as CSECT name or external entry point name. Member oriented data (system and user) is omitted by default.

SYS:

The requested data for each member of USERLIB will be presented at your terminal.

S,Y: ERASE USERLIB(AT2EX12)

You erase your AT2EX12 object program module from your USERLIB and delete its entry from the USERLIB directory. All forms of your AT2EX12 program have been removed from the system. You retain only the source program on the card deck.

**S,Y: WT DSNAME=SOURCE.ATIMES,DSNAME2=SVATIMES,VOLUME=999999,STARTNO=9,-
ENDNO=88,ERASE=Y**

This command causes the creation of a separate nonconversational task to write your SOURCE.ATIMES data set on one of your tapes (volume number 999999). You specify start and end column numbers so that the tape can be later used to print or punch the data set.

SYS:

The system informs you that a nonconversational task, with a unique BSN, has been established for your WT (write tape) request.

After the data set is written, its public disk storage is erased and the catalog entry for SOURCE.ATIMES is deleted (because of the ERASE parameter). A new catalog entry is created for the data set SVATIMES.

S,Y: USAGE

You request a listing of all resources that have been used by you since you were joined to the system. This will be useful to you for accounting purposes and will show you whether you are currently using more storage than you reasonably need so that you may delete unnecessary data sets. The USAGE command will also list your user limits for each resource as well as the resources you have been using since the current LOGON, a facility you can use in planning a task and in making sure that you will not exceed the number of devices allocated to you.

SYS:

You will receive an accounting for the following resources: permanent storage (in pages used), temporary storage, direct-access devices, magnetic tapes, printers, card reader-punches, bulk input, bulk output, TSS tasks, total time that your terminal was connected to the system, and CPU time used.

S,Y: LOGOFF

SYS:

The system accepts the LOGOFF request.

Example 22: Use of Generation Data Groups

Successive, historically related data sets can be cataloged as a generation data group (GDG)—(for example, similar payroll records that are created every week). They can be stored and accessed by their relative generation number (mostly recently stored is 0, next previous is -1, etc.). Or, each data set (called a generation) in the group can be referred to by its absolute generation name (this is explained in Part 2 of this example).

This example shows the establishment of a GDG and both types of references. It also illustrates the use of private libraries and tapes.

Part 1: Establishing a Generation Data Group and Relative References

You complete the LOGON procedure and begin your task.

S,Y: DDEF PAYLIBDD, ,PAYLIB,OPTION=JOBLIB

You define for this session your job library data set which is on your own private disk. In it resides your program for establishing a GDG for processing payroll records. Since it is the most recently defined library, the system places it at the top of your program library list.

SYS:

You will be notified that your task is waiting for the operator to mount the private volume defined above. The task will proceed when mounting is complete.

S,Y: DDEF CRNTDD, ,CURRENT

You also define for this session the data set which contains this week's report for your payroll program.

SYS:

Your task will wait while the operator is mounting the private volume containing the data set named CURRENT.

S,Y: CATALOG GDG=PAYROLL,GNO=5,ERASE=Y

This command causes the establishment of a special entry in your catalog to describe the generation data group named PAYROLL. You specify that a maximum of five data sets (generations) are to be maintained in the GDG. You will be adding generations in chronological order, thus retaining only the most recent five. The oldest generation will be erased when there are more than five.

S,Y: DDEF WK37DD,VS,PAYROLL(+1)

You define the new data set (or generation) which your program will write. It will reside on public storage by default. The system will automatically catalog it. A positive relative number (in this case 1) designates a generation about to be created. (0) is used to refer to the most recently created generation, (-1) the generation just prior to the most recent, etc. When a new generation is cataloged, that generation assumes relative number (0) and all other relative generation numbers are decreased by one.

S,Y: PAYUPDAT

You cause your payroll updating program to be loaded from your private library, and run. It reads your data set named CURRENT, processes it, and then writes the data set (generation) you defined above. Then it prints a message at the terminal.

PGM: 'WEEK37' PAYROLL FINISHED.

A data set which was written during a previous session can be added to this GDG. You would simply use the CATALOG command to change its data set name to PAYROLL (+1).

S,Y: LOGOFF
SYS:

LOGOFF is then accepted by the system.

Part 2: Absolute Reference

You complete the LOGON procedure and begin your task.

S,Y: DDEF PAYLIBDD,,PAYLIB,OPTION=JOBLIB
You define the job library.

SYS:
You will be notified that your task is waiting for the operator to mount the private volume defined above. The task will proceed when mounting is complete.

S,Y: DDEF CRNTDD,,CURRENT
You define the cataloged data set which contains payroll information for this week.

S,Y: DDEF WK37DD,,PAYROLL(0)
You also define the data set you wrote and cataloged last week. Your program uses it for input too.

S,Y: DDEF WK38DD,VS,PAYROLL(+1)
This command defines the data set your program will write for this week, and automatically places the entry in your catalog, as PAYROLL(0).
The data set for last week can now be referred to as PAYROLL(-1).
You may also refer to a data set in a generation data group by its absolute generation number. The system provides a unique name for each generation (by which it is cataloged by appending to the group name the absolute generation number of the form GxxxxVyy, where xxxx is the generation number and yy indicates the version of a particular generation.

S,Y: PAYUPDAT
Again you run your payroll updating program.

PGM: 'WEEK38' PAYROLL FINISHED.

And your program prints its message.

The oldest generation in your catalog PAYROLL(-1) has been assigned the absolute generation name PAYROLL.G0001V00, and the current generation PAYROLL(0) has been assigned the name PAYROLL.G0002V00.

You can provide gaps in the sequence of absolute generation numbers by specifying a relative generation number greater than +1 when you define the latest generation. Thus, if you had specified +3 in the DDEF command above (instead of +1), the absolute generation names would be PAYROLL.G0001V00 and PAYROLL.G0004V00. However, the relative numbers would be PAYROLL(-1) and PAYROLL(0), respectively. If you now insert a generation with absolute name PAYROLL.G0003V00, the relative numbers would be adjusted.

Absolute generation names are useful if you want to update a generation with a new version. The system does not automatically create nonzero version numbers. You can do so with the CATALOG command, as shown below.

S,Y: DDEF CHNGDD,VS,CHNGWK37

You define a cataloged data set which one of your payroll programs will write.

S,Y: PAYCHNG

This program alters last week's payroll data set and writes a temporary data set.

S,Y: CATALOG DSNAME=CHNGWK37, STATE=U, ACC=U, NEWNAME=PAYROLL.G0001V01

You specify that your catalog entry is to be updated (U) so that it points to the altered data set, which is identified by a new version number. Since the data set which was replaced is on public storage, it is automatically erased.

S,Y: LOGOFF
SYS:

LOGOFF is accepted by the system.

Example 23: Creating and Using a User Macro-Library

A number of macro definitions are made available to you with TSS. Examples of these are CALL, SAVE, and RETURN. These macros are defined on a TSS library termed the "System Macro Library." You may, if you wish, create a macro library for your private use, termed a "user macro library." This example describes how you create and use such libraries. Appendix A gives more detailed information on user macro libraries.

Since user macro libraries contain many lines, they are usually created in nonconversational mode, as they are in this example.

```
LOGON ADUSERID,,,ADACCT40
LOGON and LOGOFF must begin in the third column.
```

```
EDIT USERSYM,TOTAL,8
```

This command will cause the system to create a REGION data set named USERSYM from the statements that follow it. These statements will define your macros. The first region will be called TOTAL. The keys for each region will be 15 bytes long, position 1 to 8 for the name of the region, positions 9-15 for the line counter.

```
0000100 MACRO
0000200 TOTAL &NUM,&REG,&AREA
0000300 L      &REG,&NUM(1)
0000400 A      &REG,&NUM(2)
0000500 A      &REG,&NUM(3)
0000600 ST     &REG,&AREA
0000700 MEND
```

The first macro you create is named TOTAL. The macro definition is given between the MACRO and MEND statements.

```
0000800 _REGION PREFIX
```

This command describes the next region of your macro library.

```
0000100 MACRO
0000200 PREFIX &PSECT
0000300 L      14,72(0,13)  GET PSECT POINTER
0000400 ST     14,8(0,13)  FORWARD POINTER
0000500 ST     13,4(0,14)  BACKWARD POINTER
0000600 LR     13,14      PSECT BASE REG
0000700 USING &PSECT,13
0000800 MEND
```

Your second macro is named PREFIX. This macro contains code that is generally executed following a SAVE macro instruction.

```
00009000 _REGION TESTD
```

This command describes the next region of your macro library.

```
0000100 TESTD      DSECT
0000200 LENGTH     DS      F      RECORD LENGTH
0000300 LINE       DS      7C     RETR LINE NO
0000400 CODE        DS      X      INPUT CODE
0000500 INDATA     DS      80C    INPUT DATA
```

Your last entry to your macro library is not a macro but a DSECT copy parcel named TESTD. (Although TESTD is not a macro, it will sometimes be considered one in general discussions of your user macro library). The assembler will cause this DSECT to be brought into your program when it encounters your statement:

```
COPY TESTD
```

```
0000600 _END
```

The _END will signal entry of the last line of the USERSYM data set—your macro library.

DDEF SOURCE,VI,USERSYM
 DDEF INDEX,VS,USERNDX

These two commands will define for the current task the macro definition and index data sets. SOURCE and INDEX are data definition names required by the SYSINDEX service routine. They will be automatically cataloged as new data sets, with access qualifier=U.

SYSINDEX

The SYSINDEX routine will scan the data set containing your macro definitions and copy parcel (USERSYM). It will then create a data set that you named USERNDX when it was defined in the previous command. This data set will contain the names of your two macro definitions and the copy parcel.

UNLOAD SYSINDEX

As the SYSINDEX routine is no longer needed, you may unload it.

ASM TESX,N,(SOURCE,INDEX),LISTDS=Y

You will then assemble a program using your newly-defined macro library. (Position operand notation is used for ASM in this example).

Your assembler parameters provide the module name TESX and specify that source lines are not prestored (N). SOURCE and INDEX are the ddnames for the definition and index data sets. In nonconversational mode you must ask for a list data set explicitly.

Note that DDEF commands for SOURCE and INDEX were issued preceding the execution of SYSINDEX, so you need not issue them again. The data set named SOURCE.TESX will be *automatically defined and cataloged* by the system.

MACRO

The next 7 source statements show how you may define a macro (named MOVE) within your source statements. This macro would override a macro of the same name defined in your macro library.

```

&NAME      MOVE    &TO,&FROM
&NAME      ST      2,TEMPAREA
            L      2,&FROM
            ST     2,&TO
            L      2,TEMPAREA
            MEND
TESTP      PSECT
            DC     F'76' LENGTH SAVE AREA
TEMP       DC     18F'0' REMAINDER OF SAVE AREA
TEMPAREA  DC     F'0'
MESSAGE    DS     CL80  MSG LOCN
MSGLEN     DC     F'0'  MSG LEN
MSGIN      DC     F'92'
            DC     C'0000100'
            DC     X'00'
            DC     CL80'TEST MOVE EXECUTED'
ENTRY     TESTE
COPY      TESTD
  
```

The five lines in your macro library with the name TESTD will be copied without change into your source program at this point.

```

TEST       CSECT
TESTE     SAVE    (14,12)
          PREFIX TESTP
  
```

The statements that are normally used following a SAVE macro instruction will be copied here, including a USING TESTP,13 instruction.


```
USING TESTD,3
USING TESTE,12
LR 12,15 LOAD COVER REG
LA 3,LENGTH COVER DSECT
MOVE MSGLEN,LENGTH DATA LENGTH
```

The macro instruction defined in this assembly will be expanded here.

```
MVC MESSAGE,INDATA MOVE DATA
GATWR MESSAGE,MSGLEN WRITE DATA
L 13,4(13) RESTORE CALLING REG
RETURN (14,12),T
END TESTE
```

```
PRINT LIST.TESX,,EDIT,Y
```

Positional operand notation is used here. The system will establish a nonconversational task to print the current generation of LIST.TESX. The data set will be erased after printing is completed.

```
TESX
LOGOFF
```

You run your program and then LOGOFF. SOURCE.TESX has been automatically cataloged at ASM time. The system issued the necessary DDEF command.

Example 24: Use of the Linkage Editor

In this example, the basic facilities of the linkage editor are shown. Object modules LEMOD1, LEMOD2, and LEMOD3 are assumed to already exist. You desire to first link these three modules that reside in a library on the program library list. You then wish to combine two control sections (CSECT1 and CSECT2) of a fourth module (EYLE1) and add it to the output. This example is divided into two parts, to portray the linkage editor use with both dynamic and prestored control statements.

Part 1: Conversational Linkage Editing: Control Statements Entered from the Terminal Keyboard

You complete the LOGON procedure and begin your task.

Define Libraries: You may then either enter DDEF commands that are required to identify the libraries to be used during this linkage editor run, or, as shown below, retrieve the DDEF commands from a previously cataloged line data set.

```
S,Y: CDD DSNAME=LNKED.DD
SYS:
```

Retrieves the DDEF commands cataloged under the data set name LNKED.DD, and prints each on SYSOUT. One DDEF is used to define the library LKLIB1 used in the LNK command.

```
S,Y: LNK NAME=TS2LNK,STORED=N,LIB=LKLIB1,ISD=N,PMD=Y,LINCR=(500,100)
SYS:
```

Processes the parameters specified. You have told the system that control statements are not prestored, the control statements will begin at line 500, a special library (LKLIB1) has been established for the object module produced, you do not want an ISD, you desire the PMD listing. When the linkage editor is ready for a control statement, you will receive the first line number at your terminal. You enter the content for the line and press the return key. The line is then made available to the linkage editor.

```
S,Y: 0000500INCLUDE (LEM0D1,LEM0D2,LEM0D3)
S,Y: 0000600COMBINE CSECT1,CSECT2
```

As each control statement is received by the linkage editor, it is analyzed for correctness and processed according to the particular functions it specifies. If errors are discovered by the linkage editor, a diagnostic message is typed at the terminal, prompting you to correct the statement in error. The modules LEMOD1, LEMOD2, and LEMOD3 exist in USERLIB or in the libraries named in the DDEF commands containing OPTION=JOBLIB. The CDD command produced these DDEF commands.

```
S,Y: 0000700INCLUDE, (EYLE1)
SYS: 0000700 E***ILLEGAL DELIMITER
S,Y: #
      700,INCLUDE (EYLE1)
```

You correct the statement in error.

```
SYS: #
YOU (press return key)
S,Y: 0000800END
```

You signify that all desired linkage editor control statements have been entered by specifying an END control statement. At this time the linkage editor attempts to resolve any unresolved external references by an automatic search of the libraries on the program library list. It then provides a list, at the terminal, of all finally outstanding unresolved external references, distinguishing those that can be resolved from SYSLIB from those that need resolution from USERLIB or job libraries at execution time.

SYS:

The linkage editor finds no errors and completes necessary processing. The output module is automatically stored in the library with ddname LKLIB1. The names of the original modules are retained as auxiliary entry points of the link edited module. Linkage editor processing is thus concluded. The system solicits your next command.

S,Y: LOGOFF

SYS:

The system accepts the LOGOFF request.

Part 2: Conversational Linkage Editing: Control Statements from a Prestored Data Set

This is identical to Part 1, except that the linkage editor control statements are obtained from a prestored data set. Thus, correction lines are treated in a slightly different manner.

.
.
.
Statements as shown in Part 1.
.
.
.

S,Y: LNK TSZLNK,Y,LKLIB1,,N,Y,(500,100)

SYS:

Processes the parameters specified. Here, however, you have indicated that control statements are prestored.

.
.
.
SYS: 0000700 E***ILLEGAL DELIMITER

The diagnostic message appears at the keyboard.

The keyboard is unlocked so that you may make a correction.

S,Y: #

700,INCLUDE (EYLE1)

You enter the correction line.

SYS: #

YOU: (press return key)

Statements as shown in Part 1.
.
.
.

Example 25: Tape and Disk-Medium Transfers of Virtual Access Method Data Sets

In this example, three commands provided for manipulation of VAM data sets are presented. They are TV (TAPE to VAM), VT (VAM to TAPE), and VV (VAM to VAM). The data sets *to be copied* are assumed to exist, and are cataloged.

You complete the LOGON procedure and begin your task.

S,Y: DDEF DDVTOUT,PS,COPY1,UNIT=(TA,9),VOLUME=(PRIVATE)
S,Y: VT DSNAME1=ORIGIN1,DSNAME2=COPY1

Data set ORIGIN1 already exists as a VAM data set. COPY1 is the name assigned to the magnetic tape copy of this data set. The installation default for LABEL is assumed.

SYS:

When the data set is successfully copied, you will receive a message indicating the names of the input and output data sets, as well as the file sequence numbers and volume serial numbers used.

S,Y: RELEASE DDVTOUT

You wish to copy another data set (ORIGIN2) onto another tape. You therefore release DDVTOUT and issue command again.

S,Y: DDEF DDVTOUT,PS,COPY2,UNIT=(TA,9),VOLUME=(PRIVATE)
S,Y: VT ORIGIN2

Here the output data set name is not given. The output data set name will become ADUSERID.TA000001.ORIGIN2, where TA000001 is an arbitrary number to assure uniqueness for the fully-qualified data set name.

SYS:

The system will signify a successful copy. Any failure to copy successfully will result in a diagnostic message and cancellation of the command.

S,Y: DDEF DDCOPYB,VS,COPYBACK
S,Y: TV DSNAME1=ADUSERID.TA000001.ORIGIN2,DSNAME2=COPYBACK
SYS:

The data set just produced on a 9-track magnetic tape is copied on direct access storage (public) in VAM format. An appropriate system message will be issued to signify whether or not the copy attempt was successful. It is assumed that ORIGIN2 was a virtual sequential data set. COPYBACK is thus defined as having VS organization.

S,Y: DDEF DDCOPY3,VI,COPY3
S,Y: VV DSNAME1=ORIGIN3,DSNAME2=COPY3

The data set named ORIGIN3 is copied into public storage, assigning the name COPY3. It is assumed that ORIGIN3 has virtual index sequential organization. Therefore COPY3 is so defined.

SYS:

An appropriate system message will appear, signifying the success or failure of the copy operation.

S,Y: DDEF PRIVDD,VI,COPY4,UNIT=(DA,2311),VOLUME=(,333333)
S,Y: VV DSNAME1=ORIGIN4,DSNAME2=COPY4

You desire to copy the data set ORIGIN4 onto a private VAM volume #333333 and name the output data set COPY4.

SYS:

An appropriate message will appear, signifying the success or failure of the copy operation.

S,Y: LOGOFF
SYS:

Your LOGOFF request is accepted by the system. Your new data sets were automatically cataloged.

Example 26: The Text Editor Facility

In this example, the basic use of the Text Editor facility is illustrated. One of the most important applications of this facility is to create and edit data sets.

You complete the LOGON procedure and begin your task.

S,Y: EDIT DSNAME=EX26

You invoked the Text Editor with this command. A DDEF command is not required unless you are creating a new data set with a format differing from your default values. You will be prompted with line numbers to enter text.

S,Y: 0000100 DEMO1
S,Y: 0000200 DEMO2
S,Y: 0000300 DEMO3

You enter data lines you wish to be part of the data set named EX26. Each time you press the return key, the Text Editor prompts with the next line number.

S,Y: 0000400 _UPDATE

You decide to make a change to the previous entries. By preceding UPDATE with an underscore, known as a break character (_), the Text Editor immediately executes the command.

SYS:

The system will issue a message prompting for line number and data.

YOU: 0000150 INSERT1

You add line number 150 to your data set.

YOU: _INSERT 0000400

You now want to continue entering data at the point where you left off earlier. INSERT is preceded by a break character, since the system expects data and not a command following UPDATE.

S,Y: 0000400 DEMO4
S,Y: 0000500 DEMO5
S,Y: 0000600 _END

You terminate Text Editor processing.

S,Y: EDIT DSNAME=EX26

You reinitiate editing on the same data set.

S,Y: EXCISE N1=0000200

Line number 200 of the data set will be deleted.

S,Y: INSERT 260,10

You wish to insert additional lines, starting with line 260 and proceeding in increments of 10.

S,Y: 0000260 INSERT2
S,Y: 0000270 INSERT3
S,Y: 0000280 _END

Text Editor processing is terminated.

S,Y: LOGOFF
SYS:

You decide to terminate your conversational task. The system accepts the LOGOFF request.

Example 27: The Text Editor Facility

In this example, the Text Editor is shown using most of the updating capabilities of the facility. It is probably much more complex than you might wish for a single terminal session, but attempts to portray the flexibility of the commands available.

After completing the LOGON procedure, you begin your task.

S,Y: EDIT DSNAME=EX27,RNAME=REGION2,REGSIZE=8

You invoke the Text Editor. A DDEF command is not required. Because you wish to produce a region data set, you define a region name for EX27 and assign a region name size.

S,Y: 0000100 LINEA
S,Y: 0000200 LINEB
S,Y: 0000300 LINEC
S,Y: 0000400 LINED
S,Y: 0000500 LINEE
S,Y: 0000600 LINEF
S,Y: 0000700 LINEG
S,Y: 0000800 LINEH
S,Y: 0000900 LINEI
S,Y: 0001000 LINEJ
S,Y: 0001100 _END

You enter the lines you wish to constitute REGION2 of data set EX27. You then terminate Text Editor processing.

S,Y: DEFAULT TRANTAB=Y

You wish to use the ENABLE, DISABLE, POST, or STET commands in editing your data set. Since no transaction table is normally kept (TRANTAB=N), you must reset the default to Y.

S,Y: EDIT DSNAME=EX26

You invoke the Text Editor for data set EX26 which you created in the previous example.

S,Y: NUMBER N1=300,N2=500,NBASE=300,INCR=50
S,Y: DISABLE
S,Y: EXCERPT DSNAME=EX27,RNAME=REGION2,N1=600,N2=1000

These lines will be inserted in the current data set, EX26.

S,Y: CONTEXT N1=300,N2=500,STRING1=DEMO,STRING2=XXXX

The data set is searched for the character string DEMO for occurrence in lines 300 to 500 only. Wherever it is found, XXXX will replace the occurrence.

NOTE: This facility is useful for symbol replacement in source language data sets.

S,Y: ENABLE

Up to this point, the revisions made since DISABLE was issued above were temporary. These revisions are now permanent, with the ENABLE command execution.

S,Y: CORRECT N1=100,SCOL=0

Standard correction characters are assumed, by default.

SYS: DEMO1
YOU: * %

The result will be DEMO.

S,Y: POST

With this command you make permanent all editing commands issued for the current data set.

S,Y: END

You terminate Text Editor processing of EX26.

S,Y: EDIT EX27,RNAME=REGION2

You initiate Text Editor processing of EX27. The current region is now REGION2.

S,Y: LOCATE STRING=LINEF

The entire data set EX27 is searched for the character string LINEF.

SYS:

The line in which LINEF is *first* discovered is displayed at the terminal.

S,Y: LIST N1=100,N2=500,CHAR=H

The first five lines of the current region (REGION2) will be displayed in hexadecimal notation.

S,Y: END

Text Editor processing is terminated.

S,Y: LOGOFF

SYS:

The LOGOFF is accepted by the system.

Example 28: Use of Procedure Definition (PROCDEF)

In this example, you are shown how to create a procedure, tailored to your needs, to be called at a later time just as if it were a system-supplied command. You have also decided to change the system command prompt string for this terminal session by invoking the MCAST command.

You complete the LOGON procedure and enter your first command.

S,Y: MCAST CP=**:

The initial default for the system command prompt is an underscore and backspace. You decide to change this prompt to a pair of asterisks with no carriage return. Thus you issue the MCAST command with the CP (Command Prompt) parameter.

```
S,Y: **PROCDEF NAME=ASMPGM
S,Y: 0000100 PARAM MODULE
S,Y: 0000200 ASM MODULE
S,Y: 0000300 PRINT LIST.MODULE, , ,EDIT, Y
S,Y: 0000300 _END
```

This procedure will now be available for calling using the name ASMPGM. It allows you to define a module name for assembly. By calling the established procedure, and giving it a unique module name to use, both the assembly and printing of the resulting listing data sets can be accomplished.

S,Y: **ASMPGM MYMOD

The procedure established above (via PROCDEF) will now be activated. The actual module name (MYMOD) will replace the dummy module name (MODULE) wherever it occurs.

```
S,Y: **PROCDEF NAME=SETUP
S,Y: 0000100 PARAM STORED=$1, ISD=$2, SYMLIST=$3, CRLIST=$4; MACROLIB=$5
S,Y: 0000200 DEFAULT STORED=$1, ISD=$2, SYMLIST=$3, CRLIST=$4, MACROLIB=$5
S,Y: 0000300 _END
```

This procedure will now be available to vary the default values for certain ASM parameters.

S,Y: **SETUP Y,N,Y,Y, (SRC,NDX)

Some ASM parameter default values have been adjusted to suit your requirements.

```
S,Y: **DDEF SRC,VI,MACSRC; DDEF NDX,VS,MACRNDX
MACSRC and MACRNDX are the DSNames for the symbolic and index portions of
a macro library.
```

S,Y: **ASM MOD1

You now proceed with the assembly of MOD1 with the adjusted default values.

S,Y: **PROCDEF ZLOGON

Here the operand (ZLOGON) for the PROCDEF command is shown without the use of a keyword.

```
S,Y: 0000100 DDEF STOREIT,VP,MYLIB,OPTION=JOB LIB
S,Y: 0000200 _END
```

You decide that each time you LOGON you would like a certain job library defined for any object modules you may produce. By assigning ZLOGON as the procedure name, you insure its automatic call as soon as LOGON is accepted. MYLIB is assumed to be an existing, cataloged data set. Since PARAM was *not* used you *cannot change* any of the values in the DDEF command.

S,Y: **LOGOFF
SYS:

The LOGOFF command is accepted by the system.

Example 29: Use of the BUILTIN Procedure

In this example, you are shown the use of BUILTIN, as a user-defined procedure. This facility allows you to invoke an object program just as if it were a system-supplied command. You choose a program (already containing the BPKD macro in its PSECT) which causes a data set to be created. You will later invoke the KEYWORD command to obtain a listing of all your user-created commands existing in USERLIB.

You complete the LOGON procedure and begin your task. The program which you will later invoke, includes the following source statements.

```
PST29  PSECT
      ENTRY STRT29
      .
      .
      .
AREA   DS      80C                      DATA AREA
DCBNM  DCB     DDNAME=OUTDD,RECFM=FA
USER29 BPKD    STRT29
CST29  CSECT
STRT29 EQU *
      .
      .
      .
      LA      2,20                      SET FOR 20 CYCLES
      OPEN   (DCBNM,(OUTPUT))          OPEN DCB
LABEL  EQU *
      (create record at AREA)
      .
      .
      .
PUT    DCBNM,AREA                      PUT RECORD IN DATA SET
BCT    2,LABEL                         RECYCLE
CLOSE  (DCBNM)                         CLOSE DCB
      EXIT
      END
```

Assuming that the above module was assembled without specifying a job library, your USERLIB will contain it. The sequence to follow indicates how you may invoke the module which creates a data set containing 80 character records, via BUILTIN.

S,Y: BUILTIN NAME=DOPROG,EXTNAME=USER29

The object program definition via your user-created command (DOPROG) is now established.

S,Y: DOPROG

You decide to invoke DOPROG. The program shown earlier will now be retrieved from your USERLIB, and executed beginning at entry point STRT29. Control will return to your terminal at EXIT time.

S,Y: KEYWORD

You request a listing of all the command names in your USERLIB.

SYS:

(The command names are printed at your terminal, one command string per line. Any associated parameters will be printed in the same format as they appear in the PROCDEF or BUILTIN commands.)

S,Y: LOGOFF

SYS:

The LOGOFF command is accepted by the system.

Example 30: The User Profile Facility

In this example, you are shown how to manipulate your copy of the prototype user profile, made available to you at JOIN time. This prototype profile is a member of your user library (USERLIB).

You complete the LOGON procedure and enter your first command.

S,Y: DEFAULT DSORG=VS

The data set organization field was originally defaulted by the system to VI (indexed sequential). You will now be using mostly VS organized data sets, so you set the default value (for the DDEF command) to virtual sequential (VS).

S,Y: DEFAULT DEPROMPT=YES

At some previous time, the value of DEPROMPT had been set to "no." For future use, you decide that all partially qualified names entered for either the ERASE or DELETE commands should be audited. The value of "yes" will cause individual data set names to be presented.

S,Y: SYNONYM DOPROG=PRINTDS

The BUILTIN procedure named in Example 29 can now be invoked with either name: DOPROG or PRINTDS.

S,Y: SYNONYM FINIS=DISPLAY 'TASK COMPLETED'

When FINIS is invoked, the message: TASK COMPLETED will appear on SYSOUT.

S,Y: PROFILE

You decide to make the changes applied to your session profile by the SYNONYM and DEFAULT commands, a permanent part of your user profile.

S,Y: FINIS
SYS: TASK COMPLETED

The command FINIS was established earlier in the session, using the SYNONYM command. Since the PROFILE command was later invoked, FINIS may be used in subsequent sessions to produce the same message.

S,Y: LOGOFF
SYS:

The LOGOFF is accepted by the system.

Example 31: Use of the OBEY Macro

The OBEY macro instruction allows the user to execute a command or command statement even though not in command mode. Upon execution of the OBEY macro instruction, the command or command statement specified via the macro instruction operands is executed; control is then returned to the user's program. OBEY may be used anywhere in the user's program.

```
CST5 CSECT
      ENTRY STRT5
STRT5 EQU *
      OBEY 'DDEF OUTDD, ,OUTDS'
      :
      :
```

```

      .
      LA      2,20
      OPEN   (DCBNM,(OUTPUT))
LABEL EQU   *
      (create record at AREA)
      .
      .
      PUT    DCBNM,AREA
      BCT    2,LABEL
      CLOSE  (DCBNM)
      EXIT
AREA DS     80C
DCBNM DCB   DDNAME=OUTDD,RECFM=FA,DSORG=VS
      END

```

SET FOR 20 CYCLE
OPEN DCB

PUT RECORD IN DATA SET
RECYCLE
CLOSE DCB

DATA AREA

Your program will write a data set with 80-character records from the storage area named AREA. Notice that your DCB macro instruction includes the DDNAME that is a parameter in the OBEY of the DDEF command, which in turn contains the name of the data set (OUTDS). The DDEF command relates the correct data set to your program because every data set name must be unique in your task.

Part IV. Appendixes

The Appendixes in this publication give detailed information on the use of rss by assembler language programmers.

Appendix A, "Use of the rss Assembler," describes the format of assembler statements, correction techniques, diagnostic actions, assembler parameters, assembler output, assembler restrictions, and user macro libraries.

Appendix B, "Problem Program Checkout and Modification," considers the use of the Program Control System (PCS). Prompting and diagnostic facilities, program listings, and use of the Linkage Editor are also discussed. Concerning PCS, only certain aspects are covered—in particular, diagnostic action. *Command System User's Guide* is the primary reference for the use of the Program Control System.

Appendix C presents assembler language programming considerations. The initial sections of this appendix describe programming techniques and sample programs that allow the programmer to write programs

with a minimum of effort. Later sections of this appendix discuss more complex programming considerations.

Appendix D discusses interrupt considerations, including use of the terminal attention key and the various macro instructions provided with rss/360 for control of interrupts. The publication *Assembler User's Macro Instructions* gives more detailed information on interrupt-handling macro instructions.

Appendix E is a guide to the use of DDEF command.

Appendix F describes various user-defined procedures available. Representative examples are given. Procedure Definition (PROCDEF), user's own code procedures (BUILTIN), and the User Profile Facility are portrayed.

The commands available in rss are described in the examples given in Part III and are presented in detail in *Command System User's Guide*.

Appendix A. Use of the TSS Assembler

Problem-Program Preparation

In Time Sharing System, a problem program is the collection of instructions and data that the user specifies for the solution of some well-defined problem. The term problem program thus differentiates user-written application programs from system programs.

Problem programs may be in the system as source programs or object programs. A source program is in the symbolic form in which it was written by a user. It consists of a series of statements coded in one of the source languages available in TSS (FORTRAN IV, PL/I or assembler). An object program, in hexadecimal code or machine language form, is relocatable and can be loaded and executed by the system.

Language Processing

The operation that converts a source program to an object program, called language processing, is illustrated in Figure 14. Note the terms source program data set and object program module. A source program data set is the collection of all source statements submitted for processing during any single assembly or compilation. An object program module is the principal output of a single assembly or compilation. A source program data set and its corresponding object program module may represent all or part of the actual program required to solve a user's problem. A user can thus design his problem program in sections and, separately, assemble or compile each section. He can then, if he has supplied the proper symbolic linkages between sections, use the system to combine various sections prior to, or during, program execution.

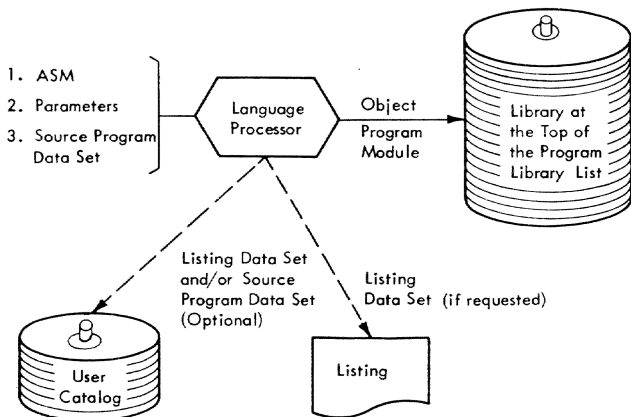


Figure 14. Language Processing

Language Processing in Conversational Mode

To initiate assembler language processing in conversational mode (see Figure 14), the user issues an ASM command with the desired parameters. He must enter them all at the same time as the system will not prompt for individual parameters. The parameters to be entered, listed below, are dependent upon whether the source program is prestored and on options selected by the user.

- Module name of the object program module being created: The source data set for the object module will be named SOURCE.module; the associated listing data set will be named LIST.module.
- An indication of whether the source program data set is prestored or is to be made available via SYSIN: If the source program is made available via SYSIN, the user can also specify its starting line number and the value by which the line numbers are to be incremented (values of 100 and 100 are assumed, if the starting line number and increment value are not specified).
- Version identification of the module: This consists of one to eight user-supplied alphanumeric characters, the first of which need not be alphabetic. If a version identification is not supplied, the listing is time stamped.
- The ddnames of the symbolic and index portions of the user-written macro libraries to be used in addition to the system macro library: If this parameter is omitted, only the system macro library is assumed.
- An indication of whether these options are wanted:
 - Internal symbol dictionary
 - Source data set listing
 - Object program module listing
 - Cross reference listing
 - Edited symbol table
 - Internal symbol dictionary listing
 - Program module dictionary listing

When these inputs are provided, language processing of the source program begins. The user can issue source program statements from his terminal, in response to system prompting; or he can make the source statements available from a prestored data set. When using a continuation character in statements extending beyond 80 characters, he must observe the continua-

tion conventions of the source language. An **END** statement is always included in the source program data set to indicate the end of the input to the language processor.

Prompting and diagnostic facilities are available during language processing. These facilities vary with the way the source program data set is presented to the system (as part of **sysin** or as a prestored data set); they are described under "Problem Program Checkout and Modification," Appendix B.

At the conclusion of language processing, the system stores the object program module, by its module name, in the user's library or in his most recently defined job library, if there is one. This completes source language processing in the conversational mode.

Language Processing in Nonconversational Mode

The same commands are used to initiate nonconversational language processing as in conversational processing; the same outputs can be produced. The user must store the parameters required by the language processor in the **sysin** data set immediately after the **ASM** command. However, the user has the option of making the source program module available in the **sysin** data set or as a prestored data set.

Entry and Correction of Assembler Source Statements

This section discusses the format of assembler source statements entered at the terminal keyboard, the terminal card reader, and in card form for nonconversational mode processing. If conversational mode, correction of source statements is frequently performed by insertion or replacement. Since assembly speed can be influenced by the manner of making such corrections, guidelines for efficient correction techniques are given. A discussion of techniques for entering keyboard lines so that they can be punched and reentered in card form is also included.

Format of Source Lines

Input Sources

A source program is a sequence of source statements that have either been punched into cards and entered by card reader, typed at the keyboard of a remote terminal device, or both. Individual source statements may also contain card lines, keyboard lines, or both. Source statements formats differ between the two sources. The card format is identical to that used in other assembler languages. The keyboard format has been designed

for ease of operation at typewriter-like terminal devices. A name field, comment line, or continued line must begin *immediately* following the line number (no space). If the line is not one of the above, *one or more blanks* must follow the line number.

Statement Boundaries—Card Format

Source statements are normally contained in columns 1-71 of initial cards and columns 16-71 of any continuation cards. Free form may be used, however. Therefore, columns 1, 71, and 16 are referred to as the "begin," "end," and "continue" columns, respectively. This convention can be altered by use of the input format control (**ICTL**) assembler instruction. The continuation character, if used, always immediately follows the "end" column.

Continuation Lines—Card Format

When necessary to continue a statement on another card, the following rules apply:

1. Enter a continuation character (not blank and not part of the statement coding) in column 72 of the initial card.
2. Continue the statement on the next card, starting in column 16. All columns to the left of column 16 are ignored.
3. When more than one card is needed, each card to be continued must have a character (not blank and not part of the statement coding) punched in column 72.
4. Not more than two continuation cards can be used for a statement, except in a macro instruction or macro prototype statement, where as many continuation cards may be used as are necessary.

NOTE: When the **MODIFY** command is used to alter existing source statements, the continuation column (72) is displaced to the right by as many positions as the line number and the required comma occupy. For example, if the following:

```
DC      F'70'  RESERVE A 19 WORD SAVE -  
                AREA FOR CALLING PGM
```

represented two source statements, entered originally on cards, and the hyphen (-) in the first line appeared in column 72, alterations by the **MODIFY** command will cause adjustment. The user notices that '70' is not the correct value and must change the source entry. Assuming the line number was 400, the entry for **MODIFY** would be as follows: 400, DC F'76' RESERVE A 19 WORD SAVE -. The new source entry would now be offset four positions to the right, relative to the original entry.

Character Sets—Card Format

CA and CB can be used to specify the character set used during 1056 card reader input. With CA, the user indicates he wishes to convert card input from 1057 card punch code to EBCDIC. With CB, the user specifies conversion from 029 keypunch code to EBCDIC.

Statement Boundaries—Keyboard Format

When entered from a terminal, source statements occupy the statement area of each keyboard line. The statement area is that portion of the line between the column at which the system releases the keyboard to the user and the right-hand margin setting. This area may contain more or less than 80 characters, depending on the type of keyboard being used.

Many terminal keyboards available with TSS contain both upper and lower case forms of the letters A through Z. The upper case form must be used, except within character constants or comments. However, if the system is in KB mode (the default option), the lower case characters will be translated into their upper case equivalents, thus eliminating many of the previously required shifting operations. A good general practice is to set tab stops and make use of the tab key to separate the various fields of the source statement. This practice provides a simple method for formatting the input program on the terminal paper without excessive manual spacing. When entering keyboard lines, a single depression of the tab key is considered the equivalent of one blank. Thus, when reference is made to blanks, tab or blank is implied, unless specifically stated otherwise.

Continuation Lines—Keyboard Format

When it is necessary to continue a statement that is being entered from a keyboard, a hyphen (the keyboard continuation character) is typed at the point at which continuation is desired, followed immediately by a carrier return. The statement is continued at the first character of the statement area of the next line.

If a line with an asterisk (*) in column 1 follows a continued line, the * and following columns will be considered a continuation of the preceding line, not as a comment line. For example, if this sequence occurs:

LINE NO.	TEXT
0000500	L 2,-(CR)
0000600*	COMMENT

the assembler will combine the two lines as follows:

```
L            2,*COMMENT
```

There is no restriction on the number of continuation lines which may be entered in keyboard format. The only restriction placed on the length of a statement is that imposed by available assembler working storage.

NOTE: ICTL statements in the source program apply only to lines in card format and have no effect on keyboard lines.

Character Sets—Keyboard Format

KA and KB can be used to specify the character set to be used during keyboard input. With KA, the user indicates he wishes to use the full EBCDIC character set during input. With KB, the user specifies that the lower case characters (a-z and ! " €) be translated into their upper case equivalents (A-Z and \$ # @). When neither is specified, KB is assumed.

Mixed Card and Keyboard Input

Assembler language source statements entered at the terminal may be from the card reader (if one is available), from the keyboard, or from a mixture of the two, without restriction.

The procedure for changing input mode is as follows. The system will expect lines from the keyboard until the end of the commands C, CA, or CB is entered at the keyboard. Once these characters have been entered, input lines are expected from the card reader. If a card containing command K, KA, or KB is encountered, lines are once again expected to be entered from the keyboard. (See *Terminal User's Guide* for SYSIN Device Selection and Data Translation.)

Caution When Changing Card-Origin Statements

Source statements from punched cards may later be changed, using various commands of the TSS Text Editor (the Text Editor commands are described in *Command System User's Guide*).

On assembly, each source statement of punched card origin is treated as an 80-character record. Where the statement has been shortened to fewer than 80 characters by changing it with a Text Editor command after it has been stored, the assembler, before further processing, pads the statement to 80 characters with trailing blanks. Where the statement has been changed to contain more than 80 characters, the assembler truncates the statement to 80 characters.

Care must be taken in changing a card-origin source statement so that, after padding or truncation by the assembler, the statement will still conform to the coding conventions discussed in this section. (An example might be a statement containing a sequence number in the identification sequence field, columns 73-80. The statement is shortened one character during Text Editing. The assembler pads with one trailing blank in column 80, leaving columns 72-79 containing the sequence number. Since column 72 is normally the continuation column, an error results if the next source statement is not a continuation line.)

Efficient Correction Techniques

Conversational correction of assembler statements is normally made at one of two points in the assembly. The first, called *local* correction, is when the user's keyboard is unlocked for a new or correction line. This occurs following the assembler's scan of the statement just entered and the printing at the terminal of any diagnostic messages associated with that statement. The second point at which corrections are normally made is when the entire program has been entered (i.e., the END line has been entered) and a message soliciting modifications is typed at the terminal. This occurs only when errors have been detected by the system. Corrections made at this point are called *global* corrections. The distinction between local and global corrections and between different types of local corrections is important in that the user can minimize the amount of processing required for a given assembly by being aware of the effect of the correction upon the assembly process. The following paragraphs describe efficient correction techniques in detail.

After all global corrections are made, all the corrected lines are collected and applied to the source data set. The assembler then reinitiates the source scan of each individual statement, beginning with the first source line of the program. When local corrections are made, reinitiation of the source scan may or may not be required, depending upon the type of correction made. Since it is desirable to minimize the number of source scans, corrections that reinitiate the source scan generally should not be made until the time for global corrections is reached. This rule does not apply, of course, where failure to make a correction would result in many other diagnostics, such as an error in defining a symbol.

A simple correction rule that can be assumed in the majority of cases is: correction of a statement *immediately following* entry of that statement *does not* cause reinitiation of the source scan; all other corrections do cause reinitiation of the source scan. Example 1 below demonstrates immediate correction; example 2 demonstrates a correction causing reinitiation of the source scan.

Example 1:

LINE NO.	TEXT	NOTES
0000600	TABLE1 DC F	Entry of this statement produces a diagnostic.
0000600E	*** DATA OMITTED FROM DC OPERAND	
#600,	TABLE1 DS F	Immediate correction, entered after the system has typed #, causes the line to be replaced at once. User presses return key after #. User can then proceed without re-scan.
#	(press return key)	
0000700	...	

Example 2:

LINE NO.	TEXT	NOTES
0000600	TABLE1 DC F	Entry of this statement produces a diagnostic.
0000600E	*** DATA OMITTED FROM DC OPERAND	
#	(press return key)	User presses return key after #.
0000700	TABLE2 DS F	User ignores error by returning carriage after # has been printed, causing next line to be solicited.
0000800	%600, TABLE1 DS F	Since line 700 was error free, line 800 is solicited. The user now decides to correct line 600, using % notation. This correction forces a rescan of the entire source module.
000800	...	When the module has been re-scanned, the user is again solicited for the next line and can continue.

The position at which the keyboard is unlocked after the system solicits a new statement corresponds to the "begin" column in card format; i.e., a name field, comment line, or continued line must begin immediately following the line number. If the line is not a comment, named line, or continued line, one or more blanks must follow the line number.

If, after the keyboard has been unlocked for a new line, the user wishes to correct a statement, he types a percent sign (%) followed by the number of the statement he is correcting and then the corrected statement. In example 2 above, after line 800 is solicited, the user corrects line 600.

If a diagnostic has been issued for a statement, the system types a number sign (#) and then unlocks the keyboard. The user may then enter the number of the statement he is correcting (which is not necessarily the previous statement) and then the corrected statement. If the user decides at this point that previous errors in his assembly would result in excessive diagnostics and solicitations for corrections, he may respond by typing the letter I and press the return key. This will inhibit all further diagnostic messages from being printed at his keyboard. He may also print the letter C and press the return key; in that case he will continue to receive diagnostics but will not be solicited for corrections. If the error is a minor one, he may ignore the request for correction by pressing the return key. Example 1 above shows how the system continues to solicit corrections until the user ignores the request.

Note that, in a correction line, a comma must be used to separate the line number from the corrected statement.

Discussion of assembler response to more complex local corrections requires a definition of three terms:

1. *Partial Statement:* A partial statement is the statement currently being entered. Statements are partial until a line is entered that is not a continued line. An example of a partial statement is shown below. The first line is a continued line, but the continuation line has not yet been entered: (CR) notes carrier return.

```
ALPHA DC CL100'THIS IS AN EXAMPLE-(CR)
```

2. *Tentative Statement:* A tentative statement is the last statement completely processed by the assembler. Thus, while a new statement is being formed (i.e., is partial), the previous statement is defined as being tentative. When a statement has been completely entered and the next line has not yet begun, the statement just entered is termed tentative. An example of a tentative statement is shown below, where the second line is not a continued line.

```
HEXCON DC CL16'0123456789-(CR)
        ABCDEF'
```

The above lines are, of course, equivalent to the following single line.

```
HEXCON DC CL16'0123456789ABCDEF'(CR)
```

3. *Committed Statement:* The relation between a committed statement and a tentative statement is identical to the relation between a tentative statement and a partial statement; once a statement becomes tentative, the preceding statement becomes committed. In the following example, entrance of the second statement causes the second statement to become tentative and causes the first statement to become committed.

```
GAMMA CSECT
        USING *,15
```

The relation between the above types of statements and assembler response to corrections is as follows:

1. Tentative and partial statements can be corrected without causing a reinitiation of the source scan.

LINE NO.	TEXT	NOTES
0000100	MACRO	
0000200&NAME	MACNAME P1,—(CR)	
		Line 100 is tentative, Line 200 is partial, due to the continuation character.
0000300&P2, &P3,—(CR)		
0000400%200,&NAME	MACNAME &P1,—(CR)	
		Line 300 is partial due to the continuation character. Line 400 is solicited, but programmer notices an error. Since line 200 is still in partial status, this correction does not cause reinitiation of the source scan.

0000400&P4,&P5		Entry of this statement causes line 100 to become committed and the composite statement beginning at line 200 to become tentative.
----------------	--	--

0000500. . .		Before the statement beginning with line 500 is completed, corrections can still be made to lines 200 through 400 without causing rescan.
--------------	--	---

2. Correction of committed statements does cause reinitiation of the source scan.

LINE NO.	TEXT	NOTES
0000200RA	EQU 125	
0000300RB	EQU 13	
0000400	L RA,ALPHA	Causes a diagnostic due to an invalid value for symbol RA.
0000400E ***	R1 VALUE INVALID FOR FIELD	
#200,RA	EQU 12	Correction of a line prior to the committed statement (line 300) causes a reinitiation of the source scan.

3. Insertion of a new statement between a committed and a tentative statement does not cause reinitiation of the source scan of the entire program. For example, insertion of line 650 in the following example requires that line 700 be rescanned, but lines prior to 650 are not rescanned.

LINE NO.	TEXT	NOTES
0000600	SAVE (14,12)	At completion of this statement, line 600 is tentative.
0000700	EX 0,TAB(1)	Line 600 is committed at this point, line 700 is tentative.
0000800%	650, L 1,0(1)	User elects to insert a line at this point.
0000800. . .		User continues.

The source and object listings (if requested) are not created until the entire program has been entered and all corrections have been made. Thus the conversational terminal may contain many diagnostic messages, but the listing contains diagnostics only for source errors remaining after all corrections have been made.

Entry of Keyboard Source Statements for Later Punching and Recompile

It may be desirable to punch out source statements entered at the keyboard in order to enter these statements later by card reader; this is possible only if no source statement contains more than one line, because of the different conventions used in determining the initial significant character in continuation lines. Keyboard continuation lines *always* begin in type position 1; card continuation lines begin in column 16 or in a column specified in the ICTL instruction. (It is not permissible to specify that continuation lines begin in column 1 in the ICTL instruction.)

OPERATION	OPERAND
ASM	NAME = module name [,STORED = $\begin{Bmatrix} Y \\ N \end{Bmatrix}$] [,MACROLIB = ((data definition name of symbolic portion, data definition name of index portion) [, . . .])] [,VERID = version identification] [,ISD = {Y|N}] [,SYMLIST = {Y|N}] [,ASMLIST = {Y|N}] [,CRLIST = {Y|N|E}] [,STEDIT = {Y|N}] [,ISDLIST = {Y|N}] [,PMDLIST={Y|N}] [,LISTDS={Y|N}] [,LINCR=(first line number, increment)]

Figure 15. Assembler Parameters

Terminal lines must contain no more than 80 significant characters if they are to be punched.

The means for punching terminal lines is the PUNCH command. This command contains two operand fields ("startno" and "endno") specifying the character positions relative to the data set record of the lines to be punched. Assembler source lines are stored in the data set as entered by the programmer, with the exception that the first character of each line entered becomes the ninth character of the data set record; a 7-byte line number and a 1-byte format character are provided by TSS during the formation of the data set. Thus, the startno operand of the PUNCH command should be 9, not 1. The endno operand is normally 88, but it can be less if all the keyboard lines contain some number of significant characters less than 80.

Assembler Options and Related Output

This section discusses three topics:

1. The parameters supplied when the ASM command is given.
2. The listings produced by the assembler when requested by user-supplied parameters.
3. The destination of all output from the assembly.

Assembler Parameters

When issuing an ASM command, the user must enter parameters providing such items as the module name for this assembly; the source of the input lines (prestored or to be entered at the terminal), etc. A list of assembler parameters is given in Figure 15. The notation used in Figure 15 is explained in Appendix G, Command Formats.

One of the assembler parameters listed in Figure 15 (module name) *must* be provided by the user; others may be left unspecified and system or user default values will be chosen.

Explicitly Defaulted

A comma is issued immediately following entrance of the preceding parameter, rather than entering a value for the new parameter followed by a comma. For example, module ALPHA, with prestored source lines, is to be assembled, explicitly defaulting supplementary

macro libraries and the version identification, but supplying parameters for all other parameters. The proper parameter description is:

ALPHA, Y, , , Y, Y, Y, Y, Y, Y, Y

Implicitly Defaulted

In the example above, the user could have pressed the return key following entrance of the Y specifying that an ISD is to be produced. This action implicitly defaults all parameters following the ISD option.

The assembler parameters shown in Figure 15 are defined as follows:

NAME =

specifies the name of the object module to be created. Since the name used becomes a member of a virtual partitioned data set when the object module is created, partially-qualified names and generation data group names cannot be used. Virtual partitioned data set members must be identified with simple names. The source data set for that module is named SOURCE.module by the system; the listing data set for the module is named LIST.module-name.generation-number to cause actual printing to be accomplished. The module name must be unique to the library that is to include it; i.e., it must not be the same as any entry point, CSECT name, or externally defined symbol or module in that library. The name consists of one to eight alphameric characters, the module name may not be the same as any external definition supplied by the module.

STORED =

specifies whether or not the source data set is prestored; if so, it must have been named SOURCE.module. The allowable values are Y or N. The system assumes N.

MACROLIB =

The first ddname (ddname₁) specifies the symbolic portion of the supplementary macro library that is to be used. A DDEF for this ddname must be provided by the user. If a DDEF has not been entered by a conversational user, he is prompted for the required definition information; a non-conversational task is abnormally terminated.

Default: Only the system macro library is used. The second (ddname₂) specifies the ddname of the index portion of the supplementary macro library that is to be used. A DDEF for this ddname must be provided by the user. If a DDEF has not been entered by a conversational user, he is prompted for the required definition information; a nonconversational task is abnormally terminated.

Default: Only the system macro library index is used.

Note: ddname₁ and ddname₂ must both be given if either is given. Up to five more user supplementary macro libraries may be defined for use. The first additional one would use ddname₃ for the symbolic portion and ddname₄ for the index portion. The next one would utilize ddname₅ and ddname₆, and so on until the maximum allowable number of supplementary macro libraries is reached. As with ddname₁ and ddname₂, a pair of ddnames must always be specified. User macro libraries are searched in the reverse order of specification; the first one defined will be the last one searched.

VERID =

specifies the version identification to be assigned. The version identification consists of one to eight alphameric characters. The version identification appears in the PMD (and PMD listing if requested).

ISD =

specifies whether an Internal Symbol Dictionary (ISD) is to be produced. An ISD is used by the Program Control System (PCS) in order to refer to internal program symbols during checkout. The allowable values are Y or N. The system assumes Y.

SYMLIST =

specifies whether a symbolic source program listing is to be produced. The allowable values are Y or N. A source listing displays the card or keyboard images supplied as input to the assembler. The system assumes N.

ASMLIST =

specifies whether an object program listing is to be produced. The allowable values are Y or N. An object program listing shows the concatenated source lines together with the associated absolute value or location counter assignment. Where required by the statement, the hexadecimal repre-

sentation of the binary text is also displayed. The system assumes Y.

CRLIST =

specifies whether a cross-reference listing is to be produced. The allowable values are Y or N. A cross-reference listing is a table of the defined symbols and the locations of all references to those symbols. The system assumes N.

STEDIT =

specifies whether the edited symbol table is to be listed. The allowable values are Y or N. The symbol table edit displays symbol names, their attributes, and the absolute or relocatable value assigned to each symbol. Either a cross-reference listing or a symbol table edit may be requested but not both. The system assumes N.

ISDLIST =

specifies whether an ISD listing is to be produced. The allowable values are Y or N. An ISD listing displays the internal symbol entries found in the ISD. The system assumes N.

PMDLIST =

specifies whether a program module dictionary (PMD) listing is to be produced. The allowable values are Y or N. A PMD listing displays the contents of the PMD by control section. The system assumes N.

LISTDS =

specifies whether the requested listings are to be placed in a list data set or placed directly on SYSOUT. When listings are placed on SYSOUT, no record of them is kept in the system after print-out. The system assumes N for non-conversational tasks (no list data set), and Y for conversational.

LINCR = first line number

specifies the line number to be assigned to the first line of the data set. The line number can contain three to seven digits, the last two of which must be 00.

Default: The first line number is 100.

increment

specifies the increment to be applied to develop successive line numbers. The increment can contain three to seven digits, the last two of which must be 00.

Default: The increment is 100.

Although the line number values are explained in the context of the `STORED` parameter, such values have meaning only in conjunction with a negative (N) response to the `STORED` parameter. So that the syntax analysis for both prestored and non-prestored data sets may be identical, the `LINCR` parameter now resides at the end of the parameter list.

The source code in your object program listing can appear in either aligned or unaligned format. *Aligned* format means that regardless of how you entered your input, all name fields will appear in column 1, all instruction mnemonics will appear in column 10 (or one blank following the name field, whichever is further to the right), and all operands will begin in column 16 (or one blank following the mnemonic, again whichever is further to the right). *Unaligned* format means that the fields of the source code will appear exactly as you entered them.

If you do not specify otherwise, the source code will be aligned. To achieve an unaligned format, issue the `DEFAULT` command with an operand of `ASMALIGN=N` prior to issuing the `ASM` command. If you have issued `DEFAULT ASMALIGN=N` and wish to revert to an aligned format (the system default), issue `DEFAULT ASMALIGN=Y`.

Structure and Description of Assembler Listings

The assembler prepares a listing data set if one or more of the six listing options are requested. In nonconversational mode, if a list data set is not specifically requested, listings are placed on `sysout` and no record of them is retained in the system after printout. In conversational mode, a list data set is automatically created for your listings. You may, however, choose to have them placed on `sysout` (printed at your terminal). The six types of listings are: source program listing, object program listing, cross-reference listing, symbol table listing, internal symbol dictionary listing, and program module dictionary listing. Various combinations of these listing options are possible. Operation codes are now aligned on output listings from the Assembler to provide a more orderly presentation. This applies to both macro expansions and user-created code. Printing of the listing data sets prepared by the assembler is not automatic. Each time a unique module name is encountered, a generation data group is established, containing two generations. Each time the limit (two generations) is reached, the oldest generation is erased. The user may print only when he desires the output listings, using: `PRINT LIST.module-name.generation` (absolute) or `LIST.module-name (generation)` (relative). *Command System User's*

Guide, GC28-2001, presents a complete explanation of the language processor listing data set maintenance process.

Since a pending `BULK/IO` task will be established when the `PRINT` command is issued for the language processor listing data set, the user must not attempt to erase the data set (or otherwise remove it from the system) unless the `BSN` is canceled first.

The formats of assembler-produced listings are illustrated below. The programs were designed so that diagnostics would be produced and certain assembler instructions and assembler functions (e.g., literal pooling and reordering of control sections) could be illustrated. All types of assembler output are shown; the circled numbers on the listings correspond to the numbers in bold face type in the text.

Source Program Listing

The source program listing presents, in the order received, the original source language line images submitted for assembly by the user. Each source line, **2**, is preceded by a decimal statement number, **1**. Terminal input greater than 120 characters is continued on the next line. Figure 16 is an illustration of a source program listing.

Diagnostic messages, **3**, are collected and presented at the end of the listing. Only those messages produced prior to the text generation phase are listed. Each message is preceded by the statement number, **4**, of the line to which it applies. Messages are listed in ascending order by line number.

Object Program Listing

The object program listing documents, in control section order, the hexadecimal representation of the binary text assembled for each source statement. Continued source statements are shown in concatenated form. No characters before the continue column in continuation lines appear in the object listing. Unless an `ICTL` instruction is used to change assembler treatment of card records, column 16 is the continue column on card records. The first non-blank, non-tab character is used as the continue column in keyboard continuation lines. The `ASMALIGN` default value may be used to align the source code in the object program listing.

Figure 17 is an illustration of an object program listing. The sample listing in Figure 17 contains three control sections, one of which has been written non-contiguously (for illustrative purposes only) and has

SOURCE LANGUAGE LISTING

①	②		
LINE	SOURCE TEXT		
0000100	*	INDIAN PROBLEM	
0000200	INDIANP	PSECT	
0000300		ENTRY INDIAN	
0000400		DC F'76'	SAVE APEA
0000500		DC 18F'0'	
0000600	YEAR	DS D	CONVERSION AREA
0000700	MESSAGE	DS CL20	MESSAGE LOCATION
0000800	LENGTH	DC F'20'	MESSAGE LENGTH
0000900	PRINCP	DC PL7'+24.00'	PRINCIPAL AMT
0001000	INT	DC PL2'+1.04'	INTEREST RATE
0001100	THEN	DC F'1626'	
0001200	NOW	DC F'1965'	
0001300	ROUND	DC PL2'50'	
0001400	TEMP	DS PL66	
0001500	EDITOR	DC C' \$,	
0001600		DC X'2120',C','	
0001700		DC X'202020',C','	
0001800		DC X'202020'	
0001900		DC X'2020'	
0002000	**	THE FOLLOWING INSTRUCTIONS ARE INCLUDED TO CAUSE MODIFIERS TO PRINT	
0002100	**	ON THE PROGRAM MODULE DICTIONARY LISTING	
0002200		EXTRN XYZ	
0002300		DC V(AA)	
0002400		DC A(KYZ)	
0002500		DC AL3(TEMP)	
0002600	**	END OF SPECIAL INSTRUCTIONS	
0002700	INDIANC	CSECT READONLY	
0002800		USING INDIAN,15	
0002900	INDIAN	SAVE (14,12)	GET PSECT COVER REG
0003000		L 14,72(0,13)	STORE FORWARD LINK
0003100		ST 14,8(0,13)	STORE BACKWARD LINK
0003200		ST 13,4(0,14)	SET REG 13 TO ADDRESS OF PSECT
0003300		LR 13,14	
0003400		USING INDIANP,13	LOAD COVER REG
0003500		LR 12,15	
0003600		DROP 15	
0003700		USING INDIAN,12	SET UP DATE COUNTFP
0003800		L 5,NOW	
0003900		L 3,THEN	
0004000		L 4,1	
0004100	INDIANCL	CSECT READONLY	
0004200		EDIT MESSAGE+6(14),PRINCP+1	EDIT ANSWER
0004300		CVD 3,YEAR	CONVERT YEAR FOR PRINTOUT
0004400		UNPK MESSAGE(4),YEAR+5(3)	REMOVE SIGN FROM DATE
0004500		OI MESSAGE+3,X'F0'	WRITE ANSWER ON SYSOUT
0004600		GATWP MESSAGE,LENGTH	RESTORE CALLING REG 13
0004700		L 13,4(0,13)	
0004800		RETURN (14,12)	
0004900	**	THE FOLLOWING INSTRUCTIONS ARE INCLUDED TO ILLUSTRATE CERTAIN TYPES	
0005000	**	OF ASSEMBLER INSTRUCTIONS AND THE POOLING OF LITERALS	
0005100	THISYEAR	EQU NOW	
0005200		GBLA &A	

SOURCE LANGUAGE LISTING

LINE	SOURCE TEXT		
0005300	&A	SETA 2	
0005400		ORG **+100	
0005500		MVC YEAR(2),=X'4040'	
0005600		L 1,=F'123'	
0005700		CCW 2,YEAR,X'48',80	
0005800		CNOP 2,8	
0005900		MACRO	
0006000		MM &P1,&P2	
0006100		MNOTE &P1,'THIS ILLUSTRATES AN MNOTE &P2'	
0006200		MEND	
0006300		MM 1,DIAGNOSTIC	
0006400		MM *,COMMENT	
0006500	**	END OF ILLUSTRATIONS	
0006600	INDIANC	CSECT	
0006700	LOOP	MP PRINCP,INT	COMPUTE INTEREST
0006800		AP PRINCP,ROUND	ROUND OFF
0006900		MVN PRINCP+5(1),PRINCP+6	MOVE SIGN
0007000		MVC TEMP,PRINCP	EFFECTIVELY SHIFT OFF 2 DIGITS
0007100		ZAP PRINCP,TEMP	
0007200	PRINT	BXLE 3,4,LOOP	
0007300		MVC MESSAGE+4(16),EDITOR	SET UP EDIT MASK
0007400		END	

SOURCE LANGUAGE LISTING

DIAGNOSTIC MESSAGES

④	③	
0001400	E ***	VALUE OF LENGTH MODIFIER INVALID FOR TYPE OF CONSTANT
0004200	E ***	'EDIT' UNDEFINED MNEMONIC OPERATION

Figure 16. Source Program Listing

LOCATION	INSTRUCTION	ADDR 1	ADDR 2	STATEMNT	SOURCE	
				0000100	* INDIANP	INDIAN PROBLEM
				0000200	PSECT	
				0000300	FMTRY INDIAN	
				0000400	DC F'76'	SAVE AREA
				0000500	DC '18P'0'	
				0000600	YEAR DS D	CONVERSION AREA
				0000700	MESSAGE DS CL20	MESSAGE LOCATION
				0000800	LENGTH DC F'20'	MESSAGE LENGTH
				0000900	PRINCP DC PL7'+24.00'	PRINCIPAL AMT
				0001000	INT DC PL2'+1.04'	INTEREST RATE
				0001100	THEN DC F'1626'	
				0001200	HOW DC F'1965'	
				0001300	ROUND DC PL2'50'	
				0001400	F TEMP DS PL66	
				0001500	EDITOR DC C' * '	
				0001600	DC X'2120','C',''	
				0001700	DC X'202020','C',''	
				0001800	DC X'202020'	
				0001900	DC X'2020'	
				0002000	** THE FOLLOWING INSTRUCTIONS ARE INCLUDED TO CAUSE MODIFIERS TO PRINT	
				0002100	** ON THE PROGRAM MODULE DICTIONARY LISTING	
				0002200	EXTN XYZ	
				0002300	DC V(AA)	
				0002400	DC A(XYZ)	
				0002500	DC AL3(TEMP)	
				0002600	** END OF SPECIAL INSTRUCTIONS	
					INDIANP PSECT	
					DS OF	FULL WORD ALIGNMENT
					DC H'0'	SIC CODE
					DC H'2'	TYPE CODE
					CHD0002 DC A(*-4)	
					DC A(MESSAGE)	
					DC A(LENGTH)	
					DC A(0)	
					DC A(0)	
				0002700	INDIANC CSECT READONLY	
				0002800	USING INDIAN,15	
				0002900	INDIAN SAVF (14,12)	
					INDIAN STM' 14,12,12(13)	SAVE SPECIFIED REG'S
					L 14,72(0,13)	GET PSECT COVER REG
					ST 14,8(0,13)	STORE FORWARD LINK
					ST 13,4(0,14)	STORE BACKWARD LINK
					LR 13,14	SET REG 13 TO ADDRESS OF PSECT
					USING INDIANP,13	
					LP 12,15	LOAD COVER REG
					DROP 15	
					USING INDIAN,12	
					L 5,HOW	SET UP DATE COUNTER
					L 3,THEN	
					L 4,1	

LOCATION	INSTRUCTION	ADDR 1	ADDR 2	STATEMNT	SOURCE	
				0006600	INDIANC CSECT	COMPUTE INTEREST
				0006700	LOOP	ROUND OFF
				0006800	AP PRINCP,ROUND	MOVE SIGN
				0006900	MVN PRINCP+5(1),PRINCP+6	EFFECTIVELY SHIFT OFF 2 DIGITS
				0007000	MVC TEMP,PRINCP	
				0007100	ZAP PRINCP,TEMP	
				0007200	PRINT BXLF 3,4,LOOP	SET UP EDIT MASK
				0007300	MVC MESSAGE+4(16),EDITOR	
				0007400	END	
					=F'123'	
					=X'4040'	
				0004100	INDIANCL CSECT READONLY	
				0004200	EDIT MESSAGE+6(14),PRINCP+1	EDIT ANSWER
				0004300	CVD 3,YEAR	CONVERT YEAR FOR PRINTOUT
				0004400	UNPK MESSAGE(4),YEAR+5(3)	
				0004500	CF MESSAGE+3,Y'P0'	REMOVE SIGN FROM DATE
				0004600	GATWP MESSAGE,LENGTH	WRITE ANSWER ON SYSOUT
					CHDPSCT CHDX0002	
					INDIANCL CSECT	
					CHDX0002 LA 1,CHD0002	GENERATE LINKAGE
					CHDINNFA ,, (CZPTC1),X'9D'	LOAD REG. 15 WITH ENTER CODE
					LA 15,X'9D'	
					ENTER TYPE IT LINKAGE	
					SWC 121	SUPERVISOR CALL
					L 13,4(0,13)	RESTORE CALLING REG 13
					RETURN (14,12)	
					DS OH	
					LM 14,12,12(13)	
					BR 14	
				0004900	** THE FOLLOWING INSTRUCTIONS ARE INCLUDED TO ILLUSTRATE CERTAIN TYPES	
				0005000	** OF ASSEMBLER INSTRUCTIONS AND THE POOLING OF LITERALS	
				0005100	THISYEAR ECU NOW	
				0005200	GBLA EA	
				0005300	EA SETA 2	
				0005400	OPC *+100	
				0005500	MVC YEAR(2),=Y'4040'	
				0005600	L 1,=F'123'	
				0005700	CCH 2,YEAR,X'48',80	
				0005800	CNOP 2,8	
				0005900	MACRO	
				0006000	FM 6P1,6P2	
				0006100	MNOTE 6P1,'THIS ILLUSTRATES AN MNOTE 6P2'	
				0006200	MEND	
				0006300	FM 1,DIAGNOSTIC	
				0006400	MNOTE 1,'THIS ILLUSTRATES AN MNOTE DIAGNOSTIC'	
				0006500	MM * COMMENT	
					* THIS ILLUSTRATES AN MNOTE COMMENT (27)	
					** END OF ILLUSTRATIONS	

(5) WARNING AND ERROR MESSAGES

0001400 E *** VALUE OF LENGTH MODIFIER INVALID FOR TYPE OF CONSTANT
0004000 W *** OPERAND REQUIRES FULL-WORD BOUNDARY
0004200 E *** 'EDIT' UNDEFINED MNEMONIC OPERATION
0006300 W *** THIS ILLUSTRATES AN MNOTE DIAGNOSTIC

NUMBER OF WARNING AND ERROR MESSAGES 004 (6)

HIGHEST SEVERITY CODE ENCOUNTERED 002 (7)

Figure 17. Object Program Listing

been put in order by the assembler. The user should avoid writing non-contiguous control sections, if possible, as they assemble much less efficiently.

Warning and error messages, 5, are collected and presented at the end of the listing. All diagnostic messages (including MNOTE messages with a severity code) produced by the assembler will be listed. This listing differs from the listing presented at the end of the source language listing. Messages are listed in ascending order by line number. A count of the number of messages, 6, and an indication of the highest severity code encountered, 7, are also presented. The severity code is 1 if only warning messages were produced, or 2 if error messages were produced.

The listing contains the following types of lines in addition to the column heading line: machine instructions, assembler instructions with related values, assembler instructions without values, ccw instructions, CNOP instructions, constants, literal pools, diagnostic messages, MNOTE messages, and commentary lines (i.e., lines which were written as commentary by the user or which, due to diagnostic action, were made commentary by the assembler). In addition, a space for required boundary alignment or a statement generated by a macro instruction contains a plus sign (+), 8, immediately following the statement field. A source statement is edited in the following manner: (a) the name field will begin in column 1; a sequence symbol in the name field is suppressed; (b) the operation code is shifted to begin in the location corresponding to card column 10 or the next available location thereafter; (c) the operand is shifted to begin in the location corresponding to card column 16 or the first available location thereafter; and (d) the comment field will follow the operand field by the number of blanks coded in the source program. *No editing is performed if the statement is in error.* Each type of line is described below.

1. *Machine Instructions*: Under location, 9, the section number, 10, and location counter displacement, 11, are listed in hexadecimal. The instruction, 12, addr 1, 13, and addr 2, 14, fields differ according to the type of instruction. If the instruction type is RR, 15, the first part of the instruction field contains the hexadecimal text, and the addr 1 and addr 2 fields are blank. If the instruction type is RX or RS, 16, the hexadecimal text for the R1 and R2 fields (R3, if RS) and the hexadecimal text for the B2 and D2 fields appear under instruction heading. The addr 1 field is blank. Under the addr 2 heading appear the section number and the location counter displacement of the symbolic S2 field, if applicable. If the instruction type is SI, 17, the instruction field contains the hexadecimal text of the I field and the hexadecimal text for the B1 and D1 fields. The addr 1 field contains the section number and loca-

tion counter displacement of the symbolic S1 field, if applicable. The addr 2 field is blank. If the instruction type is SS, 18, the three subfields of the instruction field contain the hexadecimal text of the R1 and R2 fields, the hexadecimal text of the B1 and D1 fields, and the hexadecimal text of the B2 and D2 fields, respectively. The addr 1 field contains the section number and location counter displacement of the symbolic S1 field, if applicable. The addr 2 field contains the section number and location counter displacement of the symbolic S2 field, if applicable.

The seven-digit decimal statement number appears under the statement heading, 19. The number is edited to contain leading zeros, e.g., line 4200 prints as 0004200. The 80-character source statement is listed under source, 20, and is preceded by the letter W or E if a warning or error message has been issued. If a statement exceeds 80 characters in length, it is continued on as many lines as necessary, with continuation lines beginning in the location corresponding to card column 16.

2. *Assembler Instructions With Related Values*: This format description applies to the instructions CSECT, PSECT, DSECT, COM, START, END, EQU, LTOrg, ORG, USING, SETA, SETB, and SETC. Under the instruction heading, the value of the instruction is listed. The types of values are described below. The location, addr 1, and addr 2 fields are blank. Other fields are as described under machine instructions.

Relocatable value fields are associated with CSECT, PSECT, DSECT, COM, START, EQU, END, LTOrg, ORG, and USING. They contain the section number and location counter displacement, both in hexadecimal. Absolute value fields are associated with EQU, USING, SETA, and SETB; they contain the 32-bit value expressed as 8 hexadecimal digits. External or complex relocatable value fields are associated with EQU and USING, and are blank. Character-string value fields are associated with SETC; they contain an alphameric character string.

3. *Assembler Instructions Without Values*: The location, instruction, addr 1, and addr 2 fields are blank for the following instructions: COPY, DROP, ENTRY, EXTRN, AIF, AGO, GBLA, GBLB, GBLC, LCLA, LCLB, LCLC, PRINT, ICTL, ISEQ, PUNCH, REPRO, and macro instructions. The remaining fields are as described under machine instructions.

4. *CCW Instructions*, 21: The location field contains the section number and location counter displacement, both in hexadecimal. The instruction field contains the text of the command code and data address fields, expressed as eight hexadecimal digits, followed by the text of the flag and count fields, also expressed as eight hexadecimal digits. The addr 1 and addr 2 fields are blank. The remaining fields are as described under machine instructions.

5. *CNOP Instructions, 22*: The location field contains the section number and location counter displacement, both in hexadecimal. The instruction field contains the hexadecimal text of one, two, or three NOPR instructions, if required. The addr 1 and addr 2 fields are blank. The remaining fields are as described under machine instructions.

6. *Constants*: The location field contains the section number and location counter displacement, both in hexadecimal, for a DC, 23, or DS, 24, statement. If DC, up to eight bytes of the constant are listed on the first line under instruction. If DS, this field is blank. If the DATA print option is on, the remainder of the constant is listed eight bytes per line. If a duplication factor greater than one is present, each duplication is listed as if it were a new constant. The addr 1 and addr 2 fields are blank. The remaining fields are as described under machine instructions.

7. *Literal Pools*: The location, instruction, addr 1, and addr 2 fields are as described under constants. The source text of the literal, beginning with an equal sign (=), 25, appears in lieu of the 80-character source statement.

8. *Diagnostic Messages*: Diagnostic messages are collected at the end of the listing. Each message is preceded by the statement number of the line to which it applies, and its severity code. Messages are listed in ascending order by line number.

9. *MNOTE Messages*: MNOTE messages that contain a severity code, 26, are printed as diagnostic messages. MNOTE messages that contain an asterisk for the severity code, 27, are printed as commentary lines.

10. *Commentary Lines*: Commentary lines are lines which were written as commentary by the user, 28, or which, due to diagnostic action, were made commentary by the assembler, 29. The location, instruction, addr 1, and addr 2 fields of these lines are blank. Other fields are as described under machine instructions.

Cross-Reference Listing

The cross-reference listing is a presentation in alphabetical order of all the symbols defined within the assembly. It includes a list of all hexadecimal program locations where a reference to the symbol is made in the source language. Figure 18 is an illustration of a cross-reference listing.

Each symbol, 30, in an index line is followed immediately by the type attribute (defined in Table 6), 33, and the length attribute, 34, in bytes, of the symbol. Under location, 35, are listed the section number, 31, and displacement, 32, both in hexadecimal, of the location where the symbol is defined (if relocatable), or an eight-digit hexadecimal number (if absolute). The references field, 36, contains the section number, 37, and displacement, 38, in hexadecimal, of each lo-

(30)	(33)	(34)	(35)	(36)	CROSS R
SYMBOL	TYPE	LN	LOCATION	REFERENCES	
CHDX0002	I	00004	03 0000E	(37) (38)	
CHD0002	A	00004	01 000B8	03 0000E	
EDITOR	C	00003	01 00096	02 00042	
INDIAN	M	00004	02 00000	02 00000, 02 00014	
INDIANCL	J	00001	02 00000		
INDIANCL	J	00001	03 00000		
INDIANP	J	00001	01 00000	02 00012	
INT	P	00002	01 00077	02 00020	
LENGTH	F	00004	01 0006C	01 000C0	
LOOP	I	00006	02 00020	02 0003E	
MESSAGE	C	00014	01 00058	01 000BC, 02 00042, 03 00004, 03	
NOW	F	00004	01 00080	02 00014, 03 00022	
PRINCP	P	00007	01 00070	02 00020, 02 00026, 02 0002C, 02	
PRINT	I	00004	02 0003E		
ROUND	P	00002	01 00084	02 00026	
TEMP	F	00010	01 00086	01 000B0, 0200032, 02 00038	
THEN	F	00004	01 0007C	02 00018	
THISYEAR	U	00004	01 00080		
XYZ	T	00001	00 00001	01 000AC	
YEAR	D	00008	01 00050	03 00000, 03 00004, 03 00086, 03	

Figure 18. Cross-Reference Listing

Table 6. Type Attributes

TYPE ATTRIBUTE	DESCRIPTION OF SYMBOL REPRESENTED BY ATTRIBUTE
A	A-type address constant, implied length, aligned.
B	Binary constant.
C	Character constant.
D	Long floating-point constant, implied length, aligned.
E	Short floating-point constant, implied length, aligned.
F	Full-word fixed-point constant, implied length, aligned.
G	Fixed-point constant, explicit length.
H	Half-word fixed-point constant, implied length, aligned.
I	Machine instruction.
J	Control section name.
K	Floating-point constant, explicit length.
M	Macro instruction.
N	Self-defining term (inner and outer macro instruction operands only).
O	Omitted operand (inner and outer macro instruction operands only).
P	Packed decimal constant.
Q	Q-type address constant, implied length, aligned.
R	A-, Q-, R-, S-, V-, or Y-type address constant, explicit length.
S	S-type address constant, implied length, aligned.
T	External symbol.
U	Undefined. Used for symbols whose attributes are not available, and for inner and outer macro instruction operands that cannot be assigned another attribute. This includes inner macro instruction operands that are symbols or literals. This letter is also assigned to symbols that name EQU statements.
V	V-type address constant, implied length, aligned.
W	CCW assembler instruction.
X	Hexadecimal constant.
Y	Y-type address constant, implied length, aligned.
Z	Zoned decimal constant.
#	R-type address constant, implied length, aligned.

(39) SYMBOL	(40) TYPE	(41) LENGTH	(42) VALUE
CHDX0002	I	00004	03 0000F
CHD0002	A	00004	01 000B8
EDITOR	C	00003	01 00096
INDIAN	M	00004	02 00000
INDIANC	J	00001	02 00000
INDIANCL	J	00001	03 00000
INDIANP	J	00001	01 00000
INT	P	00002	01 00077
LENGTH	F	00004	01 0006C
LOOP	I	00006	02 00020
MESSAGE	C	00014	01 00058
NOW	F	00004	01 00080
PRINCP	P	00007	01 00070
PRINT	I	00004	02 0003F
ROUND	P	00002	01 00084
TEMP	P	00010	01 00086
THEN	F	00004	01 0007C
THISYEAR	U	00004	01 00080
XYZ	T	00001	00000000
YEAR	D	00008	01 00050

Figure 19. Symbol Table Listing

ation where a reference is made to the symbol. Reference locations are listed in ascending order.

Symbol Table Listing

The symbol table listing is a presentation, in alphabetical order, of all the symbols, 39, defined within the assembly. It includes their type, 40, length, 41, and value, 42, attributes. This listing is similar to the cross-reference listing but excludes references. This listing is produced only if the symbol table listing option has been selected and the cross-reference listing option has not also been specified. Figure 19 is an illustration of a symbol table listing.

Each symbol in the listing is followed by its type, length, and value attributes. The value attribute, in hexadecimal, is either a section number and location counter displacement, if relocatable, or an eight-digit hexadecimal number, if absolute.

Internal Symbol Dictionary Listing

The internal symbol dictionary listing is a presentation of the symbols and related information placed, on request, in the ISD portion of the program module to assist the program checkout system. Figure 20 is an illustration of an internal symbol dictionary listing.

Each column after the first presents symbols and information as described by the first column. The first line of a column contains the eight-character name of a symbol, 43. The second line contains the type of symbol, 44, that is represented by one of the following: INSTR, ADCON, BINARY, HEX, SECTION, REAL, INTEGER, CHAR, ZONED, PACKED, S-CON, or VALUE. The third line contains a duplication factor, 45, in hexadecimal. The fourth line contains an eight-digit length, 46, if any, in hexadecimal. The length is normally the length attribute of the symbol; if the symbol is the name of a control section, the length represents the length, in bytes, of the control section. The fifth line contains an eight-digit immediate value or an eight-digit section number and location counter displacement, 47, in hexadecimal.

Program Module Dictionary Listing

The program module dictionary (PMD) listing presents the contents of the PMD. The PMD is created at assembly time and stored as part of the object module. Information in the PMD directs the loading of the object module. The PMD contains external symbol definitions, references, and relocation information.

The PMD listing is helpful in determining the structure of the user's object module and its relocation properties. Figure 21 is an illustration of a PMD listing.

The initial portion of the PMD listing contains a description of the program module. The module name is listed first, 48, followed by the version (or time stamp), 49, the length of the PMD, 50, in hexadecimal, and the highest severity code encountered, 51. The severity code is 0 if no diagnostic messages were produced, 1 if only warning messages were produced, or 2 if error messages were produced. The succeeding parts of the PMD listing contain descriptions of the control sections in the module. The name of the control section is listed first, 52, followed by the type, 53, which is CONTROL, COMMON, or PROTOTYPE. A time stamp is always assigned to the version, 54. The attributes, 55, may be one or more of the following: FIXED, VARIABLE, READONLY, PUBLIC, SYSTEM, or PRVLCD. Each attribute, except FIXED, prints if it was specified by the user. FIXED prints if VARIABLE was not specified. The length in bytes of the control section dictionary, 56, is listed next (in hexadecimal), followed by the byte length, 57, in hexadecimal, of the binary text for the control section.

Following each control section description is a description of the relocatable, absolute, and complex definitions, 58, within the control section. These definitions, for which the name and value are listed, include only those symbols and CSECT names that have been declared entry points by the ENTRY instruction. The next part of the control section description contains the names of the references, 59, within the con-

INTERNAL SYMBOL DICTIONARY													PAGE 0001
(44) NAME	(43) INDIANP	YEAR	MESSAGE	LENGTH	PRINCP	INT	THEN	THISYEAR	NOW	ROUND	TEMP	EDITOR	
(44) TYPE	(45) SECTION	REAL	CHAR	INTEGER	PACKED	PACKED	INTEGER	INTEGER	INTEGER	PACKED	PACKED	CHAR	
(46) DUPL	(45) 000000	000000	000000	000000	000000	000000	000000	000000	000000	000000	000000	000000	
(46) LENGTH	000000CC	00000008	00000014	00000004	00000007	00000002	00000004	00000004	00000004	00000002	00000010		
00000003													
LOC/VAL	(47) 01 00000	01 00050	01 00058	01 0006C	01 00070	01 00077	01 0007C	01 00080	01 00080	01 00084	01 00086	01	
00096													
NAME	CHD0002	INDIANC	INDIAN	LOOP	PRINT	INDIANCL	CHDX0002						
TYPE	ADCON	SECTION	HEX	INSTR	INSTR	SECTION	INSTR						
DUPL	000000	000000	000000	000000	000000	000000	000000						
LENGTH	00000004	0000004E	00000004	00000006	00000004	0000009A	00000004						
LOC/VAL	01 000B8	02 00000	02 00000	02 00020	02 0003E	03 00000	03 0000E						

Figure 20. ISD Listing

PROGRAM MODULE DICTIONARY LISTING													PAGE 0008
MODULE	(48) INDIANX												
NAME	(49) INDIANX												
VERSION	07/22/7	08:39:19											
LENGTH	(50) 00000200												
DIAG SEVERITY	002	(51)											
SECTION 01	(52) INDIANP												
NAME	(52) INDIANP												
TYPE	(53) PROTOTYPE												
VERSION	07/22/7	08:39:19	(54)										
ATTRIBUTES	(55) FIXED												
CSD LENGTH	000000EC	(56)											
SECT LENGTH	000000CC	(57)											
COMPLEX DEFINITIONS	(58)												
NAME	INDIAN												
VALUE	00000000												
REFERENCES	(59)												
REF #	0000	0001	0002	0003									
NAME	AA	XYZ	INDIANP	INDIANC									
MODIFIERS FOR COMPLEX DEFS	(60)												
PAGE 00	# MODIFIERS	0001											
(61) LENGTH	4												
(62) REF #	0003												
(63) TYPE	+												
(64) BYTE	09C												
MODIFIERS FOR TEXT (EXTERNAL REFS, Q-CONS, AND CXDS)													
TEXT PAGE 00	VIRTUAL PAGE 00	# MODIFIERS	0002										
LENGTH	4	4											
REF #	0001	0000											
TYPE	+	+											
BYTE	0AC	0A8											
MODIFIERS FOR TEXT (INTERNAL REFS)													
TEXT PAGE 00	VIRTUAL PAGE 00	# MODIFIERS	0004										
LENGTH	4	4	3										
REF #	0002	0002	0002	0002									
TYPE	+	+	+	+									
BYTE	0C0	0BC	0B8	0B0									
SECTION 02													
NAME	INDIANC												
TYPE	CONTROL												
VERSION	07/22/7	08:39:19											
ATTRIBUTES	FIXED, READONLY												
CSD LENGTH	00000054												
SECT LENGTH	0000004E												
SECTION 03													
NAME	INDIANCL												
TYPE	CONTROL												
VERSION	07/22/7	08:39:19											
ATTRIBUTES	FIXED, READONLY												
CSD LENGTH	00000070												
SECT LENGTH	0000009A												
REFERENCES													
REF #	0000												
NAME	INDIANP												
MODIFIERS FOR TEXT (INTERNAL REFS)													
TEXT PAGE 00	VIRTUAL PAGE 00	# MODIFIERS	0001										
LENGTH	3												
REF #	0000												
TYPE	+												
BYTE	091												
END OF MODULE													

Figure 21. PMD Listing

trol section. The last part within a control section description contains a description of each modifier with the control section, 60. Modifiers for definitions are listed first, followed by modifiers for text, with external references preceding internal references. For each modifier there is an entry for the length, 61, a reference number (corresponding to the reference listed above), 62, a type code (+, -, C, Q, or R), 63, and byte displacement, 64, within the text of the control section where the reference appears. See Table 7 for an explanation of the type code.

Table 7. Type Code Significance in PMD Listing

TYPE CODE	SIGNIFICANCE
+	The definition value of the reference at "reference number" is added to the adcon starting at the indicated byte of the page to which the modifier applies.
-	Same as +, except that the value is subtracted.
C	Store cumulative external dummy section length (CXD value) in storage indicated by modifier.
Q	Same as "+" but use Q-type constant value associated with external dummy section named in reference.
R	Same as "+" but use R-value rather than definition value.

Destination of Output

Assembly variations and the destination of output associated with each variation and shown in Table 8.

Object Program Module Format

Each of the language processors produces object program modules that always have a program module dictionary and text; an internal symbol dictionary is produced only if specified by the user (see Figure 22).

Program Module Dictionary

The program module dictionary consists of a header and a series of control section dictionaries.

- The header contains the name of the standard entry point to the module and other information common to the entire module.
- Each control section dictionary describes its associated control section so that the system can produce, from the text, a fully linked, executable object module.

Text

The text portion of the module contains the instructions and constants generated by the assembler or compiler; it is the executable portion of the module. The text is organized by control sections, the basic unit of all rss programs.

A control section is a block of coding whose virtual storage location assignments may be adjusted inde-

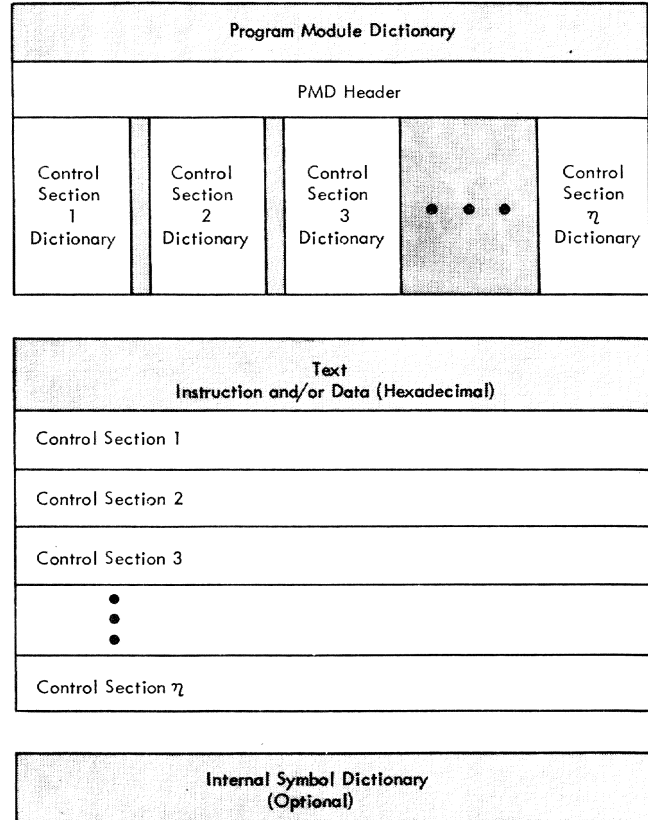


Figure 22. Format of an Object Program Module

pendently of other coding at linkage editing or load time, without altering or impairing the operating logic of the program. At least one page (4096 bytes) of virtual storage is assigned to each control section; a control section may require more than one page. However, at LOGON time the user may specify that control sections with like attributes be packed in virtual memory. This allows several related control sections to be collected into less memory space. Control section packing is encouraged so that the modules to be executed may be compressed into fewer pages, thus reducing the time required for paging operations by the system.

When virtual storage space is allocated to an object program module at load time, all its control sections are allocated. The contents of each control section occupy contiguous virtual storage addresses; however, the individual control sections may be scattered throughout virtual storage.

When object program modules are placed in main storage for execution, they are brought in page-by-page. The contents of each page occupy contiguous main storage locations; however, individual pages may be scattered throughout main storage. Only the pages required for execution are kept in main storage during a user's time slice.

Table 8. Destination of Output

ASSEMBLY VARIATION	OUTPUT			
	OBJECT MODULE	SOURCE	LISTINGS	ASSEMBLER DIAGNOSTICS
Conversational—Input from terminal keyboard or card reader	Latest JOBLIB defined in task or USERLIB	Data set named SOURCE. module name created by system.	Data set named LIST. module name unless printout to terminal is requested.	To terminal, and to list data set if listings requested.
Conversational—Prestored Data Set		Data set named SOURCE. module name will be updated to reflect modifications.	If a printout of the listing data is desired, it must be requested using the PRINT command.	
Nonconversational—Prestored Data Set			Same as conversational, if listing data set is specifically requested. To SYSOUT if no listing data set requested.	To SYSOUT data set if no listing data set requested; otherwise to list data set only.
Nonconversational—Input After ASM		Same as conversational, not prestored.		

The object program module code contains virtual storage addresses during execution. These are translated into actual main storage addresses, based on relationships established between each page's virtual storage base address and its main storage base address, at the time it is placed in main storage. If a page that is executing is swapped out and then relocated in main storage, it may well be assigned a new location in main storage. However, because a new relationship has been established between the page's virtual storage base address and its new main storage base address, the system can execute the page in its new main storage location.

Assembler users can control the organization of text into control sections.

Internal Symbol Dictionary

The internal symbol dictionary contains information, such as symbol definitions and data descriptions. It permits users to write program control system commands, using the same symbolic names for data and instructions that were used in their source coding. The internal symbol dictionary should be requested if the Program Control System is to be used.

Assembling in Express Mode

When a number of modules are to be assembled consecutively in one task, time may be saved by assembling in express mode. This will cause the language processor control to read the name of the next module from SYSIN whenever it would normally have returned to the Command System for a further command.

The express mode is turned on by issuing a command

```
DEFAULT LPCXPRSS=Y
```

anywhere in the task before the first assembly. The ASM command is issued only once, for the first assembly, and the assembly options (operands) are issued at the same time. The assembly options cannot be changed for subsequent assemblies.

The express mode can be turned off by entering an underscore as first character in a line, which will cause an exit from the language processing control system and a return to the command system. It is also possible to turn off the express mode by pressing the attention button any time during the assembly process and issuing a command

```
DEFAULT LPCXPRSS=,
```

Assembly can then be continued in non-express mode by issuing a CO command.

If an invalid module name is entered when the language processor control expects a new module name, the express mode will be turned off and a diagnostic message will be issued.

Assembler Restrictions

Limitations of virtual storage available to the assembler and of the object programs generated by it impose a number of restrictions on the size and contents of source programs capable of being assembled. These restrictions are categorized according to complexity. The first category, simple source program restrictions, can easily be applied to individual source statements or particular types of source statements. Simple program restrictions are listed in Table 9.

The second category, complex restrictions, is composed of restrictions that generally are too complex to anticipate in advance of assembly (e.g., the storage requirements of the various tables internal to the assembler are, in many cases difficult to compute accurately, as the table sizes are complex functions of the source program). Very few programs are of such a size or configuration that these complex limitations are exceeded. Therefore, the assembler user may not wish to concern himself with the complex restrictions until he receives a diagnostic message; then he can proceed to remedy the situation. Complex program restrictions are listed in Table 10.

The assembler working storage is separated into

three parts. Within each working storage area are collections of file and table entries linked together by chain words. In the tables that follow, the table entries have been identified by the assembler phase that produces them.

Some of the more probable causes of working storage overflow are: specifying FULLGEN as an operand in a PRINT statement; infinite nesting of macro instructions; infinite looping within a macro expansion; and too many source statements. If a work area overflows, the assembler will attempt to dynamically acquire additional storage. If the storage is either unavailable or unaddressable, the assembly will terminate with an appropriate diagnostic message.

Table 9. Simple Source Program Restrictions

ITEM	MAXIMUM NUMBER OR SIZE	ASSOCIATED DIAGNOSTIC MESSAGE	USER CORRECTIVE ACTION	ASSEMBLER CONTINUATION ACTION
Unique control sections	255	MAXIMUM NUMBER OF CONTROL SECTIONS EXCEEDED	Split assembly in several parts and assemble each separately.	Control section statements for sections numbered 256 or greater are made commentary; the associated coding becomes part of the section in effect at the time of the error.
LTORG statements	253	None	Combine literal pools or split assembly into several modules.	The 254th and following LTOrg statements are made commentary, literals associated with these statements are pooled by default at the end of the first CSECT and/or PSECT.
External References	2 ¹⁶ -1	None	Reduce external references by combining assembly modules or reducing size of assembly.	A number is assigned to each relocatable reference required by the assembly (EXTRN symbol, V-type address constant, and control section name). Reference 65535 is lost, and the loader resolves reference 65536 as if it were reference 0, etc., thus producing erroneous relocation of the module.
&SYSNDX	10,000	None	Reduce number of inner and outer level macro instructions.	The assembler continues modulo 10000 for &SYSNDX values. Macro expansions not referring to this system variable are correct; the first 10000 inner and outer level macro instructions generated are not effected. The 10001st use produces a &SYSNDX value of 0001 again; use of this value may produce duplication or conflicts with earlier macro-generated statements.
Unsublisted positional macro instruction operands	255	CHARACTER STRING ACCUMULATION IN EXCESS OF 255	Rewrite macro definition in order to concatenate operands longer than 255 characters or change macro instruction.	The length of the character string is reduced to 255 characters and the macro expansion continues.
Macro instruction suboperands within a sublist	255	None	Rewrite macro definition making suboperands operands.	Macro processing continues with the number attributes (N') of the positional operand computed modulo 255.

Table 9. Simple Source Program Restrictions (Continued)

ITEM	MAXIMUM NUMBER OR SIZE	ASSOCIATED DIAGNOSTIC MESSAGE	USER CORRECTIVE ACTION	ASSEMBLER CONTINUATION ACTION
Number of characters for card format input excluding macro instruction and prototype statements	240	TOO MANY CONTINUATION LINES	Compact statement. Operand fields can be contracted by using a variable character symbol in lieu of the desired operand. The variable symbol must, of course, be set to the desired character string for the operand. Comments can be continued on separate comment statements.	Processing continues with the fourth and following cards of the statement treated as commentary.
Location counter value	2 ²⁴ -2	LOCATION COUNTER EXCEEDS MAXIMUM SEGMENT ADDRESS	Use multiple control sections. A symbol with location counter value 2 ²⁴ -2 may not have a length attribute greater than 1.	The assembly is terminated. No object module is created.
Number of parenthesis levels per expression	64	EXPRESSION CONTAINS EXCESSIVE PARENTHESIS	Simplify expression possibly through the use of nested EQU or SET statements.	Evaluation of the expression noted in the diagnostic is terminated, causing incomplete assembly of the statement.
DS length modifier	65,535	VALUE OF LENGTH MODIFIER INVALID FOR TYPE OF CONSTANT	Write more than one consecutive DS statement.	Length of the DS statement is reduced to 65,535 and processing continues.
SYS symbol prefix reserved for system use	—	ENTRY POINT DECLARED IN CONTROL SECTION WITHOUT SYSTEM ATTRIBUTE	All external symbols starting with the characters SYS should be removed from the nonsystem program.	The assembly continues normally.

Table 10. Complex Restrictions

ITEM	OVERFLOW CAUSE	COMMENTS	ASSOCIATED DIAGNOSTIC MESSAGE
<p><i>Assembler Work Area 1:</i> (1$\frac{2}{3}$ pages = fixed usage 98$\frac{1}{2}$ pages = variable usage as outlined below) Macro Level Dictionary 52 words + 4 to 16,384 words per entry (average 7 words per entry)</p>	<p>Assembler Phase II-A: Excessive nesting of macro instructions and/or usage of variable symbols within each macro level</p>	<p>Initial allocation only. Expansion is possible.</p> <p>A separate macro level dictionary is created for each macro instruction and lasts until the macro has been expanded as determined by the macro definition. Encountering a MEND or MEXIT statement will cause the area occupied by the current macro level dictionary to be returned to a scratch status. A macro level dictionary contains an entry for each positional macro instruction operand, an entry for each prototype keyword operand, and global and local variable symbol.</p>	<p>ASSEMBLER WORKING STORAGE EXHAUSTED —WORK1</p>
<p>Using-Register Tables (33 words per table) (Overlays area occupied by Page Usage Tables in Phase II-B)</p>	<p>Phase II-C: More than 1500 control section, USING, and/or DROP statements</p>	<p>A Using-Register Table is created for every control section break, USING, or DROP statement encountered in user level or macro generated source statements.</p>	<p>Same</p>

Table 10. Complex Restrictions (Continued)

ITEM	OVERFLOW CAUSE	COMMENTS	ASSOCIATED DIAGNOSTIC MESSAGE
Cross Reference Item Sort Keys (2 words per entry) (Overlays area occupied by Using-Register Tables)	Phase III: Too many internal symbols and references to internal sym- bols. (Approximately 20000 cross-references)	A two word sort key is devel- oped for each internal symbol and each reference to it if a cross reference listing has been requested.	Same
Assembler Work Area 2: (255 pages initially) Main Dictionary Items (5 to 1025 words per item or greater (average 7 words per item))	Assembler Phase I and II-A: Too many user local and global symbols in combina- tion with other uses of the WORK2 area		ASSEMBLER WORKING STORAGE EXHAUSTED —WORK2
Logical Order File (Normally 5 words per source or macro generated statement except DCs, DSs, DXDs, or CXDs. Ten words per address constant, 8 words per DS, and 8 words plus the text length for one occurrence for each nonaddress constant DC are reserved)	Too many source statements or statements resulting from macro expansions in combina- tion with other uses of the WORK2 area		Same
Global-Section-Macro Chain (3 words per entry)	Too many user level control section, macro instruction, GBLA, GBLB, GBLC (SETA, SETB, or SETC associated with user level global state- ments), USING, DROP, EN- TRY, PRINT, and/or LTORG statements in combination with other uses of the WORK2 area		Same
Source statement continuation lines	Too many continuation lines		Same
Macro Name Dictionary Items (5 words per item)	Too many different macro definitions called by user pro- gram		Same
Variable Information for Diag- nostics	Too many diagnostics		Same
Character string operands from TITLE and MNOTE instruc- tions	Too many TITLE and MNOTE instructions		Same
Logical Order File (Alignment Entries) (2 words per entry)	Phase II-B: Excessive number of DS, DC, CNOP, CCW, CXD, LTORG, or machine instructions re- quiring alignment		Same
Main Dictionary (1) Relocatable EQU items (5 words per item) (2) Literal items plus associ- ated literal trailer items (8 words per literal item and 5 words for each trailer)	Phase II-B: Excessive number of EQU statements Excessive number of nondup- licate literals within a literal pool	Simply relocatable items are those resolvable into one relo- catable value plus an absolute offset. A literal item is created for the occurrence of each unique lit- eral string. A trailer is created each time a literal with the same character string appears in a different literal pool.	Same Same

Table 10. Complex Restrictions (Continued)

ITEM	OVERFLOW CAUSE	COMMENTS	ASSOCIATED DIAGNOSTIC MESSAGE
Logical Order File (Diagnostic entries) (4 words per entry)	Phase III: Diagnostic messages		Same
<i>Assembler Work Area 3:</i> Original Source Statements (20 page blocks are acquired as needed)	Assembler Phase I: Source program too large or referring to a lengthy COPY element or containing back- ward ACO and/or AIF state- ments.	It is impossible to state exactly what number of statements pro- duces this overflow condition since the usage of assembler working storage is a function of the type of statement. However, for an average program this number is usually larger than 10,000. In addition it should be noted that the FULLGEN oper- and of a PRINT statement will cause all conditional macro generated statements to be saved for printing on the output listing, thus requiring more WORK3 area than is otherwise the case.	VIRTUAL STORAGE EX- HAUSTED. ASSEMBLER CANNOT CONTINUE.
Macro-Generated Statements	Phase II-A: Macro expansions	An infinite loop during macro expansion may result in virtual storage exhaustion PRINT state- ments with a FULLGEN oper- and may also result in total usage of virtual storage since each macro model statement is retained after string substitution is performed during the process- ing of each macro instruction.	Same
<i>Additional Working Storage:</i> Program Module Dictionary (2 pages + 1/8 page for each page of Assembled Program Text + total number of DEFs and REFs multiplied by 28)	Phase III: PMD too large. An excessive number of external definitions and/or external references will cause overflow		PMD FILE OVER- FLOWED. ASSEMBLY TERMINATED.
External Name List (2 pages + number of DEFs multiplied by 28; two words per entry)	More than 512 external def- initions (ENTRY operands, CSECT, and PSECT names) were specified.	Either splitting up the assembly or removal of external names should solve the problem.	EXT NAME FILE OVER- FLOWED. ASSEMBLY TERMINATED.
List Data Set (VISAM)	Listing contributed to exhaus- tion of virtual storage.	Problem external to the assem- bler.	THE SIZE OF VIRTUAL MEMORY HAS BEEN EXCEEDED.
Assembled Program Text	Virtual storage exhausted.	Problem external to the assem- bler.	VIRTUAL STORAGE EX- HAUSTED. ASSEMBLER CANNOT CONTINUE.
Internal Symbol Dictionary (255 pages)	Phase IV: ISD too large; excessive num- ber of control sections, US- ING, DROP, control section breaks, and/or internal sym- bols	Four words are used for each control section; 31, for each USING, DROP, or control sec- tion break; and 5 to 6, for each internal symbol.	ISD FILE OVER- FLOWED. ISD NOT PRODUCED.

Assembler Diagnostic Action

This section describes the format of diagnostic messages produced by the TSS assembler. It includes a description of error severity codes and error levels, and describes the effect of error severity upon requests to execute the assembled program. Refer to the publication *System Messages* for a description of each diagnostic and the source program errors that cause it.

All but a few of the diagnostic messages produced by the assemblers are issued in response to source program errors. In conversational mode, all diagnostics produced by the assembler appear on the terminal. In addition, messages from the conversational phases of the assembler for conditions which have been left uncorrected and all messages from the nonconversational phases of the assembler will appear in the output program listings, if any list option is selected. In nonconversational mode, all messages appear either in the output program listings or on SYSOUT if listing data set is not specified.

A few messages pertain to violations of assembler space and size restrictions and malfunctions in the assembler's operating environment. Some of the conditions which produce these messages also cause termination of the assembly and a return of control to the command-language level. The assembler does not produce object modules under conditions of abnormal termination; it will, however, place the terminating diagnostic message in the list data set, if one is available, and/or on SYSOUT.

The format of a diagnostic message is:

number code *** text

When the assembler is used in conversational mode with prestored source data set, the actual line in which the error occurred is printed out immediately before the diagnostic message. Diagnostic messages produced after Phase I when running conversationally without a prestored source data set also cause the error line to be printed out at the keyboard.

The text for all messages produced by the assembler itself will be contained on one line. The text portion of messages produced by macro instructions through the MNOTE facility may extend to more than one line.

The "number" parameter is the source program line number of the first line of the statement to which the message applies. Messages concerning errors that the assembler does not associate with any specific statement carry the line number of the source program END statement.

The "code" parameter is a one-letter indicator of the severity of the error. The letters used, the severity of errors associated with each letter, and a brief description of assembler action taken are given in Table II.

If a symbol is validly defined in a machine instruction or in a DC, DS, LTOrg, or CCW statement, and the statement is then discarded for syntactic errors, the symbol will nevertheless be assigned the relocatable value it would have had, had the statement been correct.

Errors occurring in statements that are bypassed due to conditional assembly statements (AIF, AGO), do not produce diagnostic messages except in the case of an improperly formed sequence symbol in the name field.

When an assembled program is to be executed, the module named, and all modules called by this module, are inspected during the loading process to see whether any have been assembled with level-2 errors (severity code E). Any module containing an error level of 2 causes a diagnostic message naming the module and the error level to be printed on the user's SYSOUT.

Use and Structure of a User Macro Library

This section describes possible uses of a user macro library, the mechanism by which the TSS assembler operates on user macro libraries, and a detailed description of their creation and format. Up to seven macro libraries may be used in conjunction with the TSS Assembler. The libraries will be searched in the hierarchy specified by the DDEF sequence associated with ASM. Example 23 in Part III of this publication illustrates the procedure for building and using a user macro library.

Reasons for Using a User Macro Library

There are a number of ways in which user macro libraries may be of value. A few of these are listed below.

1. The same macro instruction is to be made available to more than one program or programmer. The macro instruction could be defined in each program, but a change in the macro definition would then require that each individual copy of the macro definition be changed rather than just one copy.
2. A modified form of a system macro instruction is to be used, employing the same macro instruction name as the system library macro instruction name. As the user macro library will be searched first, the modified form could be placed in the user macro library.
3. A program that must operate in more than one operating environment (TSS and OS or OS VS, for example) is being written. The source program may

be identical in both systems if all code required to be different is contained in macro definitions.

4. Debugging output code is to be included in a program during checkout, and removed when the program is complete. The debugging code could, of course, simply be removed everywhere it appears in the source program. Another technique is to include all such code in user macro definitions, then change the macro definitions when the program is complete so they no longer produce the debugging code.
5. A program is being written that must interface with other programs, but the interface design is not yet firm. Programs on both sides of the interface may wish to place code in user macro definitions, so that when the interface needs changing all code associated with the change is centralized.

TSS Assembler Processing of Macro Definitions

When the TSS assembler encounters an operation code not defined as a machine instruction, the assembler does not produce a diagnostic labeling the operation code as invalid until it has been determined that the operation code is not a macro instruction. If the assembler is to know that a macro instruction is being used, a definition of the macro must be in one of three places. These places are listed below, in the order in which the assembler will look for them.

1. Macro instructions may be defined in the program using them.
2. Macro instructions may be defined in a user macro library.
3. Such macro instructions as `CALL`, `SAVE`, `RETURN` and all other macro instructions described in the publication *Assembler User's Macro Instructions* are defined in a macro library supplied with TSS and available to all users of this system. These macro instructions are referred to as "system" macro instructions. Macro definitions defined in sources 1 or 2 above will be used prior to any definitions in the system macro library.

Detailed Description of User Macro Library Creation and Format

The following paragraphs describe user macro library creation and format. This description applies equally to the system macro library.

A macro and COPY library is a collection of macro definitions and symbolic statements. It is from such a

library that the TSS assembler retrieves and expands macro definitions when the corresponding macro instruction appears in a source program. The operand of a COPY instruction identifies the section of coding to be copied and included in the program currently being assembled.

Associated with each macro library is a macro library index. The entries in the index relate the name of each macro definition and group of COPY statements to its location in the macro library. Thus, source lines in the macro and COPY library can be located by matching the operation of the corresponding macro instruction or operand of the corresponding COPY statement to the appropriate entry in the index.

The first card of each macro or group of COPY statements in a library must contain a header character (normally a right parenthesis) as the first character followed by the macro or COPY name. This name has a maximum of eight characters; if less, it must be left justified. In source lines to be copied, the symbolic statements (for example a DSECT) begin at the second line. If the source lines are not naturally delimited (as a MEND statement delimits a macro definition), a delimiting statement must appear between items. For the TSS macro and COPY library the delimiter statement contains a right parenthesis in the first position of the text. It should be noted that the right parenthesis may also serve as the header character.

The second card of each macro definition must contain `MACRO`. This is followed by a macro instruction prototype statement, model statements (if any) and a macro definition trailer statement, i.e., `MEND`.

The macro and COPY library may be created and modified by the `DATA` and `MODIFY` commands. Alternatively, it may be created or modified by user-supplied routines using `VISAM`.

The organization and format of the symbolic component of the system macro and COPY library is shown in Figure 23. The format of each symbolic line, which is shown in Figure 24, follows that described for line data sets.

The lines of information within the symbolic component are ordered by line number. The number of the first line of each parcel (i.e., macro or group of COPY statements) is used to index the symbolic component.

Having established the macro and COPY library, the user must create the associated macro library index by executing either the `SYSINDEX` or `SYSXBLD` IBM-supplied service routines. Use of the `SYSINDEX` routine is illustrated in Example 23. The `SYSINDEX` routine requires that the macro definition and index data sets be explicitly defined for the task with respective ddnames

Table 11. Assembler Diagnostic Action

CODE	SEVERITY	DESCRIPTION	ACTION
blank	Informational message, Level-0 (no error)	The expansion of macro instructions may generate diagnostic messages if an MNOTE statement is encountered within the macro definition. The MNOTE statement allows a severity code to be associated with the message. When the value of the code is zero, the message is treated as a diagnostic for the purposes of printing at the terminal and inclusion in the diagnostic portion of the object listing; however, the message is considered to be informational only and does not contribute to the count of error messages or the error severity level of the assembled module.	Action is determined by the design of the individual macro definition.
W	Warning message, Level-1 error	A message with this code is produced under the following two conditions, which result in the associated actions: 1) The assembler detects a situation that either may not be as the programmer intended, or is incompatible with other assemblers. 2) The assembler encounters an MNOTE statement with a severity code of 1 during macro expansion.	1) The statement is assembled as written 2) Action is determined by the design of the individual macro definition
E	Error message, Level-2 error	A message with this code is produced under the following circumstances, which result in the associated actions: 1) The operation code of any instruction cannot be identified or the syntax for the operands of machine instructions cannot be analyzed or the syntax for the operand field of assembler instructions cannot be correctly analyzed. 2) The syntax for the operands of machine instructions is correct but the values obtained for the various operands are incorrect. 3) The syntax for the operand field of assembler instructions is correct but the values or definitions for some of the operands are incorrect. 4) An MNOTE statement with a severity code of 2 or greater is encountered during macro expansion.	1) Statement is not assembled; however, symbols contained in name fields of such instructions are considered defined for the assembly. 2) The instruction is assembled but those subfields for which correct values could not be obtained are set to zero in the machine language text. 3) An attempt is made to process the correct operands (when there are more than one) and ignore the incorrect ones. 4) Action is determined by the design of the individual macro definition.
<i>Note:</i> When an MNOTE instruction is encountered in the source program of a conversational assembly, the assembler will interrupt processing and prompt the user for corrections.			

SOURCE and INDEX. The user must also specify the header character and the length of the macro name. The SYSINDEX routine receives the user's input parameters, prompts him for missing parameters and processes those parameters. It then calls the SYSXBLD routine which creates the index. Alternatively, the user can set up the parameters required and pass them directly by calling SYSXBLD in a problem program.

SYSXBLD makes a sequential pass through the entire macro and COPY library to determine, based on parameters supplied, which statements must have an index entry. The user-supplied header character will be compared with the first character of each symbolic statement to determine whether that statement contains an index entry. Or, the user may supply the name

of a routine to be called after each symbolic statement is obtained. This routine must determine if a statement requires an index entry. If it does, the user routine returns to the appropriate library service routine with a name and associated line number that are to be placed in the index. If the user routine determines that a statement does not require an index entry, it must pass this fact to the service routine and request the next statement.

For detailed information on the use of SYSINDEX and SYSXBLD, see the publication *Assembler User's Macro Instructions*.

Figure 25 shows the format of the symbolic library index. The index component is a table that relates the name of each parcel to the number of its first line. It

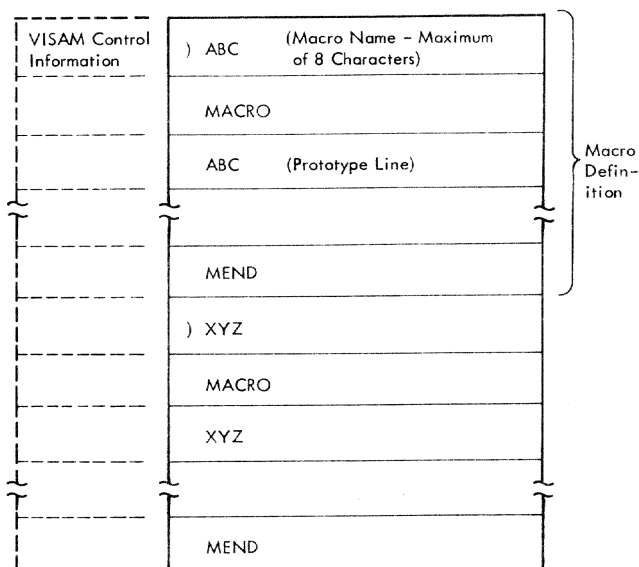


Figure 23. Format of a Macro Definition Symbolic Component

LL	LN	C	T
4 Bytes	7 Bytes	1 Byte	(LL-12) Bytes
LL is the length of the line including the LL field			
C is a code whose values and their meanings are:			
	<i>Code</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	
	01	The line originated at a terminal keyboard	
	00	The line was obtained as a card image	
	Note: C is normally 00 for all lines of the system macro and COPY library		
LN is the line number			
T is the text of the symbolic line consisting of LL minus 12 characters			

Figure 24. Format of a Line in a Symbolic Component

consists of a single record containing a header and as many entries as there are parcels in the associated library. The header contains information describing the index as a whole; each index entry contains a parcel name and retrieval information for the corresponding symbolic parcel in the associated library. Entries appear in ascending order according to the EBCDIC collating sequence of parcel names. Thus, any parcel in the system macro and COPY library can be located within the symbolic component by matching the operation of the corresponding macro instruction or operand of the corresponding COPY statement to the appropriate entry in the index.

Index Header

1. *Name Length*: a two-byte binary integer specifying the length, in bytes, of parcel names. In the IBM-supplied macro and COPY library, this value equals eight. The two high-order bytes of this word are reserved for future use and currently are set to zero.
2. *Index Length*: the location, relative to byte zero of the first index entry, of the first unused byte in the index. This value is used to indicate the length of the index.
3. *Search Starting Point*: the location, relative to byte zero, of the first index entry. This is the point at which the routine is to begin its binary search procedure.

Index Entry

1. *Parcel Name*: the parcel name, whose length in bytes is given in the header. It is left-justified and, if necessary, filled with trailing blanks.
2. *Retrieval Line Number*: the retrieval line number associated with the corresponding parcel in the symbolic library. The line number is given in EBCDIC and is right-justified with leading blanks.

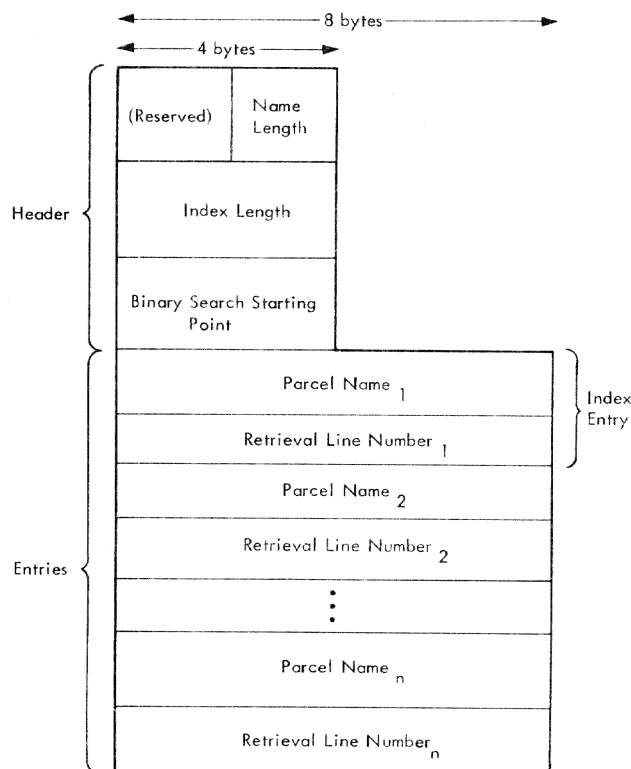


Figure 25. Format of Symbolic Library Index

Control Section Names and Attributes

Control sections are named to assist the assembler in assigning consecutive virtual storage locations to them during assembly. The consecutive assignment of virtual storage locations, once begun, is continued throughout assembly. Control section contents may be written in an intermixed manner. If the assembler detects several statements defining a particular type of control section, all containing the same name, it considers the first such statement as the beginning of the control section; the rest of the statements are continuations of that control section.

Only control sections with the `PSECT` attribute (described below) need be named. However, there may only be one unnamed control section in a source program module. As with named control sections, the unnamed control section is provided with a location counter; its contents are assigned consecutive virtual storage addresses throughout assembly.

In addition to controlling assembler address assignments, the identification of control sections

- Enables symbolic linkages, based on control section names, to be made between control sections.
- Allows the dynamic loader to allocate noncontiguous storage for different control sections of an object program module during loading.
- Allows dynamic control section rejection at load or link edit time.

Table 12 summarizes the ways in which control sections can be named and assigned attributes at source coding time.

The attributes of control sections describe the characteristics of the instructions and data they contain. Attributes are described at the control section level because the linkage editor and dynamic loader operate on control sections. These attributes can be specified by assembler users:

READONLY—The control section contains instructions and/or data that are not to be modified by a user. If this attribute is not specified, the control section is assumed to have a read/write attribute. `READONLY` control sections are allocated storage with a protection key that prevents the user from storing in the control section.

PUBLIC—The control section contains instructions and/or data that can be shared by other tasks if (1) the owner of the library containing the object program module that includes this control section issues an appropriate `PERMIT` command authorizing its sharing, (2) each sharer issues a `SHARE` command updating the system catalog so that the system can locate that library by each sharer's name, and (3) the owner and sharers define the library by a `DDEF` command (by

specifying `OPTION-JOBLIB` in the command operand) in their respective tasks prior to attempting to use the object program module involved; the modules may not contain relocatable address constants.

If the public attribute is not specified, the control section is assumed to be private.

NOTE: If two users refer to the same public control section, both share the same physical copy. If two users refer to a private control section, each uses a separate copy.

PSECT—The control section contains modifiable storage (variable program data, save areas, or working storage areas). Control sections with the `PSECT` attribute are normally used for the modifiable storage associated with `READONLY`, `PUBLIC` control sections. Each such control section has its own private copy of the modifiable storage (`PSECT`) control section.

COM—The control section is used as a common storage area by independent assemblies that have been linked and/or loaded for execution as one overall program. The required storage area is allocated at assembly time.

PRVLGD—The control section is to be supplied with a storage protection key at load time, such that only privileged system service routines have access to it. If this attribute is not specified, the control section is assumed to be nonprivileged. This attribute is reserved for system routines resident in the `SYSLIB`.

VARIABLE—The length of the control section may vary during program execution. If this attribute is not specified, the fixed-length attribute is assumed. The number of pages allocated for variable-length control sections is determined by each installation and is specified at system generation time. Fixed-length control sections are allocated an integral number of pages (the minimum number that will contain the bounds of the control sections).

NOTE: The `SYSTEM` and `PRVLGD` attributes may also be specified by system programmer-users, if the control section is to be part of a system object program module. This attribute is never specified for problem programs. The user should keep in mind that control sections may be packed on double-word boundaries by the dynamic loader at execution time, if control section packing was designated at `LOGON` time. Only control sections with like attributes may be packed, however. This packing technique more efficiently utilizes virtual storage space, and is encouraged whenever practical.

Shared Object Program Modules

In TSS, shared object program modules normally contain one or more control sections with READONLY and PUBLIC attributes, and a prototype (PSECT) control section for the modifiable storage required by the READONLY portions.

A simplified format of a shared object program module is illustrated in Figure 26.

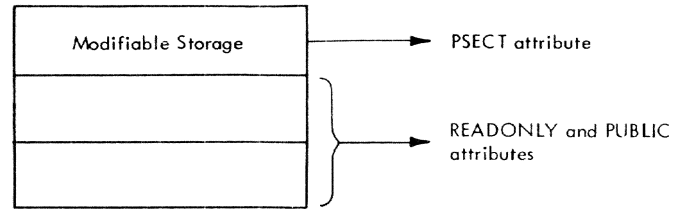


Figure 26. Shared Object Program Module

Table 12. Assembler Statements Used to Name Control Sections and Describe their Attributes

ASSEMBLER STATEMENT				
NAME FIELD	OPERATION FIELD	OPERAND FIELD	USE	REMARKS
Symbol or blank	START	Self-defining value or blank	May be used to identify first (or only) control section of object module; may be used if self-defining value is included in operand to specify initial virtual storage location counter value for first control section	Control section identified this way assumed to have fixed-length and read/write attributes but not these attributes: PRVLGD, PUBLIC, PSECT, SYSTEM, or COM
Symbol or blank	CSECT	READONLY PUBLIC PRVLGD VARIABLE SYSTEM blank (none of above)	Identifies control section without PSECT or COM attribute; is not a DSECT	Assembler assigns control section's attributes based on specification in operand field
Symbol	PSECT	READONLY PUBLIC PRVLGD VARIABLE SYSTEM blank (none of above)	Identifies control section containing address constants and save area, and/or working area	Assembler assigns PSECT attribute to control section; also other attributes specified in operand field
Symbol or blank	COM	READONLY PUBLIC PRVLGD VARIABLE SYSTEM blank (none of above)	Identifies control section serving as common storage area	Assembler assigns COM attribute to control section; also other attributes specified in operand field
Symbol	DSECT	blank	Identifies control section describing layout of storage area; does not actually reserve storage; storage area reserved by another statement	

Appendix B. Problem Program Checkout and Modification

The system elements that contain facilities for simplifying problem program checkout and modification are:

- Assembler
- Linkage editor
- Program control system

Assembler

The assembler includes conversational prompting and diagnostic facilities to assist the user in debugging his source program modules as he enters source statements at his terminal. It also includes optional facilities for:

- Storing and cataloging the source data set and object program module,
- Providing various listings,
- Including an internal symbol dictionary (ISD) in his object program module.

The ISD allows the user to employ the full capabilities of the program control system when the object program is subsequently checked dynamically during execution.

Prompting and Diagnostic Facilities

The diagnostic facilities available during source language processing vary with the manner in which the user has specified that source language processing is to proceed.

- As part of a conversational task in which the user enters his source statements from the terminal.
- As part of a conversational task in which the source statements are made available from a prestored data set specified by the user.
- As part of a nonconversational task in which the source statements are made available in the SYSIN data set.
- As part of a nonconversational task in which the source statements are made available from a prestored data set other than SYSIN, but which is specified by the user in the SYSIN data set.

NOTE: To be acceptable for language processing, a prestored source data set must have a line organization. If source statements are submitted conversationally, or if they form part of the prestored SYSIN of a task, a source data set will be constructed with line organization. Each physical line output to the system,

whether as a single card or as a single line typed at the terminal, becomes a physical record of the line data set (input length is limited to 120 characters). Continuation conventions specified for commands do not apply to line data sets. Continuation conventions for combining two or more physical records into a single logical statement for a language processor are as specified by that processor.

Conversational Mode, Source Statements from Terminal

When the assembler is ready for a source statement, the system unlocks the user's keyboard and prints a line number at his terminal. The user then types in the contents for the line. The system stores both the line number and the line and then locks the user's keyboard.

If the syntax analysis indicates that the statement is correct, the system again unlocks the keyboard and prints the next line number at the terminal, so that the user can enter his next statement.

If the syntax analysis indicates that one or more parts of a statement are incorrect, a diagnostic message identifying each error is sent to the user's terminal. The system then types out the line in error and a # sign, and unlocks the user's keyboard so that the user can enter corrections. He can insert required lines between previously entered lines, replace erroneous lines, or delete lines.

When a user enters a correction line as an insert or a replacement, the first part of it must be a percent sign (%), followed by the appropriate line number. He then types a comma, and enters the correction. The % identifies the line as a correction rather than as the contents of the line for which the system entered a line number. Example: to replace line 500, the correction line might read

```
600    %500,    DC A(TRIAL)
```

If the user wishes to delete one or more lines, he must type a %D after the system-supplied line number, then a comma, and then the line number or range of line numbers to be deleted. Example: the correction line for a deletion entry might read

```
400    %D, 200    — for a single line
```

```
1800   %D, 900, 1100 — for lines 900-1100
```

The indicated lines are permanently removed from the source data set.

Each modification is stored by the system until all modifications are completed. A user restarting a long program may, thus, have a long wait before he can enter his next statement. To signal the system that he has entered all his modifications, the user enters a normal line (he does not enter % or %D), in response to the system's prompting. The corrections are then made by the assembler, after which the just-entered line is processed. If the assembler must restart, all uncorrected diagnostics will be reissued.

When the user enters an END statement, the assembler completes its first phase. If any diagnostic messages are issued at this point, the user is prompted for a decision: Does he want to terminate language processing, make modifications and restart, or continue language processing? The user may request that all further diagnostic messages, or solicitations for corrections, be inhibited, by typing 'I' or 'C' respectively when prompted and pressing the return key. Diagnostics will still be issued with the listing after completion of assembly, but the operation in conversational mode will not be needlessly impeded by messages and promptings should the user decide not to effect modifications at the keyboard. If he elects to modify and restart, the user repeats the above procedure after making modifications required by the diagnostic messages just received.

The second phase of the language processor is then executed. If any errors are detected during this phase, the assembler indicates the number of an erroneous line, but does not issue the line itself. If the user wants to see the actual contents of the line, he follows this procedure:

1. He presses the ATTENTION key to interrupt source language processing.
2. When the system prints an exclamation point (!), he types in the LINE? command and specifies the source data set name, together with the line number supplied in the diagnostic message.
3. After the line has been presented, he issues a GO command to resume source language processing from the point of interruption.

At the completion of this phase, the user is informed whether the assembler found no errors, minor errors, major errors, or errors that prevented it from producing an object module. The assembler will continue processing if it can; if it cannot, it will so inform the user.

NOTE: The user can terminate language processing at any time by pressing the ATTENTION button.

Conversational Mode, Source Statements from Prestored Data Set

In this form of language processing, successive lines of the source program module are fetched from the specified prestored data set. Communication, when source statement errors are detected, takes place between the user and the system via his terminal. The user's terminal is locked until diagnostic (or prompting) messages are produced.

If the system's syntax analysis indicates that one or more parts of the statement being processed are incorrect, the system prints out at the terminal the line in which the error occurred, followed by the diagnostic message and a number sign (#) at the beginning of the next line to prompt corrections. (The line printed out by the system may happen to be a continuation line. If the user wants to see the contents of some previous line he can press the attention key and then type in the LINE? command, specifying source data set name and desired line number(s).) The user may then proceed to correct his program, based on the diagnostic messages. He can add lines between existing lines, or replace or delete existing lines.

If he wants to enter a correction line as an insert or a replacement, he types in the line number of the line involved, a comma, and the actual correction. For example, to insert line 450 (between, say, lines 400 and 500), the insertion line might read:

```
# 450, CATRD AREA+3, LENGTH
```

The correction line is permanently inserted by the system in the prestored source data set. The system then types out another # at the beginning of a new line, and unlocks the user's keyboard.

If the user wants to delete one or more lines, he types a D following the #, then a comma, and the line number or range of line numbers to be deleted.

```
# D, 400 — to delete line 400
```

```
# D, 900, 1100 — to delete lines 900-1100
```

The lines to be deleted are permanently removed from the prestored source data set.

The user may decide at some point that he has too many errors in his source program to try correcting them conversationally but wishes to allow the assembly to continue without further diagnostic messages coming to his terminal to slow down the process needlessly. In that case he can inhibit all further diagnostic messages by typing the letter 'I' in response to the number sign (#) and pressing the return key. If he wishes to continue receiving diagnostic messages but not be prompted for corrections until the completion of the SOURCE.data set scan, he can type in the letter 'C' at the terminal and press the return key. He may also elect to ignore only the current error message by

pressing the return key. In all cases, all unsatisfied diagnostics are included in the `LIST.dataset` when the first phase of the assembly process is completed.

To signal the system that he has entered all the corrections required, in response to the diagnostic messages for the previous statement, the user responds to the `#` with a carriage return. The system processes the correction lines and then retrieves the next line of the prestored source data set. This may cause further diagnostic messages and a repetition of all previously issued messages.

After the `END` statement of the source data set has been processed, the system and user communicate in the same way as described about for "Conversational Mode, Source Statements from Terminal."

Nonconversational Mode, Source Statements from `SYSIN`

In this situation, there is no system communication with the user during language processing. The source data set is read, one statement at a time, from the `SYSIN` data set. As each statement is read, a line number is prefixed to it, to serve as the key by which the line can be identified later. The new data set created in this way can be modified, or otherwise used after language processing is completed. Any diagnostic messages are sent to the task's `SYSOUT` data set.

Nonconversational Mode, Source Statements from Prestored Data Set

This is essentially the same as the previous type of language processing, except that the source program module already exists as a line data set. The system picks up the source statements, line by line, and processes them. No corrections are made, and any diagnostic messages are written on the task's `SYSOUT` data set for later analysis by the user.

Program Listings and Related Aids

The user can specify that any, or a combination, of the following be made available as a result of source language processing:

1. Listings

- Object program module listing
- Source data set listing
- Cross reference listing
- Edited symbol table
- Internal symbol dictionary listing
- Program module dictionary listing

2. Internal symbol dictionary

NOTE: A cross reference listing and an edited symbol table cannot both be requested.

Linkage Editor

In addition to its basic function (static linking of object program modules), the linkage editor can

- Control the libraries from which input object program modules are to be obtained, and the order in which searches occur to satisfy unresolved references during linkage edit or input processing.
- Provide an automatic search (of the libraries in the program library list) at the completion of linkage editor input, to satisfy all unresolved external references (where resolution has not been explicitly excluded during linkage editor input).
- Replace, delete or rename control sections within modules. (Automatic rejection of control sections occurs when more than one section has the same name; the first control section received as input is retained in the object program module; all others subsequently detected with the same name are ignored.)
- Rename or delete entry points within an object program module.
- Change the attributes of control sections within an object program module.
- Combine two or more control sections of an object program module, thus reducing the number of virtual storage pages required.
- Collect automatically and include a reserved storage area within the output object program module, for common control sections received as input.

Prompting and Diagnostic Facilities

The linkage editor may be run under the same four conditions as the language processors. It also issues prompting and diagnostic messages in the same way, and the user can correct control statements in the same manner as for source statements.

Program Listings and Related Aids

The user may optionally specify that either or both of these be produced by the linkage editor:

1. Internal symbol dictionary for the output object module.
2. Program module dictionary listing.

The linkage editor automatically prepares a list of the symbols that cannot be resolved by automatic calls, and those symbols whose resolutions are deferred to the dynamic loader.

Object Program Module Linking

Time Sharing System Program Structure

In `TSS`, a problem program, at execution time, may be a single object program module, or a series of object program modules that are linked together.

Symbolic Linkage

Symbols may be referred to (used as an operand in a statement) in one control section, and be defined (used as the name of a statement) in other control sections to establish linkages between those control sections.

External References: A control section may contain external references (the symbols that are referred to in control sections of one object program module, but defined in control sections of separately assembled object program modules). Symbols that are external references are used in source program modules to

- Identify an entry point in another object program module or
- Identify the location of data (as a table) that is contained in another object program module.

External Symbols: Each object module has at least one external symbol (a symbol that can be used as an external reference in another module). These are valid external symbols in rss object program modules:

- The module's name (standard entry point of the module).
- Name of any control section in the module, including common blocks; if blank COMMON is declared, the name is a name of blanks; if an unnamed control section is declared, its name is a name of hexadecimal 0s.
- Any symbol that is included in an ENTRY statement in the object program module and is used as a name in any statement, except those in dummy sections.

External Symbol Values: The values associated with each external symbol are V-value and R-value.

The V-value specifies the location at which execution of the object program module is to begin when control is transferred to that object program module. This is the conventional external symbol value.

These are the V-values for external symbols:

EXTERNAL SYMBOL	V-VALUE GIVEN CALLING PROGRAM
1. Module name	1. Virtual storage location of expression included in END statement in called program module; or, if END statement is blank, origin of first CSECT in called program module
2. CSECT name	2. Virtual storage location of origin of named CSECT in called program module
3. Symbol in operand of ENTRY statement	3. Actual virtual storage location of symbol in called program module

These R-values specify various locations, depending upon the type of external symbol specified:

EXTERNAL SYMBOL	R-VALUE GIVEN CALLING PROGRAM
1. Module name	1. Virtual storage location of origin of PSECT control section (if there is one) in called program module; if called program module does not contain PSECT control section, R-value gives virtual storage location of origin of first CSECT in called program module
2. CSECT name	2. Virtual storage location of origin of named CSECT (same as V-value)
3. Symbol in operand of ENTRY statement	3. Virtual storage location of origin of control section containing ENTRY statement in called program module; if called program module contains PSECT, ENTRY statement should be in PSECT even though symbol is defined in another control section

An illustration of the rules is given in Figure 27. Module M consists of two control sections: a CSECT (x) and a PSECT (y). It has a standard entry point (w) and a deferred point (z).

Note in the references to module M *by entry point* (W and Z), how the V-value indicates the location to which control is transferred, and the R-value gives the location of the PSECT. If module M were a shared program module, CSECT x would have READONLY and PUBLIC attributes, and a single copy of this control section could be used by any task permitted to share it. However, each sharing task would be given a separate copy of the PSECT, and for each copy there would be a separate R-value indicating where that task's private copy of the PSECT is located. Each calling program could then pass that address to module M, to be used as its private variable area, when module M is executed on its behalf. *Example:* Assume that module M is shared by task 1 and task 2. Also, assume that module A of task 1 and module B of task 2 are in main storage simultaneously and both are using module M, with task 2 making the first reference. Main storage might appear as in Figure 28.

Linkage Conventions

Standard linkage conventions have been defined to govern the communication between all rss programs.

- Type I—Between two nonprivileged or between two privileged programs.

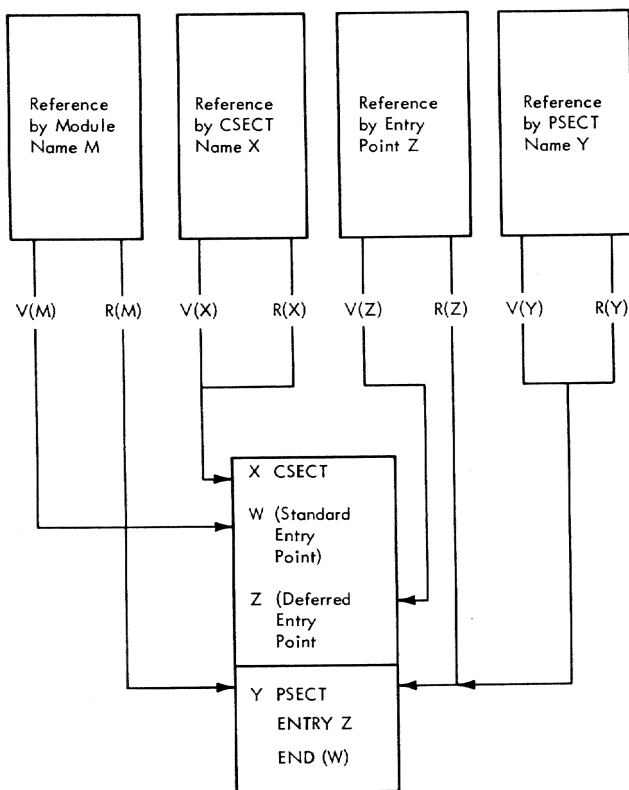


Figure 27. V- and R-Values of External Symbols

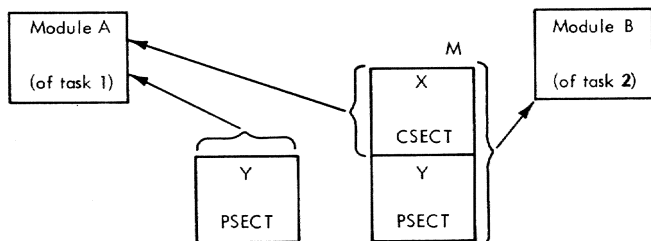


Figure 28. Sharing a Module

- Type II—From a nonprivileged to a privileged program.
- Type III—From a privileged to a nonprivileged program.

Only the type-I linkage between nonprivileged programs is covered here; type-I linkage between privileged programs is described in *Assembler User Macro Instructions*. Types-II and -III linkages are described in *System Programmer's Guide*.

Type-I linkage conventions include three basic standards to which the assembler user must adhere:

1. Using the proper registers in establishing a linkage;
2. Reserving a parameter area in the calling program, to which the called program may refer;
3. Reserving a save area (in the calling program) in which the called program may save the contents of the calling program's registers.

Proper Register Use: Four general registers are used for the type-I linkage between nonprivileged programs.

- *General register 1*—Set up by the calling program to give location of the parameter list to be passed to the called program.
- *General register 13*—Set up by calling program to give location of save area to called program.
- *General register 14*—Set up by calling program to give called program the location of standard return address in the calling program.
- *General register 15*—Set up by calling program to indicate location to which control is to be transferred in the called program (V-value); on return to the calling program, the called program may supply a return code to the calling program in this register.

Reserving a Parameter Area: Every calling program may reserve a storage area (parameter area) in which the parameter list used by the called program is located. The first entry in a variable-length parameter area contains the length (in bytes) of the entire parameter area. Each succeeding entry contains the address of an argument to be "passed" to the called program.

Reserving a Save Area: Every calling program must reserve a storage area (save area) in which certain registers (those used in the called program and those used in the linkage to the called program) are saved by the called program.

The minimum amount of storage needed for the save area of a program that is both calling and called, is 19 words. Table 13 shows the layout of the save area and the contents of each word.

NOTE: It is the responsibility of the called program to maintain the integrity of general registers 2 through 12, so their contents will be the same at exit as they were at entry to the called program. It is the calling program's responsibility to maintain the floating-point registers around a call. General registers 0, 1, 13, 14, and 15 must conform to the indicated conventions.

Linkage Macro Instructions

The CALL, SAVE, and RETURN macro instructions provide linkage between object program modules; the RETURN and EXIT macro instructions define the end of program execution.

CALL Macro Instruction: The forms of the CALL macro instruction are implicit CALL and explicit CALL. The principal difference between the two forms is the time at which the called program is brought into virtual

Table 13. Save Area Contents

WORD LOCATION	CONTENTS
1	Contains length of save area
2	Address of calling program's save area; field is set by called program in its own save area
3	Address of next save area; that is, save area of program to which this program refers
4	Contents of register 14 containing address to which return from this program is made; field is set by called program in calling program's save area
5	Contents of register 15 containing address to which entry into this program is made; this field is set by called program in calling program's save area
6	Contents of register 0
7	Contents of register 1
8	Contents of register 2
·	·
·	· Saved by called program
·	·
18	Contents of register 12
19	Address of the called program's PSECT belong to calling program (R-value)
20 ff	User data

storage. Consider the program illustrated in Figure 29. An implicit linkage between module A and module B means that allocating A implies allocating B. In other words, when A is allocated, so is B. Explicit linkage, between two modules (e.g., B and C in Figure 29) means that C is not to be loaded unless, in the execution of B, C is actually (or explicitly) required.

The usefulness of the differentiation of implicit and explicit linkage is illustrated by Figure 29.

- Linkages are provided so that any combination of the object modules needed for any conceivable run can be selected.
- If only A and C, or A, B, and E are needed in a given run, none of the others need be allocated; C, B, and E would be allocated with A, each time A is allocated.

SAVE Macro Instruction: The SAVE macro instruction may be used as a convenient means of automatically storing the contents of registers in the calling program's save area. It may be written at every entry point of the called program. An entry point identifier may be specified in the SAVE macro instruction to identify the entry point to which control is to be transferred.

RETURN Macro Instruction: The RETURN macro instruction is placed in called programs at the points where control is to be transferred back to the calling

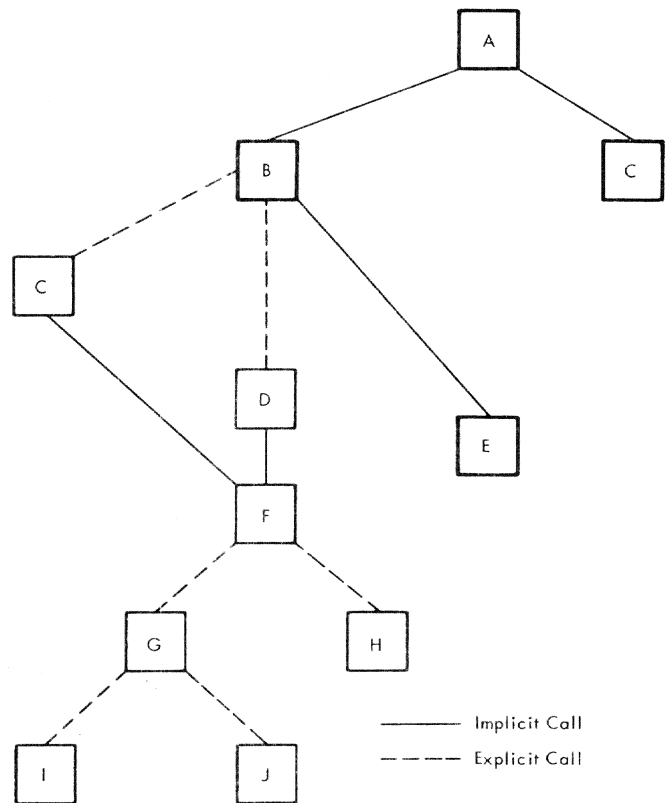


Figure 29. Program with Implicit and Explicit Linkages

program. Used in this way, RETURN is also a convenient way of restoring the registers of the calling program that were saved by the SAVE macro instruction.

The RETURN macro instruction is used in the first object program module of a program to indicate the end of the program's execution.

EXIT Macro Instruction: The EXIT macro instruction terminates a program and switches the task to command mode.

ABEND Macro Instruction: System programs use the ABEND macro instruction to terminate a task when an uncorrectable error occurs. The user may use ABEND as an error exit in his program.

A more detailed description of these macros is contained in *Assembler User Macro Instructions*.

Object Module Combination

If a program consists of one or more object program modules (see Figure 30), the user can:

- Statically combine two or more (or all) object program modules prior to program execution by using the linkage facilities of the linkage editor program, or
- Dynamically link the object program modules during execution of the program by making use of the automatic facilities of the system's dynamic loader.

Static Linking

Static linking, although optional, may be used for object program module build-up during program development. It may also be used to combine a number of short object modules together and thereby save on paging time during program execution. A similar saving of page space may be achieved by specifying the control section packing option for the dynamic loader during LOGON, and the user will probably find dynamic linking through the dynamic loader more convenient than using the linkage editor. He may, however, find the editing facilities of the linkage editor to be of value in program development. (*Example:* He may want to update object program module information without recompiling or reassembling.)

In cases where the linkage editor is used for object program module combination, the object program modules to be combined may be in one of the libraries included in the program library list, or they may be in other libraries identified in the control statements that are input to the linkage editor program. On the other hand, all object modules to be dynamically linked must be contained in libraries currently identified on the program library list.

When the linkage editor is to be invoked a number of times consecutively in one task, time may be saved by running in express mode. This will cause the language processor control to read the name of the next output module from SYSIN whenever it would normally have returned to the Command System for another command. The express mode is turned on by issuing a command

```
DEFAULT LPCXPRSS=Y
```

anywhere before the LNK command is issued. The LNK command is issued only once, for the first linkage edited object program, and all parameters are issued at the same time. The link editing parameters cannot be changed for subsequent object modules.

The express mode can be turned off by entering an underscore as first character in a line; this will cause an exit from the language processor control and a return to the command system. It is also possible to turn off the express mode by pressing the attention button any time during the link editing process and issuing a command

```
DEFAULT LPCXPRSS=,
```

Link editing can then be continued in a non-express mode by issuing a CO command.

If an invalid module name is entered when the language processor control expects a new object module name, the express mode will be turned off and a diagnostic message will be issued.

Conversational Linkage Editing: To initiate conversational linkage editor processing, the user issues these commands (refer to Figure 30):

- DDEF OR CDD command—Defines each library to be used during execution of the linkage editor program.
- LNK command—Loads and initiates linkage editor processing.

When LNK is entered, the necessary parameters must be included. Parameters not included will assume system default values, where applicable. The parameters available are:

- Name of the object module being created.
- Version identification of the module being created.
- An indication of whether the control statement data set is prestored or is to be made available via SYSIN. If that data set is not prestored, the user can also specify its starting line number, and the value by which the lines are to be incremented (values of 100 and 100 are assumed, if the starting line number and increment value are not specified).
- Name of the library in which the new object program module is to be stored. If this library is not specified, the object program is placed in the library that is currently at the top of the program library list.
- An indication of whether an internal symbol dictionary (ISD), or a program module dictionary (PMD) listing is wanted.

When these parameters have been provided, linkage editor processing of the control statement data set begins. The user can issue the control statements from his terminal in response to system prompting, or he can make the control statements available from a prestored data set. The user must observe the continuation conventions for linkage editor control statements; prompting and diagnostic facilities are available from the system to assist him in entering his control statements correctly.

To combine object program modules, the user specifies the appropriate INCLUDE control statements. Any external references in the input modules that were not satisfied (or excluded) by INCLUDE control statements, are satisfied at the end of the run by automatic call. Automatic call searches the program library list to satisfy the remaining external references. All required modules, except those in SYSLIB are placed in the output module. Linkage editor forms one PMD for the resulting object program module and, if the ISD option is specified, a chained ISD for all input object modules.

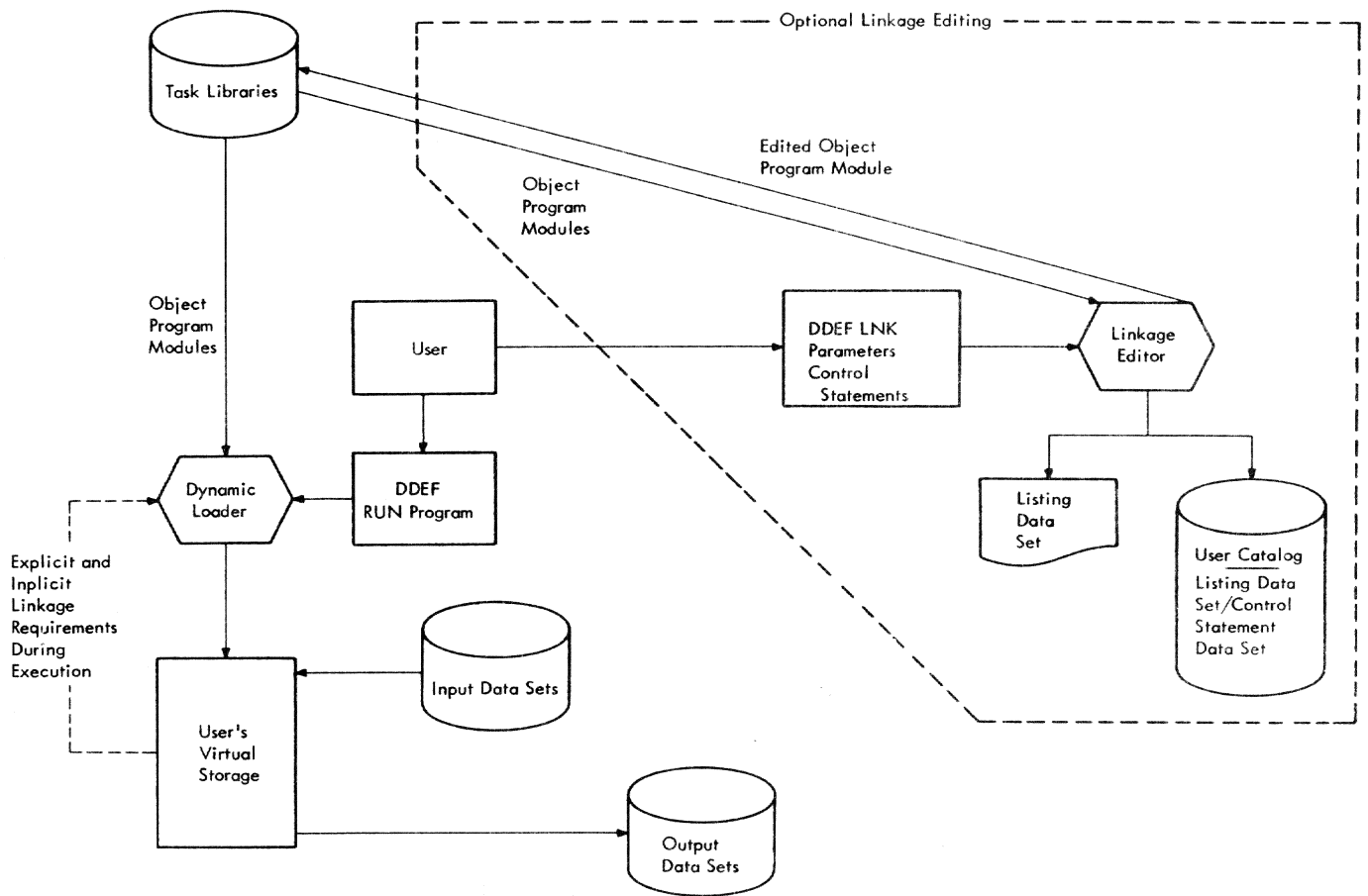


Figure 30. Object Program Module Combination

At the conclusion of linkage editing, the system stores the object program module, by its module name, in either a library specified in the parameters defined for the linkage editor run or, if no special library has been specified, the module is stored in the library currently at the top of the program library list. The original input module names are retained as auxiliary entry points.

Nonconversational Linkage Editing: The same commands are used to initiate nonconversational linkage editing. The user must be careful to store the DDEF commands, required to define the libraries, ahead of the LNK command (which must contain the desired parameters), in the SYSIN data set. However, the user has the option of making the control statements available either in the SYSIN data set, or as a prestored data set.

Dynamic Linking

Object program modules are linked dynamically during execution by the dynamic loader. To initiate program execution, the user issues these commands (see Figure 30):

- DDEF or CDD command—Defines each data set to be processed by the program.
- Either a LOAD command followed by CALL command (or an implicit CALL) or merely a CALL command—Loads and initiates execution of the specified object program module.

LOAD Command: When the user issues a LOAD command, the first object program module of the user's program is explicitly loaded in the user's virtual storage. The dynamic loader will allocate space in the user's virtual storage for the module named in the LOAD command. It then allocates space for all the object program modules implicitly called by that module, and all other modules implicitly called by them. Modules that are explicitly called are not known to the loader at this time.

NOTE: The LOAD command need not be issued prior to CALL or implicit CALL. The LOAD command, however, is useful for placing object modules in virtual storage to examine them prior to execution.

CALL Command: When the CALL command is issued, the first object program module and all implicit

modules are allocated space in the user's virtual storage, if they have not already been loaded. When execution begins, pages are loaded into main storage as needed.

If, during execution of the first object module, a reference is made to another module and the linkage is implicit, these events occur:

1. The linkage is completed so that control can be transferred.
2. The required pages of the new module are brought into main storage (from its library), relocated (if necessary), and then are given control.

Explicit linkage to another module is detected when an explicit CALL macro instruction is executed. Then, the dynamic loader action is similar to that of the LOAD command (it allocates space for the explicitly called object module, for all other modules it implicitly calls, and for all modules they implicitly call). However, when the allocation is completed, control is transferred to the explicitly called object program module.

LOAD Macro Instruction: The LOAD macro instruction allocates object modules during program execution when a module is loaded; it is not given control. This procedure is useful for inserting PCS commands and statements into modules before execution.

UNLOAD Command: The UNLOAD command deletes object program modules and all linked modules that will not be needed by other tasks.

DELETE Macro Instruction: The DELETE macro instruction is used during program execution to perform the same function as the UNLOAD command.

Program Control System

The user can employ program control commands and statements to perform one, or any combination, of these operations:

1. Request output of data fields and instruction locations within his program, specifying them by their symbolic names in the source language program or by their virtual storage addresses; he can also request output of machine register contents, specifying the registers by type and number.
2. Modifying variables within his program, specifying them by their symbolic names or by their virtual storage addresses, and specifying the new value for each variable in standard representation as an integer, floating-point number, or character string.
3. Specify, either symbolically or by virtual storage address, instruction locations within his program at which execution is to be stopped or started. When program execution has been stopped, the user may intervene, as described in items 1 and 2, before he directs resumption of program execution.
4. Specify, either symbolically or by virtual storage addresses, instruction locations within his program at which the actions described in items 1 and 2 are to be performed automatically.
5. Obtain the values of his program's variables at a specified point in its execution, with the variables automatically formatted according to their types.
6. Establish logical (true or false) conditions which allow or inhibit the actions described in items 3, 4 and 5.

The use of program control system facilities does not involve any restrictions on the user relative to

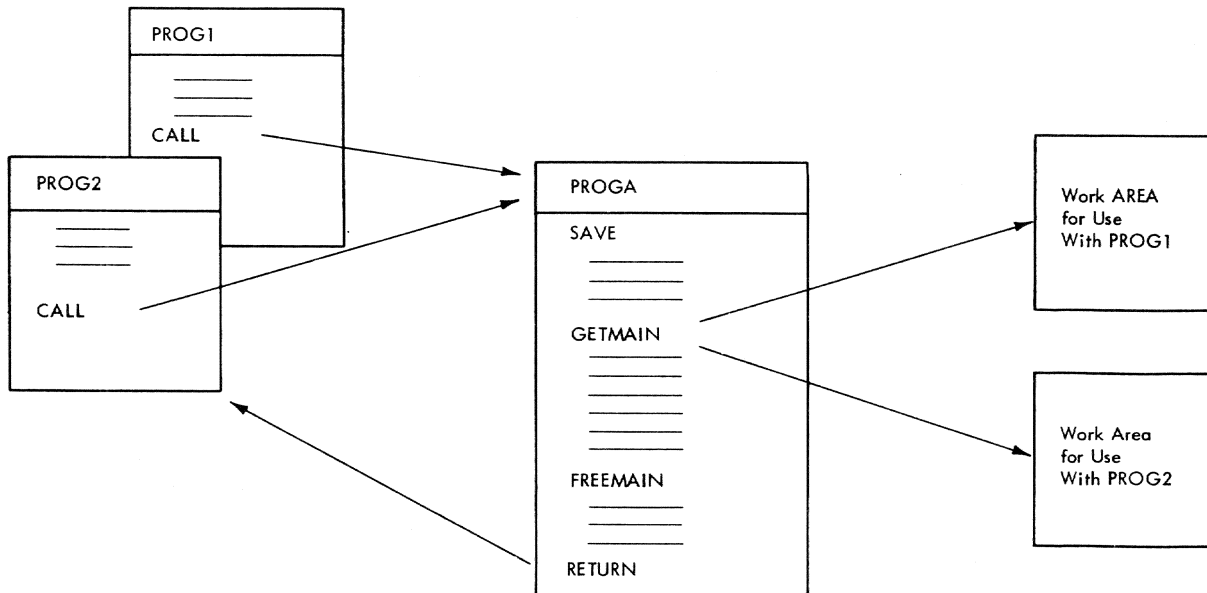


Figure 31. A Reenterable Routine that Requests its own Temporary Storage

source coding. In general, the use of program control facilities will greatly simplify the preparation of source programs, because many functions previously source-coded may conveniently be made available after compilation. Typical of these: the routines used for debugging programs, and the conventional I/O statements usually included in source programs.

Program Control Commands

The program control commands (`DISPLAY`, `DUMP`, and `SET`; `CALL`, `GO`, `BRANCH`, and `STOP`; `AT`; and `QUALIFY` and `REMOVE`) may be issued individually, or (except for `QUALIFY` and `REMOVE`) may be combined into program control statements.

The `DISPLAY` and `DUMP` commands allow the user to obtain the values of variables, the contents of machine registers, and the contents of specified virtual storage locations. These two commands differ in that the `DISPLAY` command delivers the designated information to `SYSOUT` (the terminal in conversational mode); the `DUMP` command delivers the designated information to the `PCSOUT` data set which must be subsequently transferred to an output medium (by the `PRINT` command). The `SET` command allows the user to change the contents of machine registers, or the values of variables within his program.

The `STOP` command interrupts execution of the user's program and outputs the instruction location at which the interruption was honored. Thus, except for this output information, the `STOP` command, used alone, is equivalent to the operation of the `ATTENTION` button at the user's terminal. The `STOP` command is more useful when included in a statement that designates the instruction locations at which execution is to be interrupted.

The `CALL` command, used after a `LOAD` command, initiates execution of the loaded program, either at its entry point or any other specified point. The `CALL`, `GO`, and `BRANCH` commands may also be issued after a `STOP` command to perform any of the following:

- Resume program execution from the point of interruption (`GO`).
- Resume program execution at a point other than the point of interruption in the current program (`BRANCH`).
- Load and initiate execution of another program (`CALL`).

The `AT` command, issued individually, does not interrupt program execution; it simply informs the user when execution of his program has reached the instruction locations designated in the command.

When the `AT` command is included in a program control statement, it designates the instruction locations at which the actions specified in the statement are to be performed. Program control statements that include

one or more `AT` commands are dynamic statements.

When an `AT` command is accepted by the system, it is assigned a number to identify it uniquely, and that number is printed at the terminal. This is done whether the `AT` command is individually issued, or is the first of a string in a statement. When an `AT` command subsequently becomes effective, the standard output presented to the user includes the `AT` command's identification number.

The `QUALIFY` command allows the user to designate, before he refers to a group of internal or external symbols, the program in which these symbols are defined; he may, thereafter, refer to these symbols without explicitly qualifying them by program name. If the user does not issue the `QUALIFY` command, he must prefix each symbol with the program name. If the user is uncertain of his qualification, he may issue the command: "`DISPLAY` `.(0, 1)`". `PCS` will supply the symbol last named in a `QUALIFY` command and display one byte. If no `QUALIFY` command has been issued during the task, `L'0` is the assumed qualification.

The `REMOVE` command enables the user to delete previously issued dynamic statements (those which include one or more `AT` commands), thereby terminating their subsequent execution.

Program Control Statements

The program control commands just described (except `QUALIFY` and `REMOVE`) can be combined into program control statements, either to request immediate execution of several `PCS` commands with one entry, or to request deferred execution of one or more `PCS` commands. Deferred execution of the actions specified in any statement is achieved by including an `AT` command in the statement. The `AT` command makes it a dynamic statement, in the sense that its execution is dependent upon arrival at the instruction locations designated in the `AT` command.

Execution of a program control statement, either immediate or dynamic, can also be made conditional by inclusion of an `IF` command. The `IF` command defines a logical expression (two-valued, or true-false) that must be true to allow execution of the statement's actions. When a dynamic statement includes an `IF` command, the `IF` command is evaluated only when control arrives at the instruction locations designated in the `AT` command.

This is the general format of a program control statement

```
(AT) . . . ; (IF) ; (DISPLAY) . . . ; (DUMP) . . . ; (SET) . . . ; (BRANCH)
                                     (STOP)
```

The rules for the inclusion of program control commands in program control statements are:

`AT`: None, one, or more than one `AT` command may be included in a statement. If included, the `AT` commands must be the first entered in the statement.

IF: The **IF** command must be entered after any **AT** commands in the same statement. Multiple **IF** commands may be entered in a single statement.

DISPLAY: None, one, or more than one **DISPLAY** command may be included in a statement. If included, they must follow any **AT** commands and/or the **IF** command entered in the same statement. The **DISPLAY** command is performed (together with any **DUMP** command in the same statement) before any other action commands specified in that statement.

DUMP: None, one, or more than one **DUMP** command may be included in a statement. If included, they must follow any **AT** commands and/or the **IF** command, if present. The **DUMP** commands may be entered before or after other action commands (except **BRANCH** or **STOP**) in the statement. **SET** commands, if present in a statement, are performed after any **DISPLAY** and **DUMP** commands in the statement, but before **BRANCH** or **STOP**.
BRANCH: Only one **BRANCH** command may be entered in a statement; it must be the last command or entry in the statement. If the **BRANCH** command is included in a statement, the **STOP** command may not be included. If other action commands are included in the same statement, they are performed before the **BRANCH** command is executed.

SET: The **SET** command enables the user to change the contents of a specified data location to a new value. When the command becomes effective, the new value of the data location is produced in the same format that would be produced if the name of the data location had appeared in a **DISPLAY** command. The output is produced from the changed field itself and reflects the results of all conversions and expression evaluation.

STOP: Only one **STOP** command may be entered in a statement. If included, it must be entered after any **AT** commands and/or the **IF** command in the same statement. If the **STOP** command is included in a statement, the **BRANCH** command may not be included. If other action commands are included in the same statement, they are performed before the **STOP** command is executed.

PCS and the Internal Symbol Dictionary

When the user selects the **ISD** option in the **ASM** parameters, the assembler includes the internal symbol dictionary as part of the object module. The **ISD** contains the length and type attributes and the location of each symbol that appears in the "name" field of a statement in the source program (note exceptions below).

PCS uses the information in the **ISD** to determine the location of an instruction or data area in virtual storage, to select the proper conversion and format when a variable is displayed or dumped, and to determine

the method of arithmetic to be used in evaluating a **SET** or **IF** expression.

PCS recognizes the following type attributes:

- Immediate values (absolute **EQU** statements)
- Instructions
- Character
- Integer (halfword and fullword)
- Floating point (single- and double-precision)
- Address constants
- Hexadecimal
- Relocatable **EQU** statements
- Names on **LTORG** statements

All other type attributes are treated as hexadecimal data. In addition, if the user designates, in his source program, a length attribute for a type having an implied length (i.e., **HL2**), the type attribute for the symbol is recorded in the **ISD** as hexadecimal. The reason for this is that the assembler does not force boundary alignment when a length attribute is specified. Since the data area, therefore, may be unaligned, it cannot be considered as having the characteristics that the type attribute implies.

When an offset is specified with an internal symbol, the type is considered hexadecimal, and the length, unless designated with the offset, is treated as one byte.

The assembler statements listed below are not included in the **ISD**; therefore they may not be referred to in **PCS** statements.

- Complex **EQU** statements
- Local and global variable symbols
- Sequence symbols
- Names on macro instructions that are not carried forward in the expansion.

Symbols in **DSECTS**, although recorded in the **ISD**, should not be referred to in **PCS** statements.

If **PCS** statements are to refer to internal symbols, the original object module must have included an **ISD**.

When object modules are link-edited and the **ISD** option is selected, the linkage editor automatically retains each module's **ISD**. In addition, a new **ISD** is formed, allowing **PCS** to trace back from the new composite object module to each original control section.

Using PCS Without an ISD

When an **ISD** is not selected at assembly time, the user is restricted to the use of external symbols in his program control statements. **PCS** commands can refer to lines in the source program by using the control section name with a hexadecimal offset equal to the location shown on the object listing.

If **PCS** statements are to refer to internal symbols, the original object module must have included an **ISD**.

No conversion or formatting is done for variables that are referred to by external symbols. The type is considered to be hexadecimal, and, unless an explicit length is specified, one byte is assumed as the length.

Evaluating Expressions

When two operands are joined by an operator to form an expression, the length and type attributes of both are used to determine the method of arithmetic to be used in performing the operation. Integer, floating-point, or logical arithmetic is selected. However, logical (i.e., address) arithmetic is performed only when requested by the user in response to the system's prompting.

When it is not possible to determine the arithmetic to be used from the type and length of the operands, the conversational user is prompted to supply the method. In a nonconversational task, since the expression cannot be evaluated, the PCS statement is rejected.

References to variables that are not aligned on the proper boundary result in a warning diagnostic. However, the operation will be successfully performed without a specification interrupt. PCS automatically provides intermediate moves to proper word boundaries.

Table 14 illustrates the possible combinations of operands for arithmetic and relational operations. Logical operators are not included since they are always performed in a general register and must be one, two, or four bytes in length.

Program interrupts can occur any time an expression in a PCS statement must be evaluated. These interrupts are recognized as being caused by a PCS statement and not by the user's object program. Five such interrupts can occur:

1. Fixed-point overflow exception
2. Fixed-point divide exception
3. Exponent overflow exception
4. Exponent underflow exception
5. Floating-point divide exception

When any of these interrupts occurs, a diagnostic is issued and the action requested in the PCS statement is not performed. These interrupts are not recognized by the user's program interrupt routine if one has been specified.

Floating-Point Constant Conversion

The assembler and PCS use different methods to convert floating-point constants to their internal binary values. As a result, the two processors may develop two slightly different internal values for the same floating-point number. Thus, although a single-precision floating-point number gives up to seven decimal

places of precision, the user should assume only six decimal places of precision between the two processors. With double-precision numbers, a maximum of sixteen decimal places should be assumed instead of seventeen.

This difference in conversion techniques should also be kept in mind when using PCS IF and SET commands to debug an assembler language program. For example, if an IF command were used to test the value of an object-module variable which was initialized with an assembled floating-point constant, equality might not occur because different internal values were obtained by the two processors for the floating-point number.

To avoid the possibility of such a problem, the user should take into consideration the allowed variation between the two numbers being tested. One method to use when testing two numbers for equality is to take the absolute value of the difference against the allowed variation. (A similar problem might develop when a floating-point variable that is to be used for comparison by the object program is initialized using a floating-point number in a SET command.)

If the programmer has access to an assembly that indicates the internal value to which a floating-point number has been converted by the assembler, the problems resulting from different conversion techniques may be avoided by using the hexadecimal equivalent of the internal value in the IF or SET command.

PCS Diagnostics

PCS examines each statement for validity and issues diagnostics alerting the user to errors.

Diagnostics usually are issued immediately upon receiving the command. In conversational mode, the user can reenter the statement with the necessary correction made. Nonconversationally, the user has no chance to correct errors; a diagnostic is printed on SYSOUT and the PCS statement is simply ignored.

Certain errors are not detected until execution has begun. These errors are the result of an action the user has requested in a dynamic PCS statement (i.e., one containing an AT command). In a conversational task, after the diagnostic is issued, the terminal is placed in command mode. The user can then REMOVE the erroneous statement, reenter it correctly if he desires, and continue execution with a GO. If he wishes to perform the corrected statement immediately, he must use the operand of the AT statement as the operand of the BRANCH.

In a nonconversational task, the diagnostic is written on the SYSOUT data set and the next command is read from SYSIN. This may result in prematurely terminating program execution.

Miscellaneous Considerations

CALL, GO, and BRANCH Commands

When the CALL command specifies an external symbol as an operand, the object module defining that symbol is automatically loaded if it has not been previously loaded. If, however, there is a serious error in loading the module, the CALL command is rejected. Serious errors are caused by level 2 errors when the module was assembled, as described in Appendix A, under "Assembler Diagnostic Action"; or dynamic loader errors as described in Appendix C, under "Recovering from Errors when Dynamically Loading."

If the error condition does not preclude execution of the object module that was loaded, the CALL command may be reissued to initiate execution. The module name must be repeated on the second CALL.

If the user anticipates that such errors will occur, he should first issue a LOAD command naming the module, followed by a CALL with operand. This method ensures that program execution will always be initiated. This is most important to the nonconversational user, since it is not always possible to anticipate loading errors. The conversational user may use the LOAD and CALL procedure, or a CALL followed by a duplicate CALL command if the first CALL is rejected.

Table 14. Possible Combinations of Operands for Arithmetic and Relational Operations

OPERAND 1 OPERAND 2	OPERAND 1		E OR SINGLE- PRECISION REGISTER	D OR DOUBLE- PRECISION REGISTER	OTHER TYPES LENGTH = 1	OTHER TYPES LENGTH = 2	OTHER TYPES LENGTH = 4 OR GENERAL REGISTER	OTHER TYPES LENGTH = 8	OTHER TYPES LENGTH OTHER THAN 1, 2, 4, OR 8 BYTES
	H	F							
H	I	I	F703	F048	I	I	I	F048	F048
F	I	I	F705	F049	I	I	I	F049	F048
E or Single-Precision Register	F703	F705	E	D	F703	F703	E	D	F048
D or Double-Precision Register	F048	F049	D	D	F048	F048	D	D	F048
Other Types Length = 1	I	I	F703	F048	F703	F703	F703	F048	F048
Other Types Length = 2	I	I	F703	F048	F703	F703	F703	F048	F048
Other Types Length = 4 or General Register	I	I	E	D	F703	F703	F705	F049	F048
Other Types Length = 8	F048	F049	D	D	F048	F048	F049	a	F048
Other Types Length Other Than 1, 2, 4 or 8	F048	F048	F048	F048	F048	F048	F048	F048	b

H = halfword integer

F = fullword integer

I = integer arithmetic

E = single-precision, floating-point arithmetic

D = double-precision, floating-point arithmetic

F048 = operation cannot be performed because operands are incompatible

F049 = only floating-point arithmetic is possible

F703 = user is prompted to select integer or logical arithmetic

F705 = user is prompted to select integer, logical, or floating-point arithmetic

a = if operation is relational, the user is prompted to select logical or floating-point arithmetic; if the operation is not relational, diagnostic F048 is issued

b = if operation is relational and the two operands have the same length, a logical compare is made; if not relational or if the lengths are unequal, diagnostic F048 is issued

AT Command

The AT command should only refer to instructions in the user's own program. AT should not be used in a label-processing or end-of-volume routine.

For each operand in an AT command, the instruction at that location is replaced by an SVC causing PCS to be activated when the SVC is executed. For this reason, the user should not designate as an operand in an AT command any instruction location that is the subject of an Execute (EX) instruction, or any instruction residing in a public control section.

The instruction replaced by the SVC is moved to an area of virtual storage remote from the user's program and is executed after all PCS actions have been performed. It will, in fact, never be executed if a CALL is issued that specifies a different restart point.

If a program interrupt should occur when this instruction is executed and a user's interrupt-handling routine has not been specified, a diagnostic message is issued. Since the interrupt is recognized as being caused by an instruction in the user's object program, the diagnostic is issued by the system's program interrupt routine. The control section name and displacement in the message are not shown in this case, since the instruction does not reside in a user's CSECT. If the user suspects that this situation has occurred, he can remove the PCS statement containing the appropriate AT operand and enter a CALL to re-execute the instruction(s). An interrupt at this time isolates the invalid instruction.

Operational Considerations

The user cannot make full use of the program control facilities until he has loaded his program; e.g., with a LOAD command. After loading his program, the user can initiate investigatory actions, e.g., he may DISPLAY the contents of machine registers or of locations in his virtual storage, or he may issue AT or SET commands.

Even after his program is loaded, the user's utilization of program control facilities will be restricted, if he failed to request an internal symbol dictionary (ISD) when his program was assembled or compiled. Lacking the ISD for a program, the user may refer only to external symbols in his commands; with the ISD, he is free to refer, also, to internal symbols within the program.

Once the user has loaded, but not initiated execution of his program, he may input program control commands and statements that refer to his program, and then initiate execution. If he is operating in conversational mode, he can interrupt execution of his program by pressing the ATTENTION button at his terminal; then he may input additional commands and statements or cancel previous statements.

The user can then resume program execution by entering the GO command. Alternatively, he can enter dynamic statements prior to program initiation, and specify control points at which execution is to be stopped. At these points he may enter data, change program sequence, etc.

When execution of the program is completed, the user may want to enter more commands. *Example:* restart execution of the program from a specified entry point by use of the GO command.

Program control operations may be continued on an object program until the program is unloaded by an UNLOAD command (or, in the case of an assembler-written program, by a DELETE macro instruction). When a program referred to in a dynamic PCS statement is unloaded, all dynamic statements are deleted. The user can reenter any dynamic PCS statements that refer to programs that are still loaded, if he wants to reinstate these statements.

Conversational Mode

In the conversational mode, PCS commands received from the user are checked for valid syntax; the symbols he refers to are checked against the object program's external and internal symbol dictionaries. Syntax errors and references to undefined symbols are reported to the user at his terminal together with appropriate messages to direct his corrective actions. The user is thus assured of entering only a valid set of program control commands and statements.

All output is produced at the user's terminal, except for the output developed by a DUMP command. *Example:* A dynamic statement that calls for the interruption of program execution causes output at the user's terminal when the statement is executed, to inform the user of the action taken and its location within his program.

Nonconversational Mode

Program control facilities may also be used in nonconversational mode, but with these differences:

1. Program control commands containing errors produce diagnostic messages that are sent to the task's SYSOUT data set; the commands are ignored.
2. No prompting is performed; incompletely entered commands, which would cause the user to be prompted in conversational mode, are ignored.
3. Program control output is sent to the nonconversational tasks' SYSOUT data set, and may be interspersed with other data that appears there.
4. After object program execution is interrupted by a STOP command (alone, or in a statement), the next command is taken from the nonconversational task's SYSIN data set.

Appendix C. Programming Considerations

This appendix describes procedures that the TSS assembler language programmer should follow in the preparation and execution of his programs. The initial sections in this appendix describe concepts basic to the writing of any assembler language program; included are discussions of writing programs in TSS assembler language, creation of unnamed control sections, pooling of literals, system macro instruction usage, floating-point computations, references to module names of link-edited modules, use of the EXIT and PAUSE macro instructions, assembler language linkage conventions, shared code considerations, efficient use of virtual storage, control section rejection and linking control sections, and recovering from errors when dynamically loading.

Next, a discussion is given of library management, including a description of the libraries available to the programmer and the use of the program library list.

The final section of this appendix describes those TSS naming conventions of which the user should be aware in order to avoid creating names that conflict with names reserved for system use.

Users writing privileged system programs should refer to the *System Programmer's Guide* for proper programming procedures.

Writing Programs in TSS

While not all programs need be written in accordance with the guidelines given here, users of TSS will find it easier to use the assembler if these guidelines are followed. More detailed information concerning assembler language programming is given later in this Appendix, and in Appendix D, "Interrupt Considerations."

The programming procedures described in this section use two programs for demonstration purposes. The first will be referred to as PGM. The name PGM is assigned as the module name when the ASM parameters are entered. Consistent with TSS terminology, the output of an assembly will be referred to as a "module," rather than the more general term "program."

The assembler instructions for PGM will be shown completely. It will be seen that PGM initializes two variables, then calls a second module, SUB. The instructions for SUB will be shown only in enough detail to make clear the details of the linkage between PGM and SUB.

The first assembler statement normally written will be a PSECT statement, as, for example:

```
PGMP    PSECT
```

where PGMP is the label of the PGM PSECT. The name of the PSECT may not be identical to the module name. (Here, the P is affixed to the module name PGM as a convenient notation technique.)

At this point it is pertinent to briefly discuss TSS naming conventions. A more detailed discussion is given later in this appendix. The user should not use names in his program that start with the following three characters: SYS, CHC, or CHD.

Following the PSECT statement, an ENTRY statement is given identifying the point in PGM at which execution begins. In PGM, the name of this entry point is PGME. The entry point name may not duplicate the module name or PSECT name. (The manner in which PGME is used will be shown later.) Execution at PGME is initiated by use of the CALL command or by an implicit CALL, as:

```
CALL    PGME
```

(The CALL command is described in detail in the examples contained in this publication, as well as various appendixes, and *Command System User's Guide*.)

Following the ENTRY statement are two statements reserving a 19 word save area:

```
PGMP    PSECT
        ENTRY    PGME
        DC      F'76'
        DC      18F'0'
```

This save area is required by many of the system macro instructions (such as GET, PUT, CALL, SAVE, and RETURN). The DC F'76' statement gives the number of bytes in the save area (4 x 19); the DC 18F'0' statement sets the last 18 words of the 19 word save area to 0. When the contents of any word in the save area is altered, the new contents will, in general, not be 0. Thus, presetting each word to 0 allows one to determine if a word has been altered or not. This would not be possible if the statement DS 18F had been used, for example, as the contents of a storage area defined with a DS is not predictable.

The next statements to be placed in the PSECT are those reserving storage for items whose values may be changed by the program. This practice is required for reenterable programming, and is a convenient practice for all types of programs, as described in the section of this appendix discussing performance considerations. Assume that module PGM will be computing a new value for two words, to be referred to as ALPHA and BETA:

PGMP	PSECT ENTRY DC DC	PGME F'76' 18F'0'
ALPHA	DS	F
BETA	DS	F

BETA	DS	F
SUBEVR	ADCON	IMPLICIT,EP=SUBE
	.	
	.	
AALPHA	DC DC	A(ALPHA) A(BETA)

As stated earlier, PGM will make use of a subroutine SUB. The entry point to SUB is SUBE. The CALL, SAVE, RETURN group of system macro instructions will be used to accomplish the linkage to SUBE, and from SUB back to PGM. A necessary part of a CALL on SUBE is a specification in PGM of the entry name of module to be called. The normal way of specifying that a program will be called is by use of the ADCON macro instruction. The implicit form of the ADCON macro instruction will be used here:

PGMP	PSECT ENTRY DC DC	PGME F'76' 18F'0'
ALPHA	DS	F
BETA	DS	F
SUBEVR	ADCON	IMPLICIT,EP=SUBE
SUBEVR	EQU	*-12
	DC DC	V(SUBE) R(SUBE)

The ADCON macro instruction defines V- and R-type address constants for a later CALL to entry point SUBE, just as a program wishing to CALL module PGM at entry point PGME would write, for definition of the V- and R-type address constants:

```
PGMEVR ADCON IMPLICIT,EP=PGME
```

In addition to items varying at object time and V- and R-type address constants, all other types of address constants should be placed in the PSECT. In module PGM, assume the addresses of ALPHA and BETA are required:

PGMP	PSECT ENTRY DC DC	PGME F'76' 18F'0'
ALPHA	DS	F

That part of PGM that actually performs computations—the executable portion of the module—will now be written. The first statement in this portion of the module will be a CSECT statement. This CSECT will be assigned the attribute READONLY, as a CSECT should not contain information that will be altered at object time.

PGMP	PSECT ENTRY	PGME
	.	
	.	
PGMC	CSECT	READONLY

The label on the CSECT statement was chosen to be the module name PGM with a C attached, a convenient notation technique. The CSECT name (PGMC), the PSECT name (PGMP), the entry name (PGME), and the module name (PGM) must all be different, as all are external symbols and external symbols may not be duplicated in a module.

When PGM is to be executed, the CALL command is used to transfer control to the entry point of PGM. The entry point is PGME, as noted in the ENTRY statement in the PSECT. PGME will be defined at the beginning of the CSECT. The question of base register usage should also be considered. When PGME is entered, general register 15 contains the address of PGME. This information should be furnished the assembler by a USING statement:

PGMP	PSECT ENTRY	PGME
	.	
	.	
	.	
PGMC	CSECT USING	READONLY PGME, 15
PGME	SAVE STM	(14, 12) 14, 12, 12(13)

This statement is generated by the SAVE macro instruction, and will store general registers 14, 15 and 0 through 12 in the calling program's save area.

Note the use of the `SAVE` macro instruction at the entry point `PGME` above. It is a recommended convention to use the `SAVE` as shown to save the contents of the registers when entered from the `CALL` command or as the result of a `CALL` from another program. The `SAVE` allows `PGM` to restore registers to their value when `PGME` was entered with the `RETURN` macro, as shown later. (Use of `RETURN` is also a recommended convention.)

Following the `SAVE` of general registers, a sequence of five instructions will then be given:

```

PGMP      PSECT
          .
          .
          .
PGMC      CSECT      READONLY
          USING      PGME, 15
PGME      SAVE      (14, 12)
          L          14, 72(0, 13)
                          Loads register 14 with the R-
                          value of PGME, which in this
                          case is the address of the PGM
                          PSECT, PGMP. The calling
                          program placed the R-value of
                          PGME in the 19th word of its
                          save area prior to calling PGME.
          ST          14, 8(0, 13)
                          The address of the PGM save
                          area is placed in the third word
                          of the PGM save area. This save
                          establishes the "forward pointer"
                          in the calling program's PSECT.
          ST          13, 4(0, 14)
                          The address of the calling pro-
                          gram's save area is saved in the
                          second word of the PGM save
                          area, PGMP+4. This save estab-
                          lishes the "backward pointer."
          LR          13, 14
                          Register 13 now contains the ad-
                          dress of the PGM save area (by
                          convention, its PSECT) as it will
                          throughout execution of PGM.
          USING      PGMP, 13
                          Inform the assembler that any
                          items referred to in PGMP
                          should use register 13 as the
                          base register.

```

The remainder of the `PGM` `CSECT` will now be written. In this example, `PGM` will initialize the two variables `ALPHA` and `BETA` to 12, then execute a `CALL` on subroutine `SUB`, supplying `SUB` with the address of a parameter list containing address constants for the two parameters required by `SUB`: `ALPHA` and `BETA`.

```

PGMP      PSECT
          .
          .
          .
PGME      SAVE      (14, 12)
          .
          .
          .
          USING      PGMP, 13
          L          0,F12
                          Set ALPHA to 12.
          ST          0,ALPHA
                          Register 0 is a convenient regis-
                          ter to use for such temporary
                          usage, as it is unsuitable for re-
                          taining the same value over
                          large parts of a program. Many
                          macro instructions destroy regis-
                          ter 0 contents. Note that F12 is
                          defined below in the CSECT.
                          This is not in conflict with ear-
                          lier suggestions for items to be
                          placed in a PSECT, as F12 will
                          not be altered by PGM, and is,
                          of course, not an address con-
                          stant.
          L          0,=F'12'
                          This demonstrates another means
                          of setting a variable to 12. The
                          assembler will generate a literal
                          constant of 12, and place it in
                          the CSECT, as all non-adcon
                          literals are placed in the first
                          defined CSECT unless a LTORG
                          is declared.
          ST          0,BETA
          LA          15,SUBEVR
          CALL      (15),MF=(E,AALPHA)
                          The following five instructions
                          are generated by the CALL
                          macro instruction:
          LA          1,AALPHA
                          Load register 1 with the address
                          of the parameter list.
          L          14, 16(0, 15)
                          Load register 14 with the R-
                          value of the program to be
                          called.
          ST          14, 72(0, 13)
                          Store the R-value in the 19th
                          word of the save area to be sup-
                          plied to the called program.
          L          15, 12(0, 15)
                          Load register 15 with the V-
                          value (the entry point) of the
                          program to be called.

```

BASR 14, 15
 Branch to the location in register 15, setting register 14 to the address of the first byte following the BASR. The called module will return to the address in register 14.

Note that the LA into register 15, required for this form of the CALL macro instruction, will destroy any previous contents of register 15. When PGME was entered, the USING PGME, 15 statement established a base register for the PGM CSECT. If a CALL or other use of 15 is made, as in this example, another register should be used. General register 12 is a good choice, as no system macro instructions (such as CALL) require that register 12 be altered. The code following PGME might then be:

```

PGME      USING      PGME, 15
          SAVE      (14, 12)
          L         14, 72(0, 13)
          ST        14, 8(0, 13)
          ST        13, 4(0, 14)
          LR        13, 14
          USING     PGMP, 13

          LR        12, 15
          To load register 12 with the address of PGME.

          DROP     15
          This instruction is required prior to the following USING, or the assembler would continue to use register 15 as the PGME base register.

          USING     PGME, 12
          To inform the assembler that register 12 is now the base register for PGME.
          .
          .
          LA        15, SUBEVR
          CALL      (15), MF=(E, AALPHA)
          .
          .
  
```

Many forms of the CALL macro might have been used to call SUBE. The form shown above requires that the V- and R-type address constants be prepared by the programmer; another form of the CALL would cause the assembler to generate these two address constants and place them in the PGM PSECT.

PGM is now completed, and will use the usual sequence of statements to return control to the calling program:

```

L         13, 4(0, 13)
Load register 13 with the address of the calling program's save area.

RETURN    (14, 12)
Restore the remaining registers to the values they contained when PGM was called.

LM        14, 12, 12(13)
BR        14
These instructions are generated by the RETURN macro instruction, and loads registers 14, 15, and 0 through 12 from the save area of the calling program, and then returns control to the calling program.

F12      DC        F'12'
Required above.

END      Notes the end of this assembly.
  
```

The assembler instructions for the entire PGM module are repeated below.

```

PGMP      PSECT     Declare the program PSECT.
          ENTRY     PGME
Identify the program entry point.

          DC        F'76'
Reserve a 19-word save area.

          DC        18F'0'

ALPHA     DS        F
Reserve space for items to be altered in program execution.

BETA      DS        F

SUBEVR    ADCON     IMPLICIT, EP=SUBE
Define V- and R-type adcons for the CALL of SUBE.

AALPHA    DC        A(ALPHA)
          DC        A(BETA)
Address constants of parameters used by SUBE.

PGMC      CSECT     READONLY
Declare the program CSECT.

          USING     PGME, 15
The calling program established register 15.

PGME      SAVE      (14, 12)
Save the contents of registers.

          L         14, 72(0, 13)
Establish the backward and forward chains.

          ST        14, 8(0, 13)
          ST        13, 4(0, 14)
          LR        13, 14
Load PSECT base register and inform the assembler.
  
```

```

USING PGMP, 13
LR 12, 15
Establish base register for
PGME and inform the assembler.

DROP 15
USING PGME, 12
L 0,=F'12'
Initialize ALPHA and BETA to
12.

ST 0,ALPHA
L 0,=F'12'
ST 0,BETA
LA 15,SUBEVR
Call SUBE, passing the address
of the parameter list.

CALL (15),MF=(E,AALPHA)
L 13, 4(0, 13)
Restore the address of the calling
program's save area.

RETURN (14, 12)
Return to the calling program.

F12 DC F'12'
END

```

```

LR 13, 14
USING SUBP, 13
LR 12, 15
DROP 15
USING SUBE, 12

```

Module SUB will now move the values of ALPHA and BETA from the calling program into SUB. Note that: (1) SUB can obtain the values of ALPHA and BETA, as the CALL of SUBE by PGM placed the location of address constants pointing to ALPHA and BETA in general register 1; and (2) SUB should store the values obtained in the SUB PSECT, SUBP, in accordance with the practice of storing items that vary during execution in a PSECT. The assembler instructions might be:

```

SUBP PSECT ENTRY SUBE
.
.
.
VAR1 DS F
VAR2 DS F
ALPHA and BETA from PGM
will be stored here.
.
.
.

```

Module SUB, called by PGM at the SUBE entry point, will now be shown. First, the SUB PSECT.

```

SUBP PSECT ENTRY SUBE
DC F'76'
DC 18F'0'
.
.
.
SUBC CSECT USING READONLY SUBE, 15
SUBE SAVE (14, 12)
.
.
.
DROP 15
USING SUBE, 12
LM 6, 7, 0(1)
Load the address of ALPHA
into register 6, and the address
of BETA into register 7.
L 0, 0(0, 6)
Store ALPHA in VAR1.
ST 0, VAR1
L 0, 0(0, 7)
Store BETA in VAR2.
ST 0, VAR2
.
.
.
SUBC CSECT USING READONLY SUBE, 15
SUBE SAVE (14, 12)
L 14, 72(0, 13)
ST 14, 8(0, 13)
ST 13, 4(0, 14)

```

Following whatever other instructions might be executed, SUB returns to PGM. When PGM is reentered fol-

lowing the CALL to SUB, all general registers will contain the same values as when SUBE was called.

```

L          13, 4(0, 13)
RETURN    (14, 12)
.
.
END

```

Creation of Unnamed Control Sections

Certain statements within the TSS assembler language require that a control section be defined when they are encountered because they assume that a location counter value is available. If the programmer has not declared a control section, the assembler defines an unnamed CSECT which will be the first control section in the object module produced by the assembler. This assembler action does not normally need to concern the programmer, except when

- (1) statements generated in this control section will require a base register which has not been provided, or when
- (2) the programmer expects to call the module by its name.

The following statements will cause the assembler to produce an unnamed CSECT if necessary:

- all machine operation instructions
- all system or user macro instructions
- CCW
- CNOP
- CXD
- DC, DS, and ORG
- EQU
- ENTRY
- USING and DROP
- LTORG
- END

If a module will be called by name and no symbol is specified on the END statement, then the entry point for execution of the module will be the first byte of the first CSECT (if one exists). If the assembler has defined an unnamed CSECT for the reasons above, the unnamed CSECT is the assumed execution entry point (standard entry point) for calls of the module by name, even though the programmer may have defined a named CSECT later in the program. This condition may prevent proper execution of the program. Further, if the unnamed CSECT has no text, that is, its length is zero, the address associated with the CSECT is location 0.

The programmer should define a control section before coding any of the statements mentioned to avoid any problems caused by an assembler-produced unnamed control section. A suggested practice is to

define all control sections to be used with CSECT, PSECT, COM, or DSECT statements before coding anything else except comments. For example, the following sequence of statements guarantees that the first two control sections in the program will be a PSECT named PS and a CSECT named CS. The assembler will build the control sections from subsequent statements.

```

PS      PSECT
        DC          F'76',18A(0)      define a save area
CS      CSECT
        .
        .
PS      PSECT                          present the program
        .                               in this and following
        .                               statements
        .
        END

```

Pooling of Literals

When LTORGs are included in a program, non-adcon literals are pooled at the first LTORG following their occurrence. Any non-adcon literals not pooled by the end of the program are pooled at the end of the first CSECT. When no LTORG is present, all non-adcon literals are pooled at the end of the first CSECT. When a PSECT is present in the program, regardless of whether LTORGs are present, all adcon literals are pooled at the end of the first PSECT. If there is no PSECT in the program, adcon literals follow the pooling rules used for non-adcon literals. Finally, if a CSECT is not present and a PSECT is present, all literals are pooled as LTORGs are encountered or at the end of the first PSECT.

System Macro Instruction Usage

There are certain conditions to be met and certain conventions to be observed when using system macro instructions. The contents of registers 0, 1, 14, and 15 may be destroyed when system macro instructions are used. Some system macro instructions generate literals for which base registers must be provided by the user. With two exceptions, whenever a macro instruction generates a control section statement, that control section is a continuation of one previously declared by the source program, and the control section in effect at macro call time is continued before the macro generation is completed. The two exceptions are DCBD and ADCOND, which cause a unique DSECT to be generated, and this control section is in effect when macro generation is completed. A few macro instructions require register 13 to be preset to the address of a save area; CALL, SAVE, and RETURN are examples of this type of macro instruction. The publications *Assembler User Macro Instructions* and *System Programmer's Guide* contain more detailed discussions of these topics.

Floating-Point Computations

It must be kept in mind that, unlike integer arithmetic, floating-point computations are not in general exact, due to roundoff. This may cause the low-order bits of a result to be different from the expected value. This is true of PCS and FORTRAN programs as well as assembler language programs. Thus, the user should be particularly careful when comparing the results of an assembler language floating-point computation with that from a PCS computation, etc.

The order in which programs perform floating-point computations may be important. For PCS, this order is described in the publication *Command System User's Guide*. For FORTRAN programs, the object listings must be inspected to determine the order of computation.

References to Module Names of Link-Edited Modules

When modules are link-edited, the resultant module is assigned the name specified in the LNK parameters. The module names for those modules included in the link edit are retained as auxiliary entry points in the list of external symbols associated with the link-edited module.

The module names of link-edited modules are retained in the ISD of the resultant module, if an ISD was requested for the resultant module and the module(s) being included had been assembled with an ISD. The user can, in his PCS commands, refer to internal symbols, including the original module name, in the resultant module. In order to do so, the internal symbol must be qualified by both the resultant module name and the original module name, in that order.

EXIT and PAUSE Macro Instructions

Table 15 summarizes the use of the EXIT and PAUSE macro instructions in both conversational and nonconversational mode.

Assembler Language Linkage Conventions

This section discusses the coding practices to be observed when preparing modules to be used as subroutines that are called by other object modules and when preparing linkages to other object modules. The section concludes with an example describing the contents of the PSECTS of three modules at various points in the transfer of control from one to another. For information regarding the linking of assembler language programs with FORTRAN and PL/I subprograms, refer to the *FORTRAN Programmer's Guide* and *PL/I Programmer's Guide*, respectively.

Linkage Conventions

Standard linkage conventions have been defined to govern the communication between all TSS programs.

Five types of standard linkage have been defined: I, II, IM/II, III, IV. Only type I linkage will be described here. The other linkage types are described in detail in the publication *System Programmer's Guide*.

Table 15. EXIT and PAUSE Macro Instructions

MACRO INSTRUCTION	EFFECT IN CONVERSATIONAL MODE	EFFECT IN NONCONVERSATIONAL MODE
PAUSE n or PAUSE 'message'	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Prints the message "PAUSE n" or "PAUSE message" at the user's terminal. 2. Prints an underscore at terminal requesting a command. 3. Program may be continued at the statement following the PAUSE by entering the RUN command. 	PAUSE n or 'message' prints on SYSOUT data set, execution continues with the statement following the PAUSE.
EXIT n or EXIT 'message'	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Prints "EXIT, RELEASE ALL UNNEEDED DEVICES," followed by n or 'message' at the terminal. 2. Prints an underscore at terminal requesting a command. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Prints "EXIT, RELEASE ALL UNNEEDED DEVICES," followed by n or 'message' in the SYSOUT data set. 2. Reads the next command from the SYSIN data set.

Associated with type I linkage conventions are three areas of concern; these are:

1. Register usage.
2. Parameter lists.
3. Save areas.

Proper Register Usage

TSS has assigned roles to certain registers used in generating a linkage. The function of each linkage register is illustrated in Table 16. Note that registers 2 through 12 are not assigned and, thus, are always available to the programmer for other purposes.

It is the responsibility of the *called* module to maintain the integrity of general registers 2 through 12 so that their contents are the same at exit as they were at entry to the called module. It is the *calling* module's responsibility to maintain the floating-point registers and program mask around a call. General registers 0, 1, and 13 through 15 must conform to the indicated

conventions; 0 and 1 may be destroyed by the called module.

Table 16. Linkage Registers

GENERAL REGISTER	USAGE
1	Parameter List Register—contains the address of a list of pointers to input parameters.
13	Save Area Register—contains the address of the calling module's save area.
14	Return Register—contains address in calling module at which execution resumes upon return.
15	Entry Point Register—contains address of the entry point in the called module; also Return Code Register—contains return code set by called module.

Reserving a Parameter Area

If a called module requires input parameters, the calling module must supply the called module with the location of a parameter list in general register 1. Each entry in the parameter list must be on a full-word boundary and represents the address of a parameter being passed to the called module. If the parameter list is variable in length, the length is specified as a count of the number of addresses that compose the list. This count is located one word before the first word in the parameter list. Regardless of whether the parameter list is of fixed or variable length, the parameter list register points to the first word of the parameter list. The `CALL` macro instruction can be used to generate the parameter list, as well as to link to the called module.

Reserving a Save Area

It is the responsibility of the calling module to supply a 19-word area to be used by the called module. Figure 32 shows the layout of the save area and briefly describes the information saved in the area by the calling and called module. Of particular interest in this save area (for trace purposes) are the following two words:

- Word 2 The "backward pointer." This word always points to the save area of the module that called the module whose save area is being inspected.
- Word 3 The "forward pointer." This word contains the address of the save area of the module last called by the program whose save area is being inspected. The low order bit of this word is set to zero as the called program is entered and set to 1 upon exit if the T option in the `RETURN` macro is used. This bit is useful in determining the flow of control during program execution.

CALL, SAVE, and RETURN Macro Instruction Usage

The `CALL`, `SAVE`, and `RETURN` macro instructions are used to provide linkage between object program modules. Refer to the publication *Assembler User's Macro Instructions* for a detailed description of the notation and options of each macro instruction. In most cases, additional user-written instructions are necessary to complete the requirements of the linkage conventions. The following sections illustrate the points that should be considered when using the program linkage macro instructions.

CALL Macro Instruction

The `CALL` macro instruction generates all the necessary instructions to set the entry point and return registers, constructs a parameter list if parameters are specified and sets the parameter register, and stores the R-value for the called module in the 19th word of the save area indicated by register 13. It is the user's responsibility to ensure that register 13 is properly set to the address of the save area.

If the calling module requires the contents of registers 0, 1, 13, 14, and 15, the calling module must save and restore these registers around the `CALL`. (For example, register 15 may be used as a base register for code.) The calling module must also save and restore the program mask and any floating point registers used around the `CALL`.

NOTE: An implicit `CALL` refers to a V- and an R-type address constant pair. In order for the loader to properly resolve the value of the R-type address constant, the label appearing in the operand of the R-type address constant must be an external symbol.

Although the `CALL` macro instruction provides for specifying parameters that automatically cause a parameter list to be constructed, there are various other methods for communicating between object modules.

The user can, of course, construct his own parameter list, setting the parameter list register (1) prior to the `CALL`. The location of data (such as a table) can be communicated to the called program by an `ENTRY` statement in the calling program. The called program must then contain an `EXTRN` statement and an address constant naming the table.

SAVE Macro Instruction

The `SAVE` macro instruction generates the instructions for saving the contents of general registers as specified by the user. Register 13 is never saved and must not be specified. The user may wish to save all the registers but 13 (i.e., `SAVE (14,12)`). This provides full protection against inadvertently changing a register.

In addition to saving registers, `SAVE` can be used to develop a means of checking the program flow. If the T option is specified, registers 14 and 15 are stored in

the fourth and fifth words of the save area. Also, if the first register specification in the macro instruction is 14, 15, 0, 1, or 2, all registers from 14 through the second register specification are saved. If an entry-point identifier operand is specified, the entry-point identifier character string is included in the macro expansion beginning on a half-word boundary preceding the entry point.

The entry-point identifier is placed so that either one or two bytes separate its end from the beginning of the entry-point. If an extra byte is needed to achieve half-word alignment, a character blank is added to the end of the string. A count byte will then follow. The count byte will always precede the entry-point and contain a value equal to the number of characters in the string, plus the blank (if used). The count byte itself is not included in this tally.

If the entry-point identifier operand is written as an asterisk, the entry-point identifier is the same as the symbol in the name field of this macro instruction. If the name field is blank, the name of the control section containing the `SAVE` macro instruction is used as the identifier character string.

The additional instructions to be supplied by the user following the `SAVE` are dependent on the type of module being prepared.

If the called module does not perform any further linkages, the only additional instruction necessary is one that loads into a base register the `PSECT` address from the nineteenth word of the save area as pointed to by register 13.

If register 15 is not to be used in further calls, it can be used as a base register for the code. If register 14 is used by the called module, it should be specified in the `SAVE` and `RETURN`.

A program that does not perform any calls may be coded as:

```

SUBIEP  SAVE      (14,12),*
          Save registers 14-15, 0-12 and
          place SUBIEP preceding the
          entry point
          L        12,72(0,13)
          Pick up address of PSECT
          USING    SUB1P,12
          PSECT base register
          USING    SUBIEP,15
          Code base register
          .
          .
          RETURN  (14,12),T
          Restore and return

```

If the called module does perform further linkages, additional instructions must be supplied to perform the following functions:

- Establish a save area to be used by the modules being called.
- Save the contents of registers 13 and 14. Register 14 can be specified in the `SAVE` macro; the instructions to save register 13 must be supplied by the user. The backward pointer in the called module's save area is intended for this purpose.
- Establish the forward and backward pointers in the calling and called module's save areas. This facilitates checking of the flow of control from one object module to another.

The following is an example of a module that has been written so that its save area occupies the first 19 words of its `PSECT`. This is convenient in that the save area register (13) can also be used as a base register for the `PSECT`.

```

SUB1P      PSECT      F'76'
           DC         18F
           DS
           .
           .
           ENTRY     SUBIEP
SUB1C      CSECT      READONLY
SUB1EP     SAVE      (14,12)
           Save registers 14-15, 0-12
           L         14,72(0,13)
           Get R-value from calling mod-
           ule's save area
           ST        14,8(0,13)
           Store forward pointer in calling
           module's save area
           ST        13,4(0,14)
           Store backward pointer in SUB1
           save area; address of calling
           module's save area will be
           restored to 13 before return
           LR        13,14
           Set base register for PSECT and
           save area
           USING     SUB1P,13
           LR        12,15
           Set code register
           USING     SUBIEP,12

```

Note that register 14 in the example is used to hold the `PSECT` address temporarily until 13 is saved. This is safe, since 14 has been specified in the `SAVE` and is to be restored on `RETURN`. Also, since this module is to `CALL` another module, register 12 is used as a base register for code, rather than saving and restoring 15 around each call. Finally, the occurrence of the `ENTRY` statement in the `SUB1` `PSECT` identifies the origin of the `PSECT` as the `R`-value for the entry point `SUBIEP`.

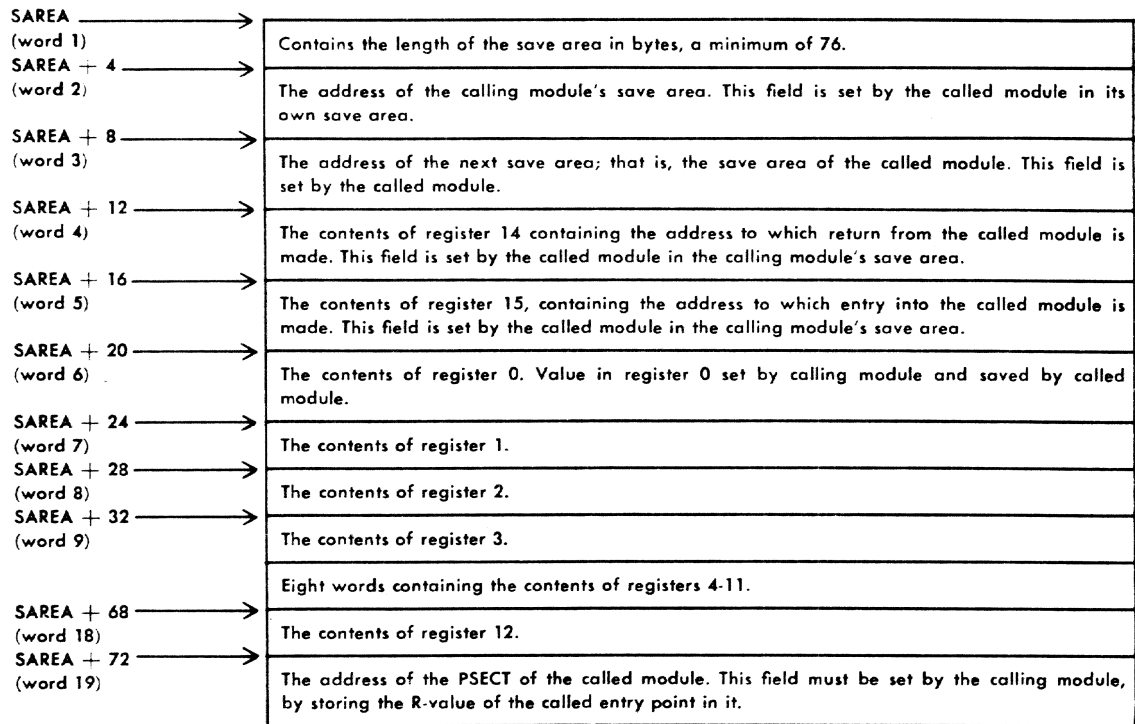


Figure 32. Save Area Format and Word Content

Although it is convenient to have a save area as the initial portion of the PSECT, it is not a requirement. Some alternatives are:

- The save area resides in the PSECT but not at the beginning.
- The save area resides in another control section but is located by an address constant in the PSECT.
- The module contains no PSECT; the save area resides in another control section type and is pointed to by an address constant in the module.
- The save area is dynamically allocated via GETMAIN on each entry to the routine and released prior to RETURN.

While any of these methods is possible, each has disadvantages. All require more instructions in locating the save area. Also, an extra register must be used as the PSECT base register, thus decreasing the number of registers available for the program.

RETURN Macro Instruction

The RETURN macro instruction expands into the instructions for restoring the general registers and returning control to the calling program. Additionally, if the T option is specified in the macro, the low-order bit in the third word of the caller's save area is set on to facilitate tracing save areas.

Register 13 must be set to the calling module's save area prior to the RETURN. If the contents have been stored as the backward pointer (word 2) in the called module's save area, the register contents can be restored easily by:

```
L      13,4(0,13)
RETURN (14,12)
```

If neither register 14 nor the T option has been specified in the SAVE macro instruction, 14 must also be restored prior to the RETURN.

A return code can be specified in the macro or can be preset in register 15 by the program. Return codes can be any value from 0 to 4092. Codes must be assigned in multiples of four, so that the calling program can use them as an index to a branch table.

If the RETURN macro instruction is written with the T option, when the registers are restored, the low-order bit of the forward pointer in word 3 of the calling module's save area is set to 1. This is another means of tracing the flow of control between modules.

Object Modules Initiated by a CALL Command

Logically, the first module to receive control has the same linkage as lower-level routines that it, in turn, calls. The system, via the CALL command, allocates a

save area to be used by the modules. On entry, registers 13, 14, and 15 are set by convention to the save area, the return point, and the entry point, respectively. The 19th word of the save area contains the R-value for the entry point. The return point, in this case, is to a system routine that conversationally places the terminal back in command mode or nonconversationally reads the next command from SYSIN. The contents of registers 0 through 12 are unpredictable.

If the initial module completes its execution with an EXIT macro instruction, the registers contain the values as last changed by the program. If, however, the program ends execution with a RETURN macro instruction, the contents of the registers depend on which registers were restored in the RETURN. Registers 13 and 14 must, of course, always contain the save area address and return point. Registers 0 through 12 and 15, if not specified in the RETURN, contain the values as set by the program. Register 15, if restored, contains the entry point. In this case, any investigation of the contents of registers 0 through 12 must be done prior to the execution of the RETURN.

Example of Module Interaction

The interaction of three modules is shown below (Figures 33, 34, and 35). Module A calls module B which in turn calls module C. Register 0 is loaded with "1," "2," and "3," in modules A, B, and C, respectively. The load is performed prior to the link to the next higher level. Table 17 shows the contents of the save areas for all the modules at the points specified. The backward and forward pointers between save area levels are contained in words 2 and 3. The next higher level entry point is in word 5, and the return point to the level being inspected is contained in word 4. The save area for the highest level will never contain useful information in words 4 through 18, the general register save area. This is because it is the responsibility of the called module to save the environment of the calling module in the calling module's save area.

It must also be emphasized that the setting of bit 31, word 3 in the calling module's save area results from the called module using the T option on the RETURN. As an example, see the save area for module B after control is passed to module A. The setting of this bit took place at line 2000 in module C.

Thus, by inspecting the save area belonging to a module, it may be determined whether it was the highest level executed, where it was called, the location of the calling module's save area and the descending chain of pointers, the entry point to the next higher level module, if any, and the return point to the level being inspected if a call was made to a higher level.

Interroutine Communication

External dummy sections provide a direct means of communication among several different routines. They are defined by DXD instructions and are located at execution time by a Q-type address constant naming the desired external dummy section. The information present in an external dummy section is available to all routines which have defined the dummy section within their code.

The CXD instruction must be specified in at least one of the routines. For all modules loaded simultaneously, the loader will calculate the cumulative byte length of all external dummy sections and place the sum in the fullword storage area allocated by the CXD instruction. Any routine which issued the CXD instruction can then use the cumulative sum to determine the amount of virtual storage which must be acquired to contain all the external dummy sections. The storage will be obtained dynamically, at execution time, by issuing a GETMAIN macro instruction. Alternately, storage may have been reserved earlier with DS, DC, or ORG assembler instructions.

The example which follows illustrates a use of external dummy sections as communications areas for a main routine and its subroutine. MAINPGM is the main routine which has been assembled in a program module. It will call the subroutine SUBPGM which has been assembled in a separate program module. The main routine will place the address of the message 'Sample Message' in the external dummy section named P1. The message byte length will be saved in the external dummy section P2. When SUBPGM gains control, it can access the two external dummy sections and write the message to SYSOUT.

The assembler instructions for the module MAINPGM are shown below. The standard entry and linkage conventions discussed earlier must be followed. This example, however, will only show the code necessary for establishing and manipulating external dummy sections.

MAINP	PSECT	
	.	
	.	
	.	
P1	DXD	A External dummy section which will be set to the address of MSG.
P2	DXD	F External dummy section which will be set to the length of MSG.
QP1	DC	Q(P1)
QP2	DC	Q(P2)
		Q-type address constants used to locate P1 and P2 in the ac- quired virtual storage.

CUMLEN	CXD	After loading, this fullword in storage will contain the cumulative byte length of all external dummy sections defined by the two routines.	L	5,QP2
			L	6,LMSG The displacement of P2 is loaded into register 5; the byte length of MSG is loaded into register 6.
XDPGS	DS	F This fullword will save the number of pages of virtual storage which must be acquired.	ST	6,0(5,12) The length of MSG is stored in P2.
	.		CALL	SUBPGM A call is made to the subroutine to print out MSG.
	.		.	
MSG	DC	C'SAMPLE MESSAGE'	.	
LMSG	DC	A(L'MSG) Set to the length of MSG.	.	
	.		.	

The executable portion of the main routine is now shown. MAINPGM will calculate the virtual storage request from the sum stored in CUMLEN, and issue the GETMAIN macro instruction.

MAINC	CSECT	
	.	
	.	
L	12,CUMLEN	
LA	12,4095(0,12)	
SRA	12,12	The preceding code is necessary to convert the number of bytes needed into pages.
ST	12,XDPGS	The page request is stored in XDPGS for reference when the storage is released.
LR	0,12	Register 0 now contains the number of pages which must be acquired.
GETMAIN	PAGE,LV=(0)	The GETMAIN macro instruction is issued to obtain the virtual storage.
LR	12,1	Register 12 is established as the base register for addressing the external dummy sections.
	.	
	.	

The main routine will now place the proper values in the external dummy sections and call SUBPGM.

L	5,QP1	The displacement of the external dummy section P1 is loaded into register 5.
LA	6,MSG	The address of MSG is loaded into register 6.
ST	6,0(5,12)	The address of MSG is stored in P1.

After SUBPGM has completed execution, it will return control to the main routine. Since the storage needed for the external dummy sections is no longer required, a FREEMAIN macro instruction can be issued to release virtual storage.

L	0,XDPGS	The page request is loaded.
LR	1,12	The address of the external dummy section block is loaded into register 1.
FREEMAIN	PAGE,LV=(0),A=(1)	Virtual storage is released.
.	.	
.	.	
END		

The external dummy sections P1 and P2 must also be defined in the subroutine in order for interaction between the two routines to occur. Following is the necessary code for SUBPGM:

SUBP	PSECT	
	.	
	.	
	.	
P2	DXD	F Length of MSG.
P1	DXD	A Address of MSG.
QP2	DC	Q(P2)
QP1	DC	Q(P1) Displacements of external dummy sections within block of storage.
LNGAREA	DS	F
MSGAREA	DS	CL256 Areas into which P2 and P1 will be moved.
XX	DXD	CL256
QXX	DC	Q(XX) The external dummy section XX is an area which will be used only by SUBPGM. It has not been defined in MAINPGM and is thus not available to the main routine even though it is represented in the area secured by MAINPGM.

SUBC CSECT

L

7,QP2
The displacement of P2 within the block of storage is loaded into register 7.

L

8,0(7,12)
SUBPGM assumes that register 12 points to the address of the storage block containing the external dummy sections. By using register 12 as the base and register 7 as the index, the message length can be obtained and loaded into register 8. Note that if SUBC is not defined with a PUBLIC attribute, the preceding two lines will be replaced with the following:

```
L 7,0(12)
ORG *-2
DC QL2(P2)
```

These lines will generate one LOAD instruction, thus saving on the number of source lines.

ST

SUBC may not have the PUBLIC attribute because the Qcon for P2 must be resolved by the dynamic loader.

BCTR

8,LNGAREA
The message length is stored.

L

8,0
Decrement register contents by one to prepare for EXECUTE instruction.

L

7,QP1
Load displacement of P1.

EX

7,0(7,12)
Obtain address of MSG.

GATWR

8,MOVE
Move message to MSGAREA in order to write to SYSOUT.

MSGAREA,LNCAREA
Issue message.

MOVE

MVC

MSGAREA(0),0(7)
Move message.

END

VIRTUAL MEMORY LOCATION	STATEMNT	SOURCE
	0000100	* MODULE 'A'
300000	0000200	SUBRA PSECT
	0000300	ENTRY SUBRA21
300000	0000400	DC F'76' SAVE AREA
300074	0000500	DC 1RF'0'
	0000600	ADPR1 ADCCN IMPLICIT,EP=SUBRB21
30004C	+	CNOP 0,4
	+	ADPR1 EQU *-12
30004C	+	DC V(SUBRB21) V-CON
300050	+	DC R(SUBRB21) R-CON
300054	0000700	PLIST DC A(PARAM)
300058	0000800	PARAM DS F
301070	0000900	SUBRA1 CSECT READONLY
	0001000	USING SUBRA21,15
	0001100	SUBRA21 SAVE (14,12) SAVE REGS IN CALLER'S SAVE AREA
301000	+	SUBRA21 DS OH
301000	+	STM 14,12,12(13)
301004	0001200	L 14,72(0,13) GET LOC THIS PROGRAM'S SAVE AREA
301008	0001300	ST 14,8(0,13) SAVE IN CALLER'S SAVE AREA
30100C	0001400	ST 13,4(0,14) SAVE LOC OF CALLER'S SAVE AREA
301010	0001500	LR 13,14 LOC THIS SUBROUTINE'S SAVE AREA
	0001600	USING SUBRA,13
301012	0001700	LA 0,1
301016	0001800	LR 12,15 LOAD COVER REG
	0001900	DROP 15
	0002000	USING SUBRA21,12
301018	0002100	LA 15,ADPR1
	0002200	CALL (15),MF=(E,PLIST)
30101C	+	DS OH
	+	CHDINNRA PLIST LOAD POINTER TO PARAM LIST INTO REG 1
30101C	+	DS OH HALF WORD ALIGNMENT
30101C	+	LA 1,PLIST LOAD PARAM. REG. 1
301020	+	L 14,16(0,15)
301024	+	L 15,12(0,15)
301028	+	ST 14,72(0,13) STORE IN SAVE AREA
30102C	+	BASR 14,15 LINK
	0002300	CALLB EQU * RETURN POINT AFTER CALL
	0002400	* ADDITIONAL PROCESSING BY SUBRA1
	0002500	* ADDITIONAL PROCESSING BY SUBRA1
	0002600	* ADDITIONAL PROCESSING BY SUBRA1
30102E	0002700	L 13,4(0,13) RESTORE REG 13 TO CALLER'S SAVE AREA
	0002800	RETURN (14,12),T RESTORE REGS AND RETURN
301032	+	DS OH
301032	+	LM 14,12,12(13)
301036	+	OI 11(13),X'01'
30103A	+	BR 14
	0002900	END

Figure 33. Module A Source Listing

VIRTUAL MEMORY LOCATION	STATEMNT	SOURCE	
	0000100	* MODULE 'B'	
350000	0000200	SUBRB1 PSECT	
	0000300	ENTRY SUBRB21	
350000	0000400	DC F'76'	SAVE AREA
350004	0000500	DC 18F'0'	
	0000600	ADPR2 ADCON IMPLICIT,EP=SUBRC21	
35004C	+	CNOP 0,4	
	+	FQU *-12	
35004C	+	DC V(SUBRC21)	V-CON
350050	+	DC R(SUBRC21)	R-CON
350054	0000700	RISAVE DS F	
351000	0000800	SUBRB2 CSECT READONLY	
	0000900	USING SUBRB21,15	
	0001000	SUBRB21 SAVE (14,12)	SAVE REGS IN CALLER'S SAVE AREA
351000	+	SUBRB21 DS OH	
351000	+	STM 14,12,12(13)	
351004	0001100	L 14,72(0,13)	GET LOC THIS PROGRAM'S SAVE AREA
351008	0001200	ST 14,8(0,13)	SAVE IN CALLER'S SAVE AREA
35100C	0001300	ST 13,4(0,14)	SAVE LOC OF CALLER'S SAVE AREA
351010	0001400	LR 13,14	LOC THIS SUBROUTINE'S SAVE AREA
	0001500	USING SUBRB1,13	
351012	0001600	ST 1,RISAVE	SAVE ADDRESS OF PARAMETER LIST
351016	0001700	LA 0,2	
35101A	0001800	LR 12,15	LOAD COVER REG
	0001900	DROP 15	
	0002000	USING SUBRB21,12	
35101C	0002100	LA 15,ADPR2	
	0002200	CALL (15),MF=(E,(1))	
351020	+	DS OH	
	+	CHDINNRA (1)	LOAD POINTER TO PARAM LIST INTO REG 1
351020	+	DS OH	HALF WORD ALIGNMENT
351020	+	L 14,16(0,15)	
351024	+	L 15,12(0,15)	
351028	+	ST 14,72(0,13)	STORE IN SAVE AREA
35102C	+	BASR 14,15	LINK
	0002300	CALLC EQU *	RETURN POINT AFTER CALL
	0002400	*	
	0002500	* ADDITIONAL PROCESSING BY SUBRB2	
	0002600	*	
35102E	0002700	L 13,4(0,13)	RESTORE REG 13 TO CALLER'S SAVE AREA
	0002800	RETURN (14,12),T	RESTORE REGS AND RETURN
351032	+	DS OH	
351032	+	LM 14,12,12(13)	
351036	+	OI 11(13),X'01'	
35103A	+	BR 14	
	0002900	END	

Figure 34. Module B Source Listing

VIRTUAL MEMORY LOCATION	STATEMNT	SOURCE	
	0000100	* MODULE 'C'	
400000	0000200	SUBRC1 PSECT	
	0000300	ENTRY SUBRC21	
400000	0000400	DC F'76'	SAVE AREA
400004	0000500	DC 18F'0'	
401000	0000600	SUBRC2 CSECT READONLY	
	0000700	USING SUBRC21,15	
	0000800	SUBRC21 SAVE (14,12)	SAVE REGS IN CALLER'S SAVE AREA
401000	+	SUBRC21 DS OH	
401000	+	STM 14,12,12(13)	
401004	0000900	L 14,72(0,13)	GET LOC THIS PROGRAM'S SAVE AREA
401008	0001000	ST 14,8(0,13)	SAVE IN CALLER'S PSECT
40100C	0001100	ST 13,4(0,14)	SAVE LOC OF CALLER'S SAVE AREA
401010	0001200	LR 13,14	LOC THIS SUBROUTINE'S SAVE AREA
	0001300	USING SUBRC1,13	
	0001400	*	
	0001500	* ADDITIONAL PROCESSING BY SUBRC2, USING 15 AS CODE COVER	
	0001600	* AS NO SYSTEM MACROS USED.	
	0001700	*	
401012	0001800	LA 0,3	
401016	0001900	L 13,4(0,13)	RESTORE REG 13 TO CALLER'S SAVE AREA
	0002000	RETURN (14,12),T	RESTORE REGS AND RETURN
40101A	+	DS OH	
40101A	+	LM 14,12,12(13)	
40101E	+	OI 11(13),X'01'	
401022	+	BR 14	
	0002100	END	

Figure 35. Module C Source Listing

Table 17. Save Area Linkage

SAVE AREA	WORD	AFTER A CALLS B	STATE-MENT WHERE SET	AFTER B CALLS C	STATE-MENT WHERE SET	AFTER C RETURNS TO B	STATE-MENT WHERE SET	AFTER B RETURNS TO A	STATE-MENT WHERE SET
A	1	F'76'		F'76'		F'76'		F'76'	
	2	xxxx*	A-1400	xxxx*		xxxx*		xxx1	
	3	R(SUBRB1) [350000]	B-1200	R(SUBRB1) [350000]		R(SUBRB1) [350000]		R(SUBRB1+1) [350000]	B-2800
	4	V(CALLB) [30102E]	B-1000	V(CALLB) [30102E]		V(CALLB) [30102E]		V(CALLB) [30102E]	
	5	V(SUBRB21) [351000]	B-1000	V(SUBRB21) [351000]		V(SUBRB21) [351000]		V(SUBRB21) [351000]	
	6	F'01'	B-1000	F'01'		F'01'		F'01'	
	7	A(PLIST) [300054]	B-1000	A(PLIST) [300054]		A(PLIST) [300054]		A(PLIST) [300054]	
	.								
B	19	R(SUBRB1) [350000]	A-2200	R(SUBRB1) [350000]		R(SUBRB1) [350000]		R(SUBRB1) [350000]	
	1	F'76'		F'76'		F'76'		F'76'	
	2	R(SUBRA) [300000]	B-1300	R(SUBRA) [300000]		R(SUBRA) [300000]		R(SUBRA) [300000]	
	3	F'0'		R(SUBRC1) [400000]	C-1000	R(SUBRC1+1) [401001]	C-2000	R(SUBRC1+1) [401001]	
	4	.		V(CALLC) [35102E]	C-0800	V(CALLC) [35102E]		V(CALLC) [35102E]	
	5	.		V(SUBRC21) [401000]	C-0800	V(SUBRC21) [401000]		V(SUBRC21) [401000]	
	6	.		F'02'	C-0800	F'02'		F'02'	
	7	.		A(PLIST) [300054]	C-0800	A(PLIST) [300054]		A(PLIST) [300054]	
C	.								
	19	F'0'		R(SUBRC1) [400000]	B-2200	R(SUBRC1) [400000]		R(SUBRC1) [400000]	
	1	F'76'		F'76'		F'76'		F'76'	
	2	F'0'		R(SUBRB1) [350000]	C-1100	R(SUBRB1) [350000]		R(SUBRB1) [350000]	
	3	.		F'0'		F'0'		F'0'	
	4	.		.		.		.
	5	.		.		.		.
	6	.		.		.		.
7	.		.		.		.
19	F'0'		F'0'		F'0'		F'0'		

*Subroutine 'A' inserts the address of its caller's save area in this word.

Shared Code (PUBLIC) Considerations

The system recognizes a control section as being private or sharable. The latter type is identified by the specification of the PUBLIC attribute associated with the control section and the residence of the control section in a shared data set. Each task is allocated its own copy of a private control section; however, allocation of public control sections occurs in such a way as to make the same physical copy of the control section

available to all tasks that have allocated the control section to their respective virtual storages.

Sharing object code enhances the efficiency of the system. Paging is reduced since only one copy need be in main storage or on the paging device; in addition, shared routines can be executed simultaneously by more than one CPU.

A reenterable program is one that can be interrupted at any point during execution, entered by an-

other user, and subsequently, reentered at the point of interruption by the first user, and produces the desired results for all users.

The latter type is identified by the specification of the PUBLIC attribute associated with the control section and the residence of the control section in a shared data set. Each task is allocated its own copy of a private control section; however, allocation of public control sections occurs in such a way as to make the same physical copy of the control section available to all tasks that have allocated the control section to their respective virtual storages.

In TSS, a standard reenterable program normally consists of one or more named, read-only PUBLIC CSECTS containing instructions and invariant data (relocatable address constants can never be contained in these CSECTS), and a PRIVATE PSECT, consisting of save areas, working storage and variable program data. With this method, each task using the reenterable program is supplied a private copy of the PSECT, the location of which is passed to the reenterable program as a linkage parameter by the calling program.

Other variations of reenterable programs are possible; for example, temporary working storage can also be obtained dynamically by the reenterable program itself, using the GETMAIN macro instruction. In this case, storage is obtained for each task entering the reenterable program, and is private for that task.

To make the reenterable program sharable, the user specifies the PUBLIC attribute in the control section declaration. Specifying the READONLY attribute ensures that the shared code will not in any way modify itself during execution. If the READONLY attribute is not specified, it is the responsibility of each user to ensure the integrity of the routine at any stage of execution, preventing mutual interference.

Prior to assembling the module, a DDEF must be issued defining the job library where the object module is to be stored. Once the module is assembled, the user must grant access to the job library by issuing a PERMIT. This, of course, is not necessary if the object module is stored on a job library previously being shared.

Each user who has been permitted access must then issue a SHARE command, to make the appropriate entry in his catalog for the library. Again, this is not necessary if the user is already sharing the data set. Each time the sharer wishes to use the shared program, he must issue a DDEF for the JOBLIB prior to loading the object module. The object code actually is shared only when each user loads the public control section from the same shared job library. A sharer who link-edits a public control section onto another library receives a private copy each time the object module is loaded from that library.

A program requiring more than 256 shared pages of storage cannot be loaded in public storage. The program will be loaded on private pages, and each user sharing it will receive a private copy.

Efficient Use of Virtual Storage

This section discusses how to use virtual storage efficiently. To understand the guidelines that are presented here, the user should be aware of certain aspects of how the system allocates and manipulates the virtual storage associated with his task.

1. *Control Sections:* All PSECTS and CSECTS are allocated virtual storage starting on a page boundary. Thus, each specification of a new control section incurs a requirement for a new page.
2. *Auxiliary Storage:* As a result of task execution, pages will be brought into real storage as necessary. If the content of a page is altered while it is in real storage, the system will write the changed page on auxiliary storage (i.e., the paging drums and disks) when the real storage space occupied by this page is released for other use (primarily at the end of the time slice). Furthermore, the system will attempt to keep frequently-used pages on the paging drum and seldom-used pages on the disk. Pages that are read-only (i.e., not changed during execution) will not be placed on auxiliary storage since they can be reloaded from the initial source.
3. *Sharing:* There are two levels of inter-user sharing available in the system: data set sharing via the PERMIT and SHARE commands, and control section sharing via the PUBLIC attributes of the control section declaration. In the latter case, two or more tasks will share a single real core page to reflect the status of a page of their respective virtual storages. Note that the PUBLIC attribute of the control section will not be effective except in the case where the library originally containing the control section is also shared.

A shared page, once brought into real storage, tends to remain resident there for an extended period of time (as compared to private pages); the intent is to make it immediately available to other tasks besides the task that caused the initial load. Thus, seldom-used control sections should not be shared internally unless it is a requirement.

Guidelines For Efficient Use

Internal Organization of Program Modules

1. In general, the following conventions should be adhered to in setting up the contents of PSECTS and CSECTS:

A CSECT should contain:

- Executable read-only code
- Data constants
- Non-relocatable literals
- Any other non-modifiable address-free information

A PSECT should contain:

- Save areas
- Local temporary storage
- Parameter lists
- Address constants and relocatable literals
- Any other modifiable location-dependent information

There are, however, cases where this results in a less efficient program. For instance, if a module consists of a large PSECT in comparison to the CSECT, and the sum of both is less than 4096 bytes, the CSECT can be incorporated into the PSECT, thereby reducing the page references when the module is executed.

2. Segregate code so that seldom-used code is allocated to a CSECT which is not in the main flow of the program logic.

External Organization of Program Modules

1. Concentrate changeable data (i.e., PSECTS and tables) into as few pages as possible—a changed page requires additional auxiliary storage space.
2. If program module A uses program module B, then attempt to package the read-only CSECTS of A and B together in the same page and the read-write PSECTS of A and B in another page.
3. In general, do not combine CSECTS or PSECTS such that they cross a page boundary. Optimally, a control section or combined control sections should be 4096 bytes in extent.

These combinations of control sections can be effected by using the combine feature of the linkage editor.

Programming Techniques

1. It is most useful to plan the use of virtual storage as if it were a one-page overlay environment—that is, as if only one page of virtual storage could be used without incurring the overhead of a page overlay.
2. Do not zero out virtual storage areas obtained by a GETMAIN; they are set to zero automatically. (Note, however, that the contents of an area reserved by a DS statement are unpredictable, i.e., they should not be assumed to be zero.)

3. Use open (in-line) as opposed to closed (out-of-line) subroutines. If increasing the size of the total program will reduce the page references, do so.
4. Perform your own page suballocation on return from GETMAIN; i.e., use the entire page provided by the GETMAIN before issuing another GETMAIN.
5. Utilize program common for parameters that are frequently referred to, small work areas, etc.
6. For large tables (i.e., greater than four pages), use GETMAIN to allocate the necessary space. When the space is no longer needed, the decision as to whether to reuse it or to release it via a FREEMAIN should depend on the total table size. If the table is less than 10 pages in size, it is more efficient to reuse the space, since the system overhead on a FREEMAIN-GETMAIN sequence is greater than the overhead attached to the paging operations necessary to reuse the space. If the table is greater than 10 pages in size, a FREEMAIN should be used to release the old space and a GETMAIN should be issued for the new table.

Using GETMAIN-FREEMAIN for space allocation is of particular importance when the program is not to be unloaded. For example, initial virtual storage (IVM) is never unloaded and, if a large table appears in a PSECT, once the table is changed, the changed pages will remain in auxiliary storage until the owning task logs off.

7. Avoid repetitive nonsequential use of subroutines if data can be blocked into or out of the subroutine in a single call; for example, OPEN all data sets at the same time.
8. Avoid multi-page chained tables if possible—a linear search in one page is more efficient than a random search in two pages even if the CPU execution time of the former is greater (true virtual storage execution time is the sum of CPU time and paging time). If the table is larger than a page, use an index table to get to the proper table page directly.
9. Avoid the use of “push down” stacks where the depth of the stack at any time is larger than one or two pages.
10. Avoid sequential programs which build large program or data virtual storage images and then do not refer to them for an extended period of time; use data management (external storage) instead. This eliminates excessive build-up of inactive pages in auxiliary storage.
11. Use job libraries carefully to avoid excessive library searching for program modules.
12. In general, implicit loading of a module (via V-type constants or A-type constants with an EXTRN)

should be used in preference to explicit loading (via the LOAD command, the LOAD macro instruction, or an explicit CALL). An exception to this would be when implicit loading causes loading of many more modules than the program might actually use.

13. In general, unloading will not noticeably increase system performance. An exception would be when a very large number of pages of a program have been referred to, but will not be referred to again.

Only modules that were explicitly loaded can be explicitly unloaded. If it is desired to unload a module that was implicitly loaded, it is necessary to unload the explicitly-loaded module that caused the implicit loading.

14. At LOGON time, specify control section packing whenever possible. This allows control sections with like attributes to be collected into less memory space. Modules to be executed may thus be compressed into fewer pages, reducing the time required for system paging operations.

Control Section Rejection and Linking Control Sections

During the dynamic linking of object modules, each control section name is checked against control section and entry point names that are already loaded in the task. If a duplication is found, the control section is rejected. Figure 36 summarizes the loader's rejection action.

CONTROL SECTION	LOADER REJECTION ACTION
Named CSECTs, PSECTs, or COMMON	Subject to automatic control section rejection if name duplicates a control section name or any other entry point name already present in the task.
Unnamed CSECTs	Given a unique internal numeric identification when processed by the loader; it is not subject to automatic rejection.
Unnamed (blank) COMMON	Subject to automatic rejection: after one unnamed COMMON control section is processed, any subsequently loaded will be assigned the same name and therefore rejected.

Figure 36. Dynamic Loader Automatic Control Section Rejection

Control sections may also be rejected because of the violation of a naming restriction.

Control section rejection may result in other errors, since none of the entry points defined by the control section are recorded by the system. References to these entry points will be unresolved unless they are satisfied by another control section.

Accidental control section rejection can be avoided by unloading following each execution. However, in some cases, it is desirable to allow a control section to be linked from one execution to the next.

If an UNLOAD command is issued after a module has completed execution all record of control section and entry names in that module are removed from the task's allocated storage. Any subsequent module that is loaded containing a CSECT with the same name would have storage allocated as if it were the first usage.

When the user wishes to pass the contents of the same named control section from one program to the next, the UNLOAD command should not be entered. In this case, the second program's references to the control section would be resolved to the control section that was allocated storage with the first program, if both have the same name.

Recovering from Errors When Dynamically Loading

If a program consists of more than one object module, the modules are dynamically linked by the system's dynamic loader at execution time. The dynamic loader takes all of the implicit external references in the module that is explicitly loaded or run and resolves them by searching the program library list. It is possible that while the loader is linking the object module(s) into the user's virtual storage, several error conditions may arise that affect the eventual execution of that program.

- *Name to be loaded or run not found in library:* Either the user has specified the wrong name in the LOAD or CALL command or the job library containing the object module has not been defined in the task and, therefore, is not in the program library list. If the latter is the cause of error, the user in conversational mode can merely enter the DDEF defining the job library and reissue the LOAD or CALL command.
- *Unresolved references:* If an object module has an external reference that cannot be located in any of the libraries in the program library list, a diagnostic is issued specifying the name in the reference. Further linking of other object modules is not suspended, however, so that the explicitly-named object module and, possibly, other object modules that were referred to implicitly have been placed in the user's virtual storage. If the error occurs in a CALL command, execution of the program is not initiated.

If the user wishes to execute his program regardless of the error, he may reissue the CALL command. He must, however, repeat the name of the module named in the original CALL command. This is necessary to define the point at which execution is to be initiated.

If the user anticipates that an object module will have unresolved references, he should first issue a

LOAD command naming the module, followed by a CALL with an operand. This procedure is recommended for a nonconversational task, since the user can be assured that execution will be initiated regardless of unresolved references.

If the user does not wish to run the version of the program that has been loaded into his storage, he must issue an UNLOAD command. If he does wish to run this version of the program, he can then enter a DDEF defining a job library that was missing in the first load attempt. A LOAD or CALL issued at this point causes the entire linking procedure to be redone.

- *Duplicate entry points:* This condition may occur when dynamically linking an object module from one library with a module from another library. In this case, since the second entry point definition is disregarded, all further references to the ENTRY name may be erroneously resolved.

The user should take some corrective measures before attempting to LOAD or CALL again. (A possible correction might be to change the ENTRY name by link-editing the object modules onto another JOBLIB.) To avoid the possibility of such duplications when working with a new library, the POD? command can be used to list the directory of the library. The user can then circumvent the problem by setting up an appropriate program library list before he attempts to load his program.

Library Management

Program Library List Control

A program in TSS can consist of one or more object modules. All programs in TSS are stored in object module form in program libraries that are partitioned data sets. A program consisting of only one object module is stored entirely within one library; however, if a program consists of several object modules, these modules may reside in different libraries, depending on how the user has stored them. During linkage editing and during execution, the system can automatically retrieve all object modules required, if the user has defined the libraries in which those object modules are contained. The manner in which the user does this is described in the following paragraphs.

There are four categories of program libraries:

- System library (SYSLIB)
- User library (USERLIB)
- User-defined job libraries
- Other user-defined libraries used in linkage-editing

TSS does not allow a library to contain more than one declaration of any external symbol. In this sense, named and blank COMMON are not considered external symbols since they are not listed in the directory of the library.

The system library contains service routines provided by the installation. For example, it includes service programs, and the installation's standard subroutines and functions.

The user library is the private library assigned to each user when he is joined to the system. This library is automatically defined for him and an entry made in his catalog by the system. His user library is thus available each time he logs on. If the user does not employ job libraries in a task, all the object modules resulting from his use of the language processors are placed in his user library.

The user may wish to restrict his user library to checked-out, standard object modules that he executes frequently or that he uses frequently in the buildup of other object modules.

The program library list is a defined hierarchy of program libraries. It is set up at log-on time, and initially consists of the user library and SYSLIB.

The library at the top of the list automatically receives all object modules resulting from language processing. As noted above, if no job libraries are defined, the library at the top of the list is always the user library. However, the user can specify that a job library be added to the program library list to receive the output of the language processors. He does this by issuing a DDEF command defining that job library and containing the operand OPTION=JOBLIB. When this command is executed, the name of that job library is added to the top of the program library list. That library then receives all subsequent module output of the language processors until another job library is defined (and is thus at the top of the list) or until a RELEASE command is issued for that job library. A job library must always be a partitioned data set and may be defined on public or private volumes.

In addition to using the program library list to store object modules, the system uses this list to control its order of search when looking for object modules that must be loaded at execution time. The library at the top of the list is searched first, then the next-to-the-top library, etc.; finally, the user library and SYSLIB are searched.

In summary, the user has the following basic library setups for handling the object modules produced by the language processors.

- User Library—As this is always available and is always searched, the user may wish to reserve

this for frequently used checked-out programs. All user's USERLIBS are kept on public volumes and, hence, are always mounted on system devices.

- **Session JOBLIB**—By issuing a DDEF command for a new library at the beginning of a session, a user can create a library to contain all modules assembled during the session. By not cataloging this new library during the session (if private), he can discard modules not to be used again or not yet debugged.
- **Cataloged Private Volume JOBLIB**—A user can direct output to and retrieve from a library of infrequently-used modules by issuing a DDEF command for a cataloged job library that resides on a private removable disk pack. In a nonconversational task when using private job libraries, the user must request (via SECURE) a device for that job library. Modules may be entered in such a library:
Automatically if the library is the latest defined one in the session.
By link-editing it from his USERLIB, session job library or public-device job library and specifying to the linkage editor the desired private device job library as the output destination. Cataloged libraries on private volumes may also be shared by several users.
- **Cataloged Public Volume JOBLIB**—This type of library may be useful to the user in setting up (and using) a library of frequently-used programs whose names and external symbols conflict with other programs in USERLIB. As an example, versions of frequently used programs may be set up with one in USERLIB and another in a job library. Cataloged libraries on public volumes may be shared among users.

The program library list can also be used, during link-editing, to define the following for the system:

- The library that is to receive link-edited object module.
- The sequence in which libraries are to be searched if the system must find other object modules to define references in the link-edited object module.

The fourth category of libraries may be defined by a DDEF command with the operand keyword JOBLIB omitted. Such libraries may be referred to by a specific link editor INCLUDE statement, but they are not listed in the program library list, and hence are not included in the automatic library search, nor are they available to the dynamic loader.

Refer to Appendix B and to the publication *Linkage Editor* for an explanation of link editor program libraries.

Program Versions

Since one library cannot contain more than one control section entry point or module with the same name, different versions of the same program must be kept in different libraries. For example, a user may have a checked-out program in his USERLIB and wish to reassemble the program with modifications, but retain his original version until the new version has been checked out. A DDEF with a JOBLIB option causes the new module to be stored on the job library rather than USERLIB. The user may continue after assembly with his checkout of the new version, since any subsequent LOAD or CALL command in the task naming the module retrieves the new version from the job library. If, when the new version has been successfully tested, he wishes to replace the old version with the new version, he may link-edit the new version onto his USERLIB. He may also use the TV, VV, or CDS commands to copy a program module from one library to another. If he does not wish to retain the new version, he must either ERASE the module on the job library or RELEASE the job library. Releasing the library removes it from the program library list, automatically causing subsequent retrievals of that module to revert to USERLIB. Erasing the module does not remove the job library from the program library list, but any subsequent references to that module are resolved from USERLIB after the job library has been searched unsuccessfully.

To facilitate orderly maintenance of programs within various job libraries (and USERLIB), the POD? command is available. POD? enables the user to obtain on SYSOUT a list of the member names (and optionally the alias names and other member-oriented data) of individual members of cataloged VPAM data sets.

Sharing Libraries

A user may allow another user to share (i.e., access) one or more of his cataloged job libraries. When the owner permits access to his job library, all of the object modules on that data set are usable by the sharer. This facility does not imply that if the owner and/or one or more sharers use the same program at the same time they are sharing (co-using) the same copy in real storage. This aspect is controlled by the PUBLIC attribute assigned to a control section at assembly time.

The data set owner issues a PERMIT command to designate the other users who may share his job library and indicate the level of access those users may have:

- **Read-only access:** The sharer may use the object modules on the library, but may not add, replace, or erase a module.
- **Read-and-write access:** The sharer may use any object module on the library and may add or re-

place modules. He may not use the `ERASE` command to delete a module from the library.

- Unlimited access: The sharer, in effect, can treat the library as his own; thus he may even erase modules.

(Note that the implications of “read-only,” “read-write,” and “unlimited” are slightly different when specified by the user for his use of his own data sets and when specified in a `PERMIT` command. The owner of a data set may permit any level of access he wishes regardless of the access designator in the owner catalog. For example, if the owner catalog is marked “read only”, the owner may not write into his own data set, *but* he may permit a higher level of access (read/write or unlimited) to a sharing user. This flexibility must make the data set owner very cautious with critical data sets he has entered into the system.)

To gain access to a data set for which he has been previously authorized, the sharer must issue a `SHARE` command. The `SHARE` command places an entry for the owner’s data set name in the sharer’s catalog. The sharer may then enter a `DDEF` command for the data set (with the `JOBLIB` option) in each task where he wishes to include the library in his program library list.

Groups of job libraries with names having common higher-order components can be specified by using partially-qualified names when the `PERMIT` is issued. For example, an owner of two job libraries named `TRACK.SUB1` and `TRACK.SUB2` can allow sharing of both libraries by using the partially-qualified name `TRACK` in the `PERMIT` command. In this case, the sharer must also use the partially-qualified name (as the `dsname2` parameter) in the `SHARE` command, even though he only wishes to use one of the job libraries.

Table 18 lists the commands applicable to shared data sets and the effect of the command on the user’s catalog.

System Naming Rules

User-Assigned Names

The following names resulting in external symbols are supplied by the user in his assembler language source program or during assembly.

- Module name
- Control section names
- ENTRY names

All external symbol definitions in a module, including the module name, must be unique. In addition, since the system does not allow any one library to contain more than one definition of a particular external symbol, each name (except names of `COMMON` control sections and unnamed `CSECTS`) must be distinct from any other symbol contained on the library that

is to receive the object module. It is valid to have the same names on different libraries. Since a named or blank `COMMON` control section is not listed in the directory of the library as an external name associated with the module name, it does not have the preceding restriction. Also, since it is not listed in the directory, it cannot be explicitly referred to by name (i.e., it cannot be loaded by its `COMMON` name).

The `POD?` command can be used to list the external symbols in a library to avoid duplication.

Reserved Names

External Symbols

The user must never assign a name beginning with the characters `sys`. These letters are reserved for certain system programs. Any module stored on the user library or a job library starting with these symbols can never be retrieved by that name for execution, since resolution of `sys` symbols for loading and running is always attempted from the system library. In addition, a diagnostic is issued if a module, loaded by another name, contains an external symbol definition beginning with `sys`.

The user should also be careful to avoid accidentally duplicating the names of IBM-supplied FORTRAN subprograms. Generally, he should avoid the use of all external symbols starting with the characters `CHC`, or any FORTRAN-supplied subprogram name (i.e., `SIN`, `COS`, etc.), unless he specifically wishes to use this FORTRAN subprogram.

Internal Symbols

The user should avoid assigning an internal symbol beginning with the characters `CHD`, since system macro instructions use these characters and might cause a duplication of internal symbols.

Reserved Names Associated with Data Sets

The following list contains the reserved names which are assigned to system functions:

RESERVED DDNAMES	RESERVED DSNAMES
SYSLIB	USERLIB
SYSULIB	SYSLIB
SYSIN	
SYSOUT	
PCSOUT	

The following names are assigned to the assembler output data sets:

`SOURCE.module`—is the data set name assigned to the line data set of source statements constructed during the assembly. If the input to the assembler is from a prestored data set, then the user must assign the name `SOURCE.module` to the data set prior to the `ASM` command.

LIST.module—is the data set name assigned to the data set created for all the listings optionally selected by the user. The system automatically catalogs each new generation. Printed output is optional

and must be requested via the **PRINT** command. The listing data set is a generation data group, established the first time the module name was encountered during language processing.

Table 18. Shared Data Set Commands

COMMAND	BY OWNER	BY SHARER
PERMIT	Must be issued prior to the SHARE command by the sharer(s).	Not allowed. A user cannot permit access to a data set that he does not own.
SHARE	Not allowed.	Must be issued prior to any other references to the data sets. Once issued, the sharer may access the data set until he issues an ERASE or DELETE . The SHARE command places an entry in the sharer's catalog, so that a further CATALOG command is not necessary.
ERASE	The owner may always erase a member (object module) from his job library or erase the entire library. If he erases the job library, the entry in the sharer's catalog is not removed. The sharer(s) must issue a DELETE command to remove the entry from their own catalog.	A sharer may only erase if he has been granted unlimited access. If he then erases an object module, neither the sharer's nor the owner's catalog is affected. If he erases the entire job library, both his catalog entry and the owner's are removed.
DELETE	The owner may delete a library or group of libraries from his catalog. An object module alone cannot be deleted. When the owner deletes a shared job library, the sharer's catalog entry is not removed.	A sharer may delete his catalog entry for a job library without affecting the owner's catalog. The sharer must reissue a SHARE command if he again wants to refer to the data set that was deleted.
CATALOG	The owner may catalog a fully-qualified data set name. If that name is a component of a partially-qualified name that the owner has permitted to be shared, all sharers have immediate access to the newly cataloged data set. If an owner changes the name of a single data set to which he permitted access using a fully-qualified name, each sharer must delete his catalog entry and reissue the SHARE command with the owner's new name.	A sharer that has been granted unlimited access may change or add entries to the owner's catalog. If he is permitted to share a group of data sets, he may catalog a new data set into the group, but he must include as part of the name the partially-qualified name that he used in the SHARE command. If he changes the name of one of the data sets in the group, the new name must still contain the partially-qualified name. A sharer who has been granted unlimited access to an individual data set may never change the data set name.

Appendix D. Interrupt Considerations

This appendix discusses the more common interrupt considerations when programming in TSS. The sections of this appendix discuss:

1. TSS operation when a program interrupt occurs in a program where the programmer does not use the SIR, DIR, and SPEC macros to control interrupts.
2. The effect of an interrupt caused by pushing the attention button at the terminal, and resuming execution following the interrupt.
3. TSS facilities for user-written interrupt handling routines, and considerations for the processing of interrupts.

Program Interrupts

If a program interrupt occurs during program execution and the user has not specified his own interrupt-handling routine for the interrupt type, the interrupt is processed by a system service routine.

A diagnostic message appropriate to the cause of the interrupt and the virtual program status word is issued to the terminal (or in nonconversational mode, is written to SYSOUT) and the task is returned to command mode. In addition to a diagnostic specifying the type of interrupt that has occurred, the user is supplied the following information to locate the source of the interrupt:

```
PSW = xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx. THE INTERRUPT OCCURRED
IN CSECT xxxxxxxx WITH A DISPLACEMENT OF
xxxxxxx FROM THE BEGINNING OF THE CSECT.
```

If the interrupt occurs in a conversational task, an underscore is typed at the terminal requesting that the user enter a command. The user can then use PCS statements for problem investigation.

In a nonconversational task, if a data set has been supplied with a ddname of TSKABEND, this data set becomes the task's new SYSIN. This data set can contain a sequence of PCS commands and statements to obtain a selective dump of the program before terminating the task with a LOGOFF command. If a TSKABEND data set has not been supplied, the task is terminated.

The following table (Table 19) shows each type of program interrupt, and the possible causes for the interrupt.

Table 19. Types of Program Interrupts

TYPE OF INTERRUPT	CAUSE OF INTERRUPT
Operation Code	The operation code is not valid.
Privileged Operation	A privileged instruction has been encountered in a program executing in a nonprivileged state.
Execution	The subject instruction of an Execute (EX) is another Execute.
Protection	The storage key used in an instruction fetch or a data reference does not match the protection key in the PSW.
Addressing	An address specifies a location that has not been allocated to the task's virtual storage.
Specification	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Reference has been made to virtual storage with an address that does not specify an integral boundary for the unit of information. 2. The R_i field of an instruction specifies an odd register address for a pair of general registers that contain a 64-bit operand. 3. A floating-point register other than 0, 2, 4, or 6 has been specified. 4. The multiplier or divisor in decimal arithmetic exceeds 15 digits and sign. 5. The first operand field in a decimal multiply or divide is smaller than or equal to the second operand field.
Data	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The sign or digit codes of operands in decimal arithmetic, editing operations, or Convert to Binary (CVB) are incorrect. 2. Fields in decimal arithmetic overlap incorrectly. 3. The decimal multiplicand has too many high-order significant digits.
Fixed-Point Overflow	A high-order carry has occurred or high-order significant bits have been lost in a fixed-point addition, subtraction, shifting, or sign control operation.
Fixed-Point Divide	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Division by zero has been attempted. 2. The quotient has exceeded the register size in fixed point division. 3. The result of Convert to Binary (CVB) has exceeded 31 bits.
Decimal Overflow	The destination field is too small to contain the result in a decimal operation.
Decimal Divide	The quotient has exceeded the specified data field.
Exponent Overflow	The result characteristic has exceeded 127 in floating-point addition, subtraction, multiplication, or division.
Exponent Underflow	The result characteristic is less than zero in floating-point addition, subtraction, multiplication, or division.
Significance	The result of a floating-point addition or subtraction has an all-zero fraction.
Floating-Point Divide	Division by a floating-point number with a zero fraction has been attempted.

NOTE: Fixed-point overflow, decimal overflow, exponent underflow and significance interrupts can be masked off by setting the appropriate bits in the program mask. Such interrupts are ignored and are not recognized by the system. These interrupts can also be processed by the user with the `SIR`, `DIR`, and `SPEC` macro instructions.

Attention Considerations

Interrupting Execution

When an `ATTENTION` interruption has been encountered in a nonprivileged program, the system will respond with one of the following three characters: `!`, `*`, or `—`. The response character will indicate to the user the situation at the time the interruption occurred. (Note that the user program may have been executing a privileged command string when it was interrupted.) The user may then request a particular system action by issuing the appropriate command or pressing the `ATTENTION` or `RETURN` key. The possible user actions and corresponding system responses are shown in Table 20. If the attention button is pushed while a `PCS DISPLAY` response is being typed on the terminal, it is assumed the user wishes to cancel any further lines from the `DISPLAY` request.

If a user program has invoked a privileged system program (such as the `OPEN` routine) and it is in operation when the attention button is pushed, the interruption is not honored until that program has completed its processing and has returned to the user program. If a user's program is executing, the interruption is honored immediately.

Combining the `PCS STOP` command with an `AT` also produces an interruption. The symbolic location at which execution was stopped is printed at the terminal. To find the location when a program is interrupted by an attention, the user may enter a `STOP` command.

Once the underscore has been typed, the user may enter any commands or `PCS` statements he wishes. He may even `REMOVE` the `PCS` statement that caused the interruption, so no subsequent execution of the instruction will be interrupted.

Levels of Interruption

Whenever a nonprivileged program is interrupted, and another user program is invoked, the status registers and `PSW` of the interrupted program are saved in a system table called the stack table. The interruption may have been an `ATTENTION`, a `PCS AT`, a `CLIC`, `CLIP`, `COMMAND`, `PAUSE`, or `OBEY` macro instruction, or a program interruption. The interrupted program remains active, with its status saved, until such a time

when it again receives control. The `RTRN`, `PUSH`, and `EXIT` commands, issued after an `ATTENTION` interruption, can be used to manipulate the stack table. The function of these commands and the system response are shown in Table 20.

The current level of interruption is an indicator of how much of the stack table is in use. One level is taken whenever a program's status is saved; the level is freed when the interrupted program regains control. A maximum of ten levels are available. The user is at level zero when no program's status is currently being saved. The `STACK` command, issued after an `ATTENTION` interruption, will display the names of all active programs in the stack table in descending order from the currently active down. See *Command System User's Guide* for a more detailed description of these commands.

Resuming Execution

The `GO` command is used to resume execution after an attention interrupt or a `PCS STOP` command. To resume at the point of interruption, a `GO` command is sufficient; however, the user can specify an alternate point at which to resume or restart, using a `BRANCH` command. He might, for example, in a two-phase program, want to skip directly to the second phase to continue processing. The interrupted program should not be unloaded and reloaded as it may not resume execution at all.

Intervention Prevention Switch (IPS)

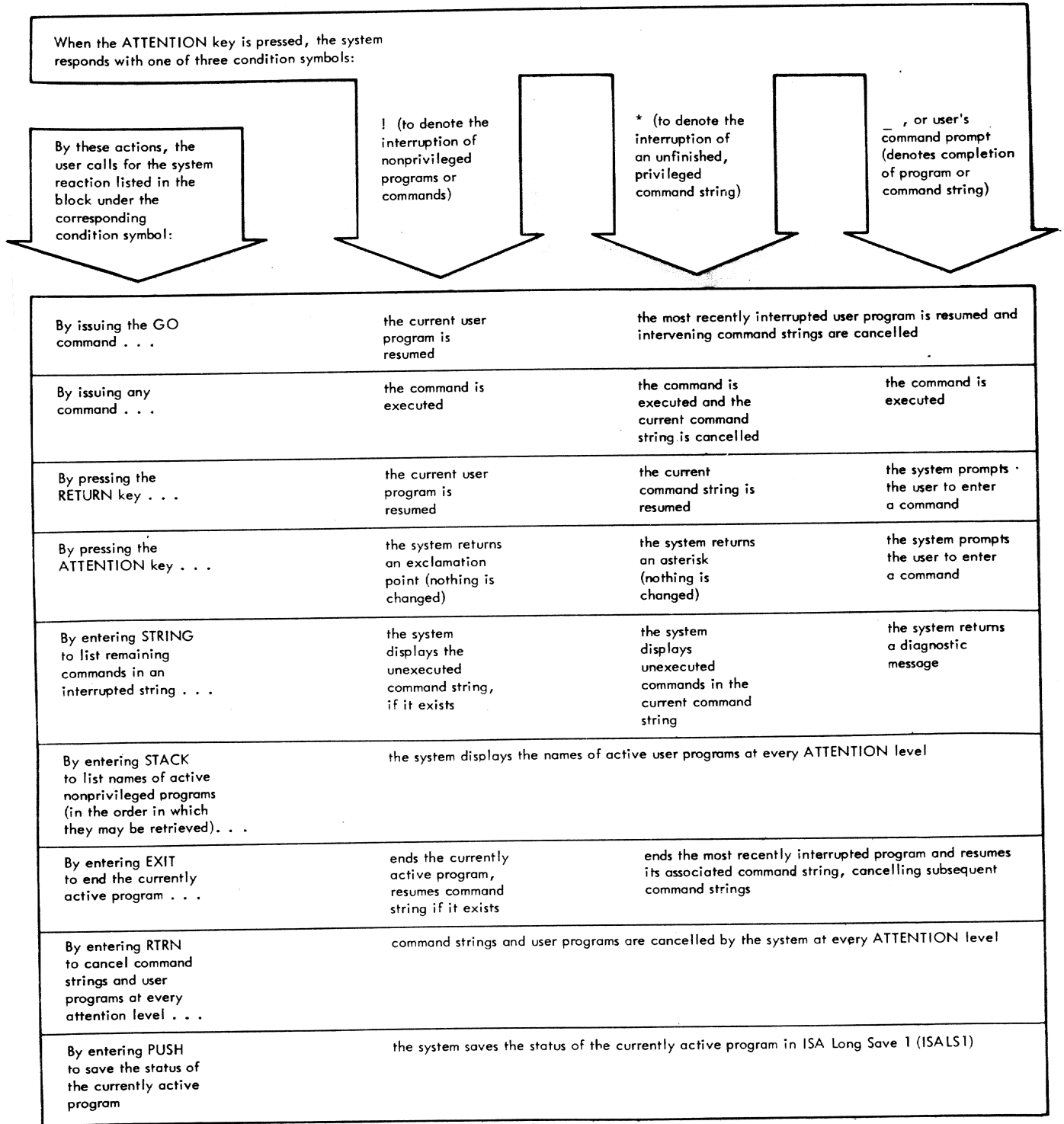
The Intervention Prevention Switch (IPS) may be set by the user to protect a segment of code, preventing the interruption of his program during the execution of that segment. Setting and unsetting the switch is accomplished by means of the following being coded into his program, surrounding the code he wishes protected:

```

L      R5,=V(SYSAAA)
USING CHAAAA,R5
AP     AAAIPC,=P'+1'   Sets the IPS
.
.      (code to be
.      protected)
SP     AAAIPC,=P'+1'   Resets the IPS
EX     AAASW           Passes control
                        to the user
.
.
COPY   CHAAAA         Creates DSECT
                        for symbols

```

Table 20. Responding to Attention Interruptions



Where the IPS has been set and the user hits the attention key, an exclamation point will be printed out at his terminal. However, control will be passed to the user only after the EX AAASW instruction has been processed. If no interrupt has occurred preceding this instruction, it will be treated as a no-op and execution will proceed normally.

If the user wishes to ignore the setting of the IPS, he may do so by causing a second attention interrupt. The second attention overrides the IPS setting and causes the terminal to be opened.

Writing Interrupt-Handling Programs

Time Sharing System provides facilities to enable the user to write his own interrupt-handling programs. Interrupt-handling consists of responding to task interrupts. Significant features of the interrupt-handling facility are priority interrupt control and interrupt delay, both of which are discussed below.

Refer to the publication *Assembler User's Macro Instructions* for a detailed description of each interrupt macro instruction.

There are six types of task interrupts: program, supervisor call, external, asynchronous, timer, and input/output.

The problem programmer may decide how to respond to any of the six types of interrupts or he may elect to ignore certain interrupts.

This section discusses:

- How to establish an interrupt handling routine.
- Processing the interrupt.
- An illustration of the sequence of events as might occur when a user specifies interrupt-handling routines utilizing all of the facilities of TSS interrupt management.

Establishing Interrupt Routines

When a user wishes to provide an interrupt-handling routine to service any of the possible task interrupts, he must specify to the system the conditions for servicing an interrupt and the points at which he wishes to activate and deactivate his interrupt-handling routine.

The Specify Entry Condition macro instructions define Interrupt Control Blocks (ICBs) which specify what task interrupts are to be processed, under what conditions the user's interrupt routine is to be entered, and the entry point address of the user's interrupt routine. The following Specify Entry Condition macro instructions are available:

- SPEC—Program interrupts
- SSEC—Supervisor calls (svcs)
- SEEC—External interrupts
- SAEC—Asynchronous interrupts (attention key)
- STEC—Timer interrupts
- SIEC—Synchronous I/O interrupts

When the normal L-type form of the macro instruction is written, no linkage is performed. The interrupt control block is built and the name included on the Specify Entry Condition macro instruction becomes the name of the ICB. This name is referred to in the SIR and DIR (Specify and Delete Interrupt Routines) macro instructions. The E-type form of the macro instruction may be used in-line to modify the contents of an already existing ICB.

Along with the macro instruction specifying the entry condition, the user must reserve 16 bytes of storage for a communication area (COMAREA). This area is used to communicate with the interrupt-handling routine and, upon interrupt, will describe the conditions causing the interrupt.

The SIR macro instruction makes the interrupt routine specified by the ICB address available and sets its priority. Any user interrupt routine can be made unavailable by the DIR macro instruction. Another SIR macro instruction will make the interrupt routine available again.

It should be noted that if the SAEC macro instruction is used to get control for interrupts from the attention key, the USATT macro instruction must be issued after the SIR macro instruction. This will cause control for attention interrupts to be taken away from the system and given to the user-designated routine. Likewise, the CLATT macro instruction should be issued before the DIR macro instruction when making the attention interrupt handling routine unavailable. This returns control of attention interrupts to the system. The DCB parameter required for the SAEC macro instruction to be used for attention is the system symbol SYSINDCB. An EXTRN statement must also be included for SYSINDCB.

Processing an Interrupt

When an interrupt occurs, an exit is taken from the interrupted routine and control is passed to the entry point of the user-specified interrupt routine. Information identifying the type of interrupt that occurs is made available in a communication area (COMAREA). Using this information, the interrupt routine written by the user can perform any calculations necessary, including issuing input/output macro instructions if the user should wish to do so, and whatever else is necessary to respond to the interrupt. The INTINQ macro instruction may be issued in the interrupt routine. Issuing a RETURN macro instruction causes control to be returned to the interrupted routine at the instruction following that which caused the interrupt, or to another enqueued interrupt routine.

If interrupts are not disabled by an SAI macro instruction, higher-priority interrupts will interrupt a routine of lower priority. If more than one interrupt-handling routine is defined with the same priority and

for the same type of interrupt, the interrupt-handling routine associated with the first issued `SIR` macro instruction will take precedence.

Upon entry to an interrupt handling routine, register contents are as described below. See Figure 37 for a description of the items referred to below.

An interrupt-handling routine should be coded with normal type I linkage conventions. Figure 38 illustrates the interrupt control block format. On entry to the interrupt-handling routine, although it is not necessary to save the contents of the general registers, if a `SAVE` is issued, the registers will be saved in an area provided by the system and pointed to by register 13. Register 14, however, should always be saved if it is going to be changed in the interrupt routine, and restored prior to the `RETURN`.

REGISTER	CONTENTS
0	Address of a save area. This save area contains information on the condition of the interrupted program, including the contents of all registers at the time of the interrupt. The interrupt routine can use this area to change the return point to the interrupted program (old VPSW), or the contents of any of the other registers.
1	Address of the appropriate ICB whose first word contains the address of the <code>COMAREA</code> , and whose second word contains the address, if applicable, of the associated <code>DCB</code> .
2-12	Same as at the time of interrupt.
13	Address of the register save area to be used by the interrupt handling routine. The 19th word of this save area contains the location of the interrupt routine's <code>PSECT</code> .
14	Address of the location in the control program to which control will be returned after execution of the interrupt routine. If this is changed by the interrupt handling routine, it must be reset before the <code>RETURN</code> .
15	Address of the entry point of the interrupt handling routine. (This register can be used to provide addressability.)

It is important to remember that, on return to the interrupted routine, *all* general and floating-point registers will be restored to the contents as stored in the area pointed to by register zero. To illustrate, if an interrupt-handling routine is to set a particular value in general register 7, the interrupt routine must store that value into the appropriate word (in this case, 48 bytes) beyond the address supplied in register zero. Note that since register zero cannot be used as a base register, that address must first be transferred to a valid base register.

On a normal return from an interrupt-handling routine, once any queued interrupts have been serviced, execution resumes in the interrupted routine at the instruction following the point of interruption. If the user wishes to modify this return point, he must modify the old `vpsw` located in the area pointed to by register

zero. The address of the desired return point should be stored in the second word of the double-word `vpsw`. The condition code and program mask in the first word

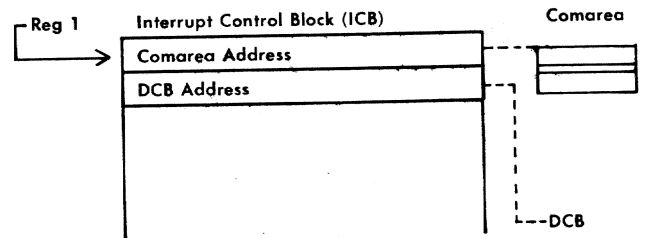
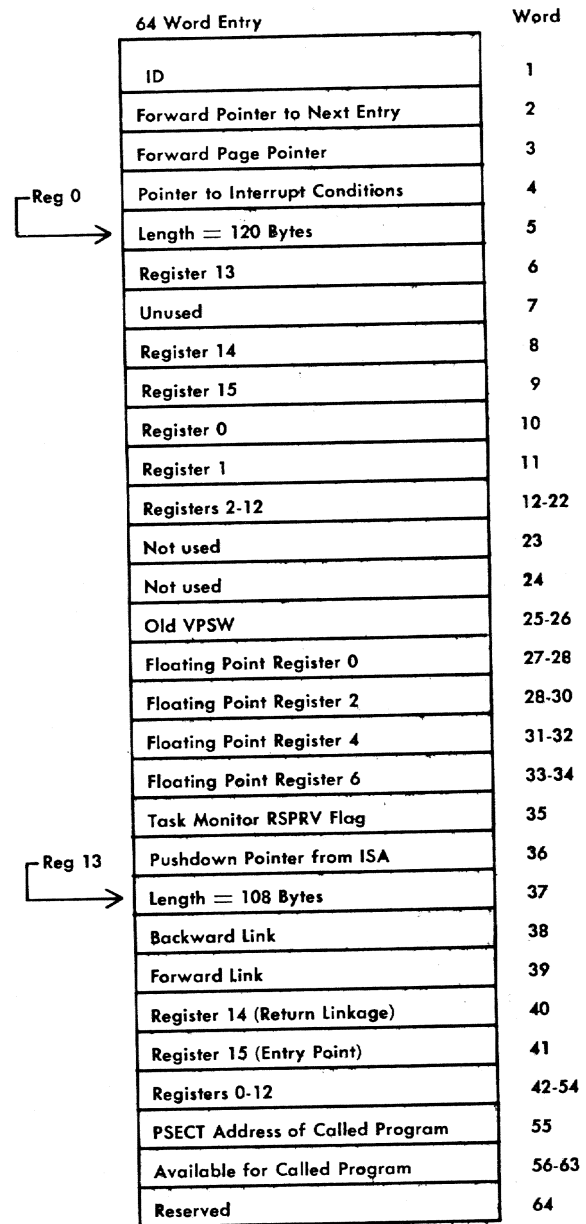


Figure 37. Information Available Upon Entry to an Interrupt Routine

of the vpsw may also be modified if desired. The format of the vpsw is given in Figure 39 for reference. Note that the preceding procedures apply to non-privileged interruption-handling routines only. For a description of privileged interruption-handling procedures, see the *System Programmer's Guide*.

Interrupt delay is accomplished through the SAI and RAE macro instructions, which allow the user to inhibit or permit further interrupts while his interrupt handling routine is in control. The SAI macro instruction delays interrupts to the task. These interrupts are not lost, they are queued up in the supervisor. The RAE macro instruction permits interrupts to the task (including those that were queued while the SAI was in effect).

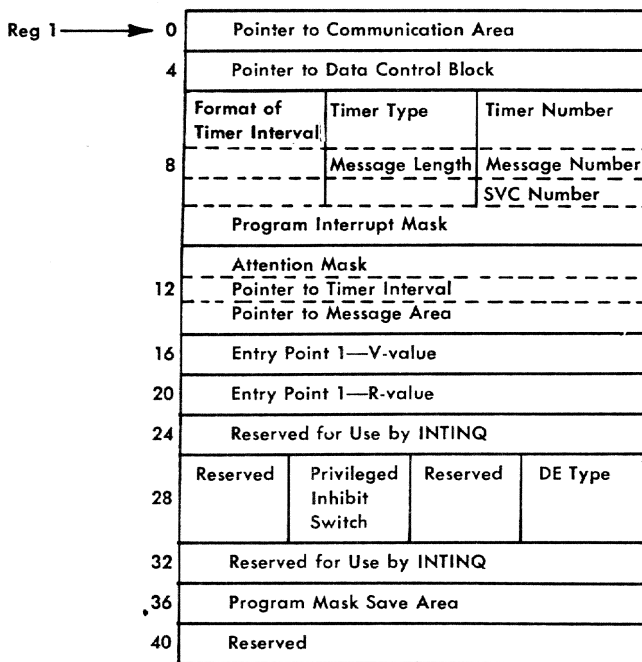


Figure 38. Interrupt Control Block (ICB) Format

The INTINQ macro instruction allows the user's interrupt-handling routine to optionally:

1. Relinquish control until a specified interrupt occurs (MODE=R).
2. Enter a wait-state until a specified interrupt occurs (MODE=W).
3. Branch conditionally, depending on whether a specified interrupt has occurred (MODE=C); if the interrupt has occurred, it is dequeued.
4. Delete pending interrupts (MODE=CLEAR).

Figure 40 illustrates the use of all the interrupt-handling facilities. The circled numbers in Figure 40 are explained below. The example shows the logical sequence of events as might occur in a situation where

three interrupt routines are specified, two with equal priority.

In the PSECT of this program, the following instructions are written:

```
ICB1      SxEC      EP=ROUTINE1,COMAREA=CA1,
           INTTYP=...
ICB2      SxEC      EP=ROUTINE2,COMAREA=CA2,
           INTTYP=...
ICB3      SxEC      EP=ROUTINE3,COMAREA=CA3,
           INTTYP=...
CA1       DS        4F    COMMUNICATION AREA 1
CA2       DS        4F    COMMUNICATION AREA 2
CA3       DS        4F    COMMUNICATION AREA 3
```

Note that in this illustration the second digit of the Specify Entry Condition macro instruction (shown as x), having no significance in the example, is not filled in. Also, the interrupt type is not specified since this parameter varies with the particular macro instruction.

1. In the main routine the user has activated interrupt-handling routines under the conditions described in the Specify Entry Condition macro instructions. Assuming that the third SIR specifies the same group of interrupts as the second SIR, the third has an implied priority over the second.
2. An interrupt of the type first specified occurs in the main routine. The system, recognizing that a user's interrupt-handling routine has been specified:
 - a. Saves the general and floating point registers in the supervisor area (setting register zero appropriately).
 - b. Saves the interrupt information in the indicated communication area (setting register one to the ICB, the first word of which contains the address of the communication area).
 - c. Sets register 13 to a standard TSS save area in which the address of the PSECT of the interrupt-handling routine has been stored in the 19th word.
 - d. Sets register 15 to the entry point of the interrupt-handling routine, and register 14 to the address (in the system) to which the interrupt routine should return.
3. The user issues a SAI macro instruction. With this instruction, the user requests that further interrupts of any type be delayed (enqueued) until this interrupt-handling routine re-enables them.
4. When the interrupt specified by the second SIR macro instruction occurs, it is not honored immediately because of the previously issued SAI. Instead, it is enqueued by the system and will be honored when the user's interrupt routine issues a RAE or returns. The interrupt may, in fact, never be honored if an INTINQ dequeues it.

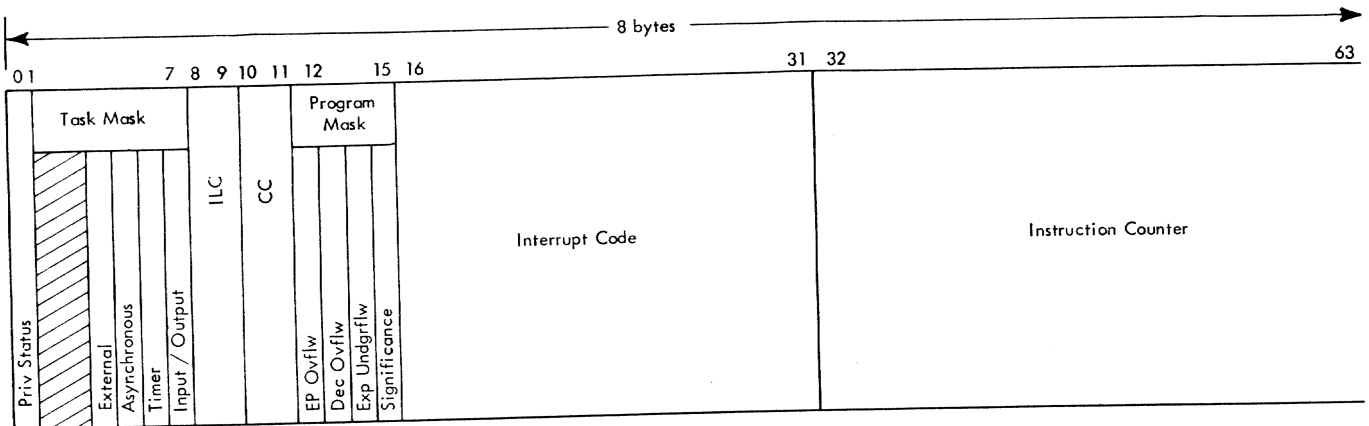


Figure 39. Virtual Program Status Word (VPSW)

5. This interrupt is treated the same as the interrupt at 4, except that its priority being higher will cause it to be honored before 4, unless it is dequeued.
6. This macro requests that the system examine the ICB for the interrupt types specified. If an interrupt of the type is queued, the branch will be performed. If it is not, execution will continue with the next sequential instruction. When the interrupt is found to be queued, and the branch is taken, the interrupt is then removed from the queue.
7. When the RAE macro instruction is issued, all interrupts that have been enqueued since the SAI are honored. In this case, since interrupt 2 was dequeued by the INTINQ macro instruction, the only enqueued interrupt in the list is interrupt 3. When the interrupt 3 routine returns control (to the next sequential instruction beyond the RAE in the main routine), the main routine then returns. The system then resets the general and floating-point registers to the contents of the saved area (as pointed to by register zero on entry) and resumes execution at the location specified in the old vpsw.

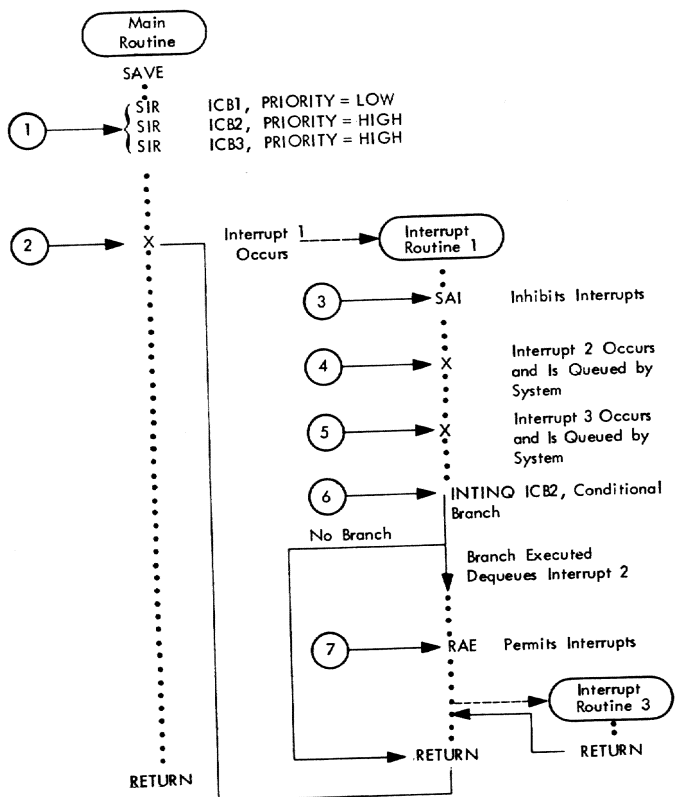


Figure 40. Illustration of Interrupts Being Serviced

This appendix discusses use of the DDEF command (Figure 41) and includes the following topics:

- Preparing a DDEF for a new data set (Table 21)
- Preparing a DDEF for an existing data set (Table 22)
- Specifying DCB parameters in a DDEF command (Table 23)
- DDEF and data set organization requirements for language processing
- DDEF and data set organization requirements for commands (Table 24)
- SECURE command requirements for non-conversational tasks
- DDEF considerations for multiple executions in the same session

The purpose of the DDEF command is to allow the user to specify those data sets that are to be created or processed during the execution of his program or the commands he has issued. The DDEF command:

- Associates a DCB with a named data set—the ddname appears in both a DCB and a DDEF.
- Names the data set to be created or processed—DSNAME parameter
- Requests, when necessary, device and device space allocation and volume mounting—UNIT, SPACE, and VOLUME parameters.
- Defines labeling conventions to be used and certain label information if desired—LABEL parameter
- Declares the disposition of the data set (i.e., whether a new data set is to be created or an existing one is to be processed)—DISP parameter
- Allows declaration of data set attributes and characteristics—DSORG and DCB parameters

The DDEF command (or macro instruction) causes the parameters included therein to be recorded in an entry in a table known as the Task Data Definition Table (TDT), which is maintained by the system. This table is not of concern to the user; it is described here only as an aid to understanding the functions of the DDEF command. Each entry is the result of one DDEF command or macro instruction and is identified by the ddname which appeared in that command or macro instruction.

The complete DDEF command is shown in Figure 41. For clarity, the DCB parameter, with all possible sub-operands is shown separately.

The system locates data set characteristics and attributes by searching the TDT for an entry with the same ddname as appears in the data control block (DCB) specified in the user's program (or system routine).

The TDT is discarded each time a session is completed (i.e., log-off time). Hence, a DDEF command must be given for each data set to be processed in every session. For some data sets, the system itself effectively issues the necessary DDEF (see Table 24).

All VAM data sets are *automatically cataloged* when they are created. SAM data sets must be cataloged by the user, using the CATALOG command (or macro). When the user issues a CATALOG command naming a data set for which a DDEF has been given in the current session, label, organization, unit, and volume information from the TDT entry are recorded in the system catalog. A subsequent DDEF command which names that cataloged data set is significantly simpler, since the system will automatically extract that information from the catalog and place it in the TDT entry being built; i.e., for cataloged data sets, the user does not respecify in the DDEF the information that is already in the catalog.

When the data set is written, some of its attributes (e.g., record length (LRECL), record type (RECFM), etc.) are recorded in the data set control block (DSCB) on direct access devices or in the tape label. The system will also extract this information from the DSCB or label when an existing data set is being processed; hence, the user does not respecify that information in a DDEF command or within a DCB within his program (except for ASCII tapes).

There are three points to consider in providing DDEF commands:

1. For a new data set (and for *all* ASCII tapes), the user must supply all characteristics and attributes, or specify only those required and rely upon system-assigned defaults for the remainder.
2. For an existing data set, the user should specify only that information not recorded in the DSCB or label.
3. Further, if the existing data set is cataloged, the user should not specify information already in the catalog.

The following general guidelines and Tables 21 and 22 provide information for the proper use of the DDEF command (or macro instruction).

1. If a DCB is opened (OPEN macro instruction) and no DDEF with the same ddname has previously been issued and:

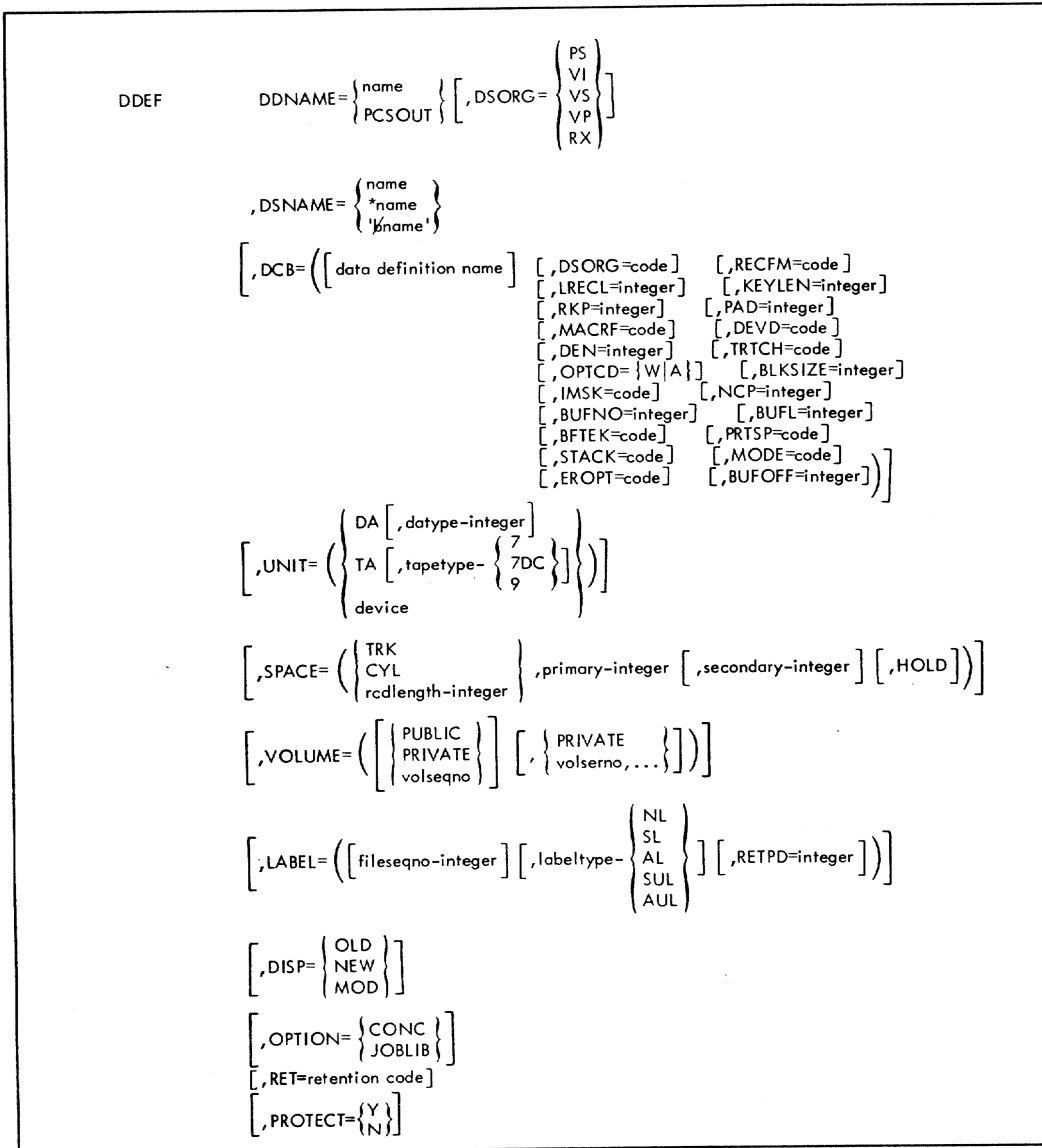


Figure 41. The DDEF Command

- a. the session is conversational, the user will be prompted for *all* parameters specifiable in the DDEF command.
- b. the session is nonconversational, the session will be terminated.
2. More than one DDEF cannot be issued for the same ddname *unless* it specifies concatenation (OPTION=CONC) of existing physical sequential (PS) data sets.
3. A data set cannot be referred to by more than one ddname at a time. If a second DDEF specifies a different ddname for a data set, the ddname given in the earlier DDEF will simply be replaced. This is true even if the DSNAME parameter specifies different member names of the same partitioned data set.
4. With the exception of IOREQ, a data set created with one access method cannot be processed with a different access method. vs data sets cannot be read with vi techniques, vi cannot be read with vs, etc.
5. The SPACE parameters should be specified for all new data sets on direct access devices unless the installation-assigned defaults are satisfactory. The HOLD sub-parameter should not be specified unless the data set is to be extended or modified. The DSCB maintains secondary space allocation specification from the DDEF issued when the data set was created, thereby obviating the need to specify this parameter when extending an existing direct access data set.

6. When creating private volume data sets, the system will assign the volume to be used if the volume specification is `VOLUME=(PRIVATE)`.
7. If no labels (`LABEL=(,NL)`) are specified for a tape data set, the data set must *not* contain a header label recognizable by TSS.
8. For a cataloged data set, if `SPACE`, `UNIT`, `LABEL`, or `VOLUME` operands are entered, diagnostics will be displayed as appropriate. However, the associated fields will be taken correctly from the existing catalog entry.
9. When a module has been loaded from the wrong library, the incorrect version of the module must be unloaded, a `DDEF` or `RELEASE` issued for the job library affected, and a `LOAD` or `CALL` issued for the correct version.
10. When defining an ASCII tape, the `DDEF` command (or macro instruction) must *always* be used to supply all necessary DCB information; there is no other source for this information. ASCII tapes cannot be cataloged.

Table 21. Form of DDEF for New Data Sets

OPERANDS	WHEN APPLICABLE						COMMENTS
	VAM				BSAM OR QASM		
	Public		Private		Private		
	USERLIB	JOBLIB	USERLIB	JOBLIB	DISK	TAPE	
<code>DDNAME=</code> data definition name	X	X	X	X	X	X	1-8 characters (1st alphabetic); cannot begin with SYS; must be same as DDNAME in macro instruction.
<code>[,DSORG=</code> data set organization]	VS VI VP	VP	VS VI VP	VP	PS	PS	
<code>,DSNAME=</code> symbol	X	X	X	X	X	X	Maximum of 35 characters (18 qualifiers).
<code>[,DCB=(,...)]</code> $\left[\text{UNIT} = \left(\left(\begin{matrix} \text{DA} \\ \text{TA}[\text{,tape type}] \\ \text{device} \end{matrix} \right) \left(\begin{matrix} \{,3330\} \\ \{,333B\} \\ \{,2311\} \\ \{,2314\} \end{matrix} \right) \right) \right]$	•		•		•	•	Must specify for new VAM data set on private volume and uncataloged physical sequential data set. If nonconversational, obtain devices with SECURE command.
<code>[,SPACE=</code> $\left(\left(\begin{matrix} \text{TRK} \\ \text{CYL} \\ \text{record} \\ \text{length} \end{matrix} \right) \left(\begin{matrix} \text{primary} \\ \text{[secondary]} \\ \text{[HOLD]} \end{matrix} \right) \right)$	X X X	X X X	X X X	X X X	X X X	X X X	
<code>[,VOLUME=</code> $\left(\left(\begin{matrix} \text{PUBLIC} \\ \text{PRIVATE} \end{matrix} \right) \left(\begin{matrix} \text{volseqno} \\ \text{PRIVATE} \\ \text{volserno,...} \\ \text{fileseqno-integer} \end{matrix} \right) \right)$	X X	X X	X X	X X	X X	X X	In nonconversational, use SECURE command to obtain private volumes.
<code>[,LABEL=</code> $\left(\left(\begin{matrix} \text{label-type} \\ \text{[RETPD=integer]} \end{matrix} \right) \left(\begin{matrix} \text{NL} \\ \text{SL} \\ \text{AL} \\ \text{SUL} \\ \text{AUL} \end{matrix} \right) \right)$	X X	X X	X X	X X	X X X X	X X X X	Must be specified for ASCII tapes.
<code>[,DISP=NEW]</code>	X X	X X	X X	X X	X X	X X	Data sets are defaulted to existence: if cataloged, OLD is assumed; if uncataloged, NEW is assumed.
<code>[,OPTION=JOBLIB]</code> <code>[,RET=</code> codes]	X	X	X	X			
<code>[,PROTECT=</code> $\left\{ \begin{matrix} \text{Y} \\ \text{N} \end{matrix} \right\}$						X X	Defaulted to N

* See Table 23
 ** Must be specified here

Forms of the DDEF Command

Tables 21 and 22 specify all allowable forms of the DDEF command (excluding DCB parameters) for new and existing data sets, respectively, where the data set organization is vs, vi, vp, or ps. Standard TSS meta-language notation (as described in the Command System User's Guide) is used. The first column specifies the general structure of each parameter, including whether parentheses are to be entered or not and the exact entry for providing default (or specification omission) entries. IBM-assigned defaults are underlined and may be selected by omission of specification in the DDEF command.

DCB Parameter Specification

It is not required that DCB information be specified in the DDEF command (except for ASCII tapes, where it is *always* required). It is, however, sometimes desirable to code a general-purpose program for which the at-

tributes of the data set(s) to be processed are not known or not specified at assembly time in DCB macro instructions. In this case, these parameters may be supplied dynamically (i.e., without program reassembly) from the DCB information maintained in DSCBS, data set labels, and DCB subparameters specified in the DDEF command.

If a field has been specified in the DCB at assembly time or by the user's program prior to OPEN, it will not be modified by the system if a later specification for the same field is given; e.g., if there were a LRECL (logical record length) specification in the DDEF command as a DCB subparameter and the DCB also contained an LRECL specification at assembly time, the DDEF specification would be ignored. Any field supplied dynamically by the system is reset when the DCB is closed. This permits successive dynamic DCB parameter specification between successive OPEN-CLOSE executions.

Information is used or filled into a user's DCB at OPEN time in the following order:

Table 23. Use of DCB Parameters in the DDEF Command

DCB OPERAND	SPECIFIES	APPLICABLE DSORG					IF DISP=OLD WILL BE FILLED FROM	
		VS	VI	VP	PS	RX	CATALOG	DSCB OR LABEL
DSORG	data set organization	x	x	x	x	x	x	VIP/VSP
RECFM	record format	x	x	x	x			x
LRECL	logical record length	x	x	x	x			x
KEYLEN	key length		x	VIP	x			x
RKP	key position		x	VIP				
PAD	space to be left on each page of VI(VIP) data set for subsequent insertions		x	VIP				x
MACRF	type of macro instructions used				x		x	
DEV D	device type				x		x	
DEN	tape density				x		x	
TRTCH	data conv, parity, translation				x		x	
OPTCD	write check or ASCII tape				x		x	x
BLKSIZE	maximum block length				x		x	x
IMSK	error recovery procedures				x	x	x	
NCP	number of consecutive READ, WRITE or IOREQ macro instructions issued before CHECK				x	x	x	
BUFNO	no. of buffers				x		x	
BUFL	buffer length				x		x	
BFTEK	buffer technique						x	
PRTSP	print spacing						x	
STACK	stacker selection						x	
MODE	mode of operation						x	
EROPT	error option						x	
BUFOFF	buffer offset				x			

1. DCB macro instruction assembly time specification
2. User's program prior to OPEN (can modify above)
3. TDT entry containing DDEF and catalog information
4. DSCB or data set label (existing data sets only)

The DCB parameters applicable to each data set organization and which are recorded in the system catalog or in a DSCB or data set label are shown in Table 23. Refer to the publication *Assembler User Macro Instructions* for the actual parameter specifications.

Data Set Definition Rules for Language Processing

No DDEF command is required to define the source and listing data sets, or the object modules, used in language processing. The DDEF command is required when the job library that is to receive the object module is not the library at the top of the program library list; that job library must be defined. Each library referred to by INCLUDE statements (except USERLIB), and each job library used by automatic call, must also be defined by a DDEF command.

Data Set Definition Rules for TSS Commands

Table 24 provides information relating to the structure of and DDEF requirements for data sets processed by TSS commands.

Secure Requirements for Nonconversational Tasks

Nonconversational tasks are enqueued until the system is able to fill the requirements for private devices. The list of requirements is made available to the system

by means of a SECURE command, which the user must include in the task's command procedure as the first command after LOGON. Then, as each DDEF command is read and processed, the required devices are allocated from those that have been reserved for the nonconversational task. Any attempt to allocate more than have been secured causes the task to be terminated.

In determining the number of devices needed in a task, the following points should be considered:

- The number of devices should be at least equivalent to the number of data sets on different private volumes that are opened at any one time. Two or more data sets residing on the same private volume may require only one device (the exception is described below).
- If two different data sets are referred to in sequence (i.e., the first is closed before the second is opened) the system can be directed to allocate the same device to both by including the UNIT=AFF option in the second DDEF along with the ddname of the first DDEF. When the UNIT=AFF option is selected, the device types of both data sets must be compatible and neither should be a new data set residing on a direct access device. If several data sets are to be serially processed with unit affinity specified, each data set may have unit affinity with only the most recently processed data set. Note that unit affinity may only be specified for physical sequential data sets.
- If two different data sets on private volumes are referred to by the same ddname, the UNIT=AFF option cannot be selected. Since the first DDEF must be released prior to the second DDEF, two devices

Table 24. Data Set Definition Requirements for Commands

COMMAND	RELATED DATA SETS	DSORG	DATA SET DEFINITION
BACK	New SYSIN data set that is to control completion of this task in nonconversational mode.	VS, VI	New SYSIN data set must be cataloged, or defined by previous DDEF command in conversational portion of this task.
BUILTIN	USERLIB or a virtual partitioned data set specified by DSNAME will contain a member named SYSPRO.	VP	Virtual partitioned data set does not have to be defined or cataloged when BUILTIN command is issued.
	Virtual partitioned data set must contain an object module with entry point named by EXTNAME operand.	VP	Virtual partitioned data set must be in user's program library hierarchy when command defined by BUILTIN is issued. (DDEF with OPTION=JOB-LIB)
CATALOG	Data set to be cataloged.	PS	Data set to be cataloged must be defined by previous DDEF command in this task, unless UPDATE option specified.
CDD	Data set containing only DDEF commands.	VI	Data set must be cataloged, or defined in current task.

Table 24. Data Set Definition Requirements for Commands (Continued)

COMMAND	RELATED DATA SETS	DSORG	DATA SET DEFINITION
CDS	Data set to be copied.	Any except RX (for user-controlled physical I/O with private devices)	Data set to be copied must be cataloged or defined by previous DDEF command in this task.
	Copy data set.	Any except RX (for user-controlled physical I/O with private devices)	VAM—does not have to be defined or cataloged. PS—should be cataloged or defined to insure proper volume and unit.
CLOSE	Data set to be closed.	any	Data set to be closed must be defined by previous DDEF command in this task.
DATA ¹	Data set to be entered.	VS, VI	No DDEF command is required if the data set is to reside on public storage; data follows this command in input stream. If the data set is to reside on private storage a DDEF must be issued before the command.
DEFAULT	User profile data set in USERLIB.	VP	Data set must be defined in current task.
DELETE	Data set whose name is to be removed from catalog.	any	No DDEF command required for this command.
DSS?	Data sets whose status is desired.	any	Each data set whose status is to be presented must be cataloged; no DDEF command required for this command.
DUMP	Data set to be printed as a result of program control command DUMP.	VI	DDEF command whose ddname is PCSOUT must be defined prior to execution of DUMP command.
EDIT ²	Data set to be processed by the Text Editor.	VI	Data set must be cataloged, or defined in current task. This is done automatically.
END ²	Data set being processed by the Text Editor, or indicates PROCDEF command completion.	VI	No DDEF command required for this command.
ERASE	Data set to be erased.	VS, VI, VP	Data set to be erased must be cataloged.
EVV	Private data sets whose names are to be entered in catalog.	VS, VI, VP	No DDEF command required for this command.
EXECUTE	SYSIN data set for nonconversational task set up by this command.	VS, VI	Data set must be cataloged; no DDEF command required by this command.
KEYWORD	SYSPRO data set in USERLIB, SYS-PRO data set in SYSLIB.	VIP	Data set must be defined in current task.
LINE?	Line data set containing lines to be presented.	VI	Line data set must be cataloged or defined by previous DDEF command in this task.

¹ If the DATA command was used to create the data set within the current task, then the data set is defined as if a DDEF command had been issued by the user directly. If the data set is also VAM organized and resides in public storage, it is automatically cataloged.

² These are the basic directive commands of the Text Editor. See *Command System User's Guide* for details concerning the data manipulation commands of this facility.

Table 24. Data Set Definition Requirements for Commands (Continued)

COMMAND	RELATED DATA SETS	DSORG	DATA SET DEFINITION
LOAD FTN ASM LNK PLI User-written program	Object module to be loaded.	VP	Object module to be loaded is identified by external name specified in this command; it must be in a library in the current program library list.
MCAST	User profile data set in USERLIB, session profile in task virtual memory.	VP, VSP	Data set must be defined in current task.
MCASTAB	User profile data set in USERLIB, session profile in task virtual memory.	VP, VSP	Data set must be defined in current task.
MODIFY	Data set to be changed.	VI	Data set must be cataloged or defined by previous DDEF command in this task.
PC?	Data set whose status is required.	any	Each data set whose status is to be presented must be cataloged; no DDEF command required for this command.
PERMIT	Data sets for which sharing is permitted.	any	Data sets for which sharing is permitted must be cataloged; no DDEF command required for this command.
POD?	Virtual partitioned data set for which information about its members is given.	VP	Virtual partitioned data set must be cataloged, or defined by previous DDEF command in this task.
PRINT	Data set to be printed.	PS, VS, VI	Data set must be cataloged or defined by previous DDEF command in this task. A previous DDEF required for unlabeled tapes.
PROCDEF	USERLIB or virtual partitioned data set named by DSNAME will have a SYSPRO member created to contain procedure definition.	VP	Virtual partitioned data set does not have to be defined or cataloged.
PROFILE	User profile data set in USERLIB, session profile in task virtual memory.	VP	Data sets must be defined in current task.
PUNCH	Data set to be punched on cards.	VS, VI	Data set must be cataloged or be defined by previous DDEF command in this task.
REGION ¹	Data set to be processed by the Text Editor.	VI	Data set must be cataloged, or defined in current task.
RELEASE	Data set to be released.	any	Data set to be released must be defined in previous DDEF command in this task.
RET	VAM data set whose data set descriptor is to be changed.	VS, VI, VP	Data set must be cataloged.
SHARE	Data sets for which sharing is requested.	any	Data sets for which sharing is requested must be cataloged; no DDEF command required by this command.
SYNONYM	User profile data set in USERLIB, session profile in task virtual storage.	VP	Data sets must be defined in current task.
TV	Physical sequential data set (from a VT operation) to be written on a VAM volume.	PS	Data set (input) must be cataloged or defined in current task.
VT	VAM data set to be copied to magnetic tape as a physical sequential data set.	VS, VI, VP	Data set (input) must be cataloged or defined in current task.
VV	VAM data set to be copied into direct access storage.	VS, VI, VP	Data set (input) must be cataloged or defined in current task.
WT	Data set to be recorded on magnetic tape in print format.	VS, VI	Data set must be cataloged or defined by previous DDEF command in this task.

¹ These are the basic directive commands of the Text Editor. See *Command System User's Guide* for details concerning the data manipulation commands of this facility.

must be secured for the data sets even though both data sets are not open at the same time. Since the ddname must be unique in each DDEF, the first data set must be released prior to the second DDEF. Therefore, two devices are necessary since the RELEASE command removes the device from the task's allocation prior to the second DDEF command.

Data Definition Considerations for Multiple Executions in the Same Session

A DDEF command provides the linkage between the ddname used in the source program DCB and the actual physical data set. Once a DDEF has been entered, it remains in effect until log-off time, unless the definition is released or redefined.

If two programs are executed in succession, the following conditions could arise:

1. Both programs refer to the same data set with the same ddname. One DDEF command issued prior to the execution of the first program is sufficient for both executions if the data set is read in both programs or written in the first and read in the second. If, however, the data set is written in both programs, the data is not automatically concatenated. Data written in the first execution would be written over in the second execution. If the user does not wish this to occur, he must take the steps outlined in 3.

2. Both programs refer to the same data set with different ddnames. Each execution must be preceded by a DDEF command giving the ddname as appropriate for the execution. Since the second DDEF will contain the same DSNAME as the first, effectively redefining it, the first definition need not be released.
3. Each program refers to a different data set with the same ddname. Each execution must be preceded by a DDEF command giving the DSNAME for the ddname. In addition, since the second DDEF has the same ddname, the first definition must be released prior to the second DDEF. When a data set on a private volume is released, the input/output device is also released unless another defined data set resides on that same volume. In a nonconversational task, if a device is freed by a RELEASE command, the user must account for this when specifying the SECURE command. For example, if two programs read different data sets on separate private volumes and both are referred to by the same ddname, the following procedure is necessary:

- | | |
|------------|---|
| a. SECURE | Two devices—even though only one device is needed at any one time |
| b. DDEF | For first data set |
| c. CALL | First execution |
| d. RELEASE | First data set |
| e. DDEF | For second data set |
| f. CALL | Second execution |

Appendix F. User Defined Procedures

This appendix will depict representative uses of the Procedure Definition (`PROCDEF`), `BUILTIN`, and the User Profile. These facilities all enable the user to tailor his task to special situations, while still retaining the generalized scope provided by the system-supplied commands. *Command System User's Guide* is the primary source for explanation of these user-created procedures.

Procedure Definition (`PROCDEF`)

The `PROCDEF` command defines a command procedure which consists of other commands. When issuing `PROCDEF`, the user must specify the name to be assigned to the user-written command procedure. The system then prompts the user to enter his first line by issuing the line number 100. If the user wants to build his command procedure so that he can substitute values for the operands in the created procedure, the `PARAM` line should be incorporated. Without the `PARAM` line, the procedure remains fixed, as defined, with no adjustment of operand values possible at execution time. These dummy operands that comprise the `PARAM` line may be both keyword and positionally specified (see Example 1 in this appendix).

Entering Procedure Text

After `PROCDEF` is issued (optionally using the `PARAM` line) all subsequent lines issued without a single preceding break character (`_`) will be included in the procedure text. The system prompts for each line with a line number, and there is no apparent limit on the number of lines the user may enter.

The user may enter system-supplied commands (including `PROCDEF` and/or `BUILTIN` commands) or other user-created commands. The commands entered need not include all of the operands normally associated with them, but only those necessary for the successful performance of the functions requested. These operands may be indicated as variable (dummy names within a `PARAM` line) or may be fixed with explicit values. Fixed operand values are not included in the `PARAM` line, and therefore will be executed *exactly* as given in the text when the procedure is called.

A direct call to a language processor-produced object module may be produced by entering the name of the module in the procedure text.

Commands preceded by a break character (e.g., `_END`) are executed immediately and do not become part of the procedure text.

NOTE: To insert a command requiring a break character for execution (e.g., `LIST` in the text editor context) during `PROCDEF` generation, use two break characters to insure that one will appear with the command in the `PROCDEF`.

Terminating Procedure Definition

The user terminates `PROCDEF` processing by entering a break character followed by any *one* of these items: an `END` command, an `EDIT` command, another `PROCDEF` command. When the user enters another `PROCDEF` command, the same options for terminating its processing are available. Eventually, the last `PROCDEF` desired will have to be terminated with either an `END` or an `EDIT` command.

Nested Procedure Definitions

The text of a procedure, defined by `PROCDEF`, may contain other `PROCDEF` commands, entered just as any other system-supplied command, without a preceding break character. These additional `PROCDEF` commands are said to be nested in relation to the complete procedure.

```
Example 1: PROCDEF NAME = MYJOB
100 PARAM DDNAME=ALPHA,DSNAME=
      DATASET,VOLUME=ANY,$N,STATE=$1,
      ACC=$2,NEWNAME=BETA
200 DDEF DDNAME=ALPHA,DSORG=VI,
      DSNAME=DATASET,VOLUME=ANY,$N
300 CATALOG DSNAME=DATASET,STATE=
      $1,ACC=$2,NEWNAME=BETA
400 _END
```

In the `PARAM` line in Example 1 above `DDNAME`, `DSNAME`, `VOLUME`, `STATE`, `ACC`, and `NEWNAME` are external strings (keywords) that associate the calling parameters with the internal strings (in the `PARAM` line) `ALPHA`, `DATASET`, `ANY`, `$1`, `$2`, and `BETA` respectively.

`DDEF`, on line 200, is a system-supplied command with the variable operands `DDNAME`, `DSORG`, `DSNAME`, `VOLUME`, and `DISP`. The keyword `DISP` is omitted and the dummy operand `$N` is supplied positionally. `DSORG=VI` is a fixed operand value and will be so treated when the procedure named `MYJOB` is called. Values for the other variable operands will be supplied when the procedure is called.

CATALOG, on line 300, is also a system-supplied command. Its operands are all variable and will be substituted when the procedure is called.

The `_END`, line 400, terminates the definition of this procedure. It can now be executed by the user.

Example 2: MYJOB DDNAME=SETUP,DSNAME=ONE,
VOLUME=131313, OLD, STATE=U,
ACC=U, NEWNAME=TWO

This parameter string associated with MYJOB will cause the dataset named ONE to be defined and retrieved as an existing (`DISP=OLD`) data set on private volume #131313. The catalog entry for ONE will then be updated, renaming the data set as TWO. The access qualifier of U (unlimited access) is retained.

Example 3: MYJOB SETX,FIRST,PRIVATE,NEW,N,R,
SECOND

This parameter string associated with MYJOB will cause the data set named FIRST to be defined for a private volume. The data set does not yet exist (`DISP=NEW`). The data set will be cataloged with read-only access, under the data set name SECOND.

Object Program Definition (BUILTIN)

The BUILTIN command defines an object program that the user can invoke as if it were a command. It is useful for accomplishing actions not achieved by any current system-supplied commands. If the user wishes to define operands for his BUILTIN command, he must supply the code within his module to handle the parameter values supplied when the module is called. The BPKD macro instruction (BUILTIN Procedure Key Identifier) must be supplied in the object code as part of the PSECT and have the expected parameters defined. The BPKD macro instruction must also supply the names needed to provide linkage between the module and the BUILTIN command defining that module. The following source program could be assembled, with the object module being retained for future use. The program is only a randomly selected example to indicate the sequence of events necessary for BUILTIN, and the control features (BPKD) necessary for incorporation. Any other sequence of executable code would suffice equally as well.

```
PST16    PSECT      BEGIN16
         ENTRY     F'76'
         DC        18F'0'
USEREX   BPKD      BEGIN16
CST16    CSECT
BEGIN16  BASR      11,0
         USING    *,11          LOCAL BASE
                                     REGISTER
         L        13,72(0,13)
         USING    PST16,13
```

```
HERE     EQU      *
GATRD    AREA+3,LENGTH  READ FROM
                                     SYSIN
                                     CHECK
                                     IF END
                                     BRANCH
                                     IF YES
                                     CONVERT
                                     TO BINARY
CLI      AREA+3,C'E'
BE       LEAVE
MVZ     AREA+3(1),=X'00'
L       5,AREA
SLA     5,1                MULTIPLY
                                     BY 2
ST      5,AREA
MVZ     AREA+3(1),=X'FF'  CONVERT
                                     TO EBCDIC
                                     WRITE ON
                                     SYSOUT
B       HERE
LEAVE   EXIT  'PGM FINISHED'
AREA    DC     F'0'        READ/WRITE
                                     AREA
LENGTH DC     F'1'        LENGTH
                                     AREA
END
```

Assuming that the above module was assembled without specifying a job library, the task USERLIB will contain the object code available via entry point BEGIN16. Example 4 to follow shows how this code sequence may be retrieved.

Example 4: BUILTIN NAME=GETPROC,EXTNAME=
USEREX
The object program definition via a user-created command (GETPROC) is now established.

GETPROC

The execution of this user-defined command will now result in the calling and running of the program shown earlier. Control will be transferred to the entry point named BEGIN16, with linkage established via parameters in the BUILTIN command and the BPKD macro specification.

The User Profile

The user profile is a specialized data set containing information pertinent to each user. Stored within this data set is information regarding the values the user generates for defaults and synonyms, and optionally, his command symbols. The user profile is a member of the partitioned data set named USERLIB.

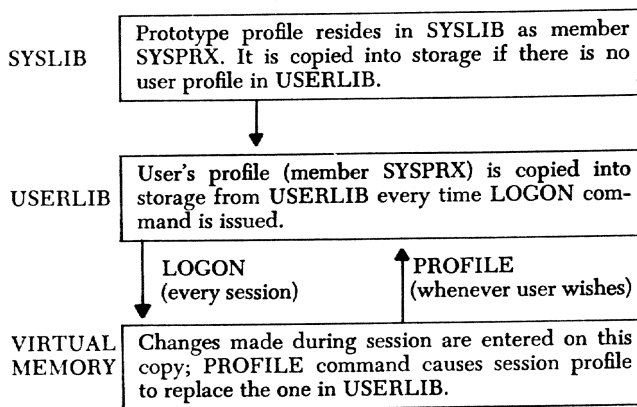
Initially, the system provides the user with a prototype user profile, resident in SYSLIB, which contains the default values for system-supplied commands and any initial synonym values.

When a user is joined to the system, a copy of the prototype profile in SYSLIB is made a member of his user library. He can make changes or add to the prototype copy in memory during a terminal session by issuing a SYNONYM or DEFAULT command, or by using the SET command to establish command symbols. Such changes affect only the session profile, unless followed by the PROFILE command, which permanently changes the user profile.

When the prototype profile is not permanently changed during a session, the memory copy is erased when LOGOFF is issued. When, during the course of a session, the user issues a PROFILE command, the entire profile copy, as it exists in memory, is written into USERLIB, and given the member name of SYSPRX.

When the user initiates his task, the system generates a search through USERLIB to locate the user's profile. If it is not found (i.e., the user has erased his user profile), the system copies the prototype profile from SYSLIB into memory, where it may be accessed and used. Unless changed via PROFILE, this memory copy of the prototype profile is erased at LOGOFF.

The user profile can exist concurrently on three levels: the prototype profile in SYSLIB, the user profile in USERLIB, and the session profile in storage.



At the user's first LOGON, the system provides initial default values for most operands. When the user does not explicitly define operand values when entering a command requiring these values, the system will default to the initial value that it has provided. If the initial value is null, the user must specify a value. The default table is a list of default values supplied by the system (see *Command System User's Guide*).

A user can specify his own default values to be used in place of or in addition to these system-supplied default values by using the DEFAULT command. Any changes become a part of his user profile for the session involved and may, of course, be saved for later sessions by issuing a PROFILE command.

Each user has a separate user library and therefore a separate user profile. At times the user may find it desirable to share the copy of the profile in his user library. Since his copy is addressable as a normal member, it can be shared by making USERLIB shareable. Normal sharing precautions and procedures should be used.

The user may erase his copy of the user profile, exercising the normal erasing procedure. He may also log on without it for a particular session by using the pristine operand of the LOGON command.

Command System User's Guide should be referenced for complete details concerning User Profile Management.

- %E (see end of modifications indicator)
- %END (see end-of-data indicator)
- %ENDDS (see data card data set)
- # (see number sign)

- ABEND description 8
- ABEND macro instruction 133
- ABENDREG command, general form 184
- absolute generation name 86-88
- access
 - catalog 62, 86, 88
 - sharing 78-79, 156-157
 - withdrawal 78
- access methods
 - basic sequential (BSAM) 24-25, 34
 - queued sequential (QSAM) 24-25, 34
 - restrictions 171-180
 - virtual index sequential (VISAM) 24-25, 34
 - virtual partitioned (VPAM) 24-25, 34
 - virtual sequential (VSAM) 24-25, 34
- ADCON (see address constant)
- ADCON macro instruction 143
- address constant 131
- addressing interruption 164
- alias 13
- alignment
 - by program control system 138
 - source statement 103
 - virtual storage area 157-159
- assembler
 - data set identification 17
 - diagnostic action 122
 - general description 102-106
 - limitations 117
 - options (see assembler parameters)
 - output 107-117
 - restrictions 117-121
 - sample coding 142-147
- assembler parameters
 - default 38-39
 - general 38-39, 107-109, 184
 - required 38-39, 107
- AT command
 - description 141
 - example 32, 59
- ATTENTION button
 - effect on command execution 56, 165-166
 - to cause interruption 165-167
 - to log on 3, 28
- auxiliary storage 157

- BACK command
 - data set requirements 176
 - description 5, 8, 9
 - example 28, 64
 - background mode (see nonconversational mode)
 - base register 142-148
 - basic sequential access method (see BSAM)
 - batch sequence number (BSN) 8, 53-55
- BEGIN command
 - description 8
 - example 28

- BFALN (DCB operand) 25
- BLKSIZE (DCB operand) 25, 175
- boundary (see alignment)
- BPKD macro instruction 34
- BFTEK (DCB operand) 25, 175
- BRANCH command
 - example 30, 59
- BSAM access method 22, 24, 34
- BSN (see batch sequence number)
- BUFCB (DCB operand) 25
- BUFL (DCB operand) 25, 175
- BUFNO (DCB operand) 25, 175
- BUFOFF (DCB operand) 175
- BUILTIN command
 - data set requirements 176
 - example 33, 99
- bulk I/O 18-19, 21

- CA (indicates card reader SYSIN) 104
- CALL command
 - example 30, 47, 63, 64
- CALL macro instruction
 - efficiency considerations 158-159
 - example 30
 - general 132-133, 144, 149
- CANCEL command
 - description 8
 - example 28, 54
- card reader example 80-81
- card statement format 103
- carriage return 36, 105, 130
- CAT macro instruction 28
- CATALOG command
 - data set definition requirements 173-174, 176
 - description 12
 - example 28, 62, 86, 88
 - generation data group 86-88
 - renaming option 45
 - sample usage 28
 - shared data set 161
- catalog
 - concept 2
 - effect on DDEF command 171
 - of library 45
 - recording of information 171
 - structure 10-11
 - system 10
 - user 10, 12
- cataloging (automatic system action, VAM) 171
- cataloging data sets 12
- CB (indicates card reader SYSIN) 80, 81, 104
- CDD command
 - data set requirements 176
 - description 17
 - example 28, 68
- CDD macro instruction 17, 28
- CDS command
 - data set requirements 177
 - example 29, 79
 - use 21, 29
- CDS macro instruction 21, 29
- character sets
 - card format 104
 - keyboard format 104
- CHECK macro instruction 34, 61
- CHGPASS command

- description 8
- example 28
- general form 181
- CLATT macro instruction 167
- CLOSE COMMAND
 - data set requirements 177
 - example 29
 - sample usage 29
- CLOSE macro instruction 24, 29, 34, 61, 73
- COMAREA (see communication area)
- COMMAND macro instruction 26
- command procedure data set 18
- committed statement 106
- COMMON control section 162
- communication area 168-169
- CONC (for OPTION operand of DDEF command) 172
- concatenation of data set 172
- CONTEXT command
 - example 30, 96
- continuation line
 - card format 103
 - keyboard format 104
- continuation of terminal command 61, 104
- control section (CSECT)
 - attributes 126
 - linking 159
 - name duplication 45
 - naming rules 143, 160
 - packing 36
 - public 156-157
 - rejection 159
 - storage allocation 157
 - unnamed 147
- conversational mode
 - assembler I/O 22
 - correction of input 105-106
 - definition of 3
 - entering commands 4
 - entering data 3-4, 18
 - language processing 128
 - linkage editing 130-136
 - output 117
 - PCS 136-141
 - SYSIN 4
 - SYSOUT 4
 - task
 - execution 3
 - initiation 3
 - interruption 4, 164
 - termination 4
- conversion of floating-point constants 139
- COPY instruction 123-124
- CORRECT command
 - example 30, 96
- correction, error (see error, correction techniques)
- cross-reference listing
 - assembler parameter (CRLIST) 39, 108
 - description 113
 - example 113
- CSECT (see control section)
- data card data set 19
- DATA command
 - building a data set at the terminal 75
 - automatic cataloging 66
 - data set requirements 177
 - description 18
 - example 29, 64, 66, 75
 - to store DDEF commands 69
- data control block (DCB)
 - DDEF command use 17, 171-175
 - general description 15-16
 - parameter of DDEF command 171, 173-174
- data interruption 164
- data management
 - basic sequential 22, 24, 34
 - general 10
 - virtual indexed sequential 12-13, 22-24, 34
 - virtual partitioned 13, 22-24
 - virtual sequential 12, 22-24, 34
- data set
 - cataloging 12, 45, 61-63
 - closing 24, 29, 34
 - concatenating 172
 - copying 21
 - defining 15-18
 - for comands 176-178
 - for problem programs 15-18
 - deletion 12, 17
 - identifying 17
 - list (see list data set)
 - management 10
 - modification 21
 - names 10
 - organization 12-13
 - physical sequential (see BSAM)
 - prestored 18, 44-46
 - printing 47-48
 - processing restrictions 171
 - protection 19-21
 - reading 49-50
 - removed 185
 - residence 13-14
 - sharing 19-21
 - source (see source data set)
 - virtual index sequential (see VISAM)
 - virtual partitioned (see VPAM)
 - virtual sequential (see VSAM)
- DATASET command (see data card data set)
- data set control block (DSCB) 72, 171
- DCB (see data control block)
- DCB macro instruction
 - description of use 15-16, 23, 34
 - EODAD parameter 49
 - examples 3, 47, 49, 64, 71
 - omitted parameters 49-50
 - operand list 25
- DCB parameters
 - DDEF command 171, 173-174
- DCBD macro instruction 23
- DDEF command
 - description 171-176
 - example 29
 - multiple executions 179
 - storing for later use 29
- DDEF macro instruction 29
(see also DDEF command)
- DDNAME
 - DCB operand 25
 - DDEF command parameter 171, 173-174
- DDNAME? command
 - description 18
 - example 30, 54
 - use 31
- decimal divide interruption 164
- decimal overflow interrupt masking 164-165
- default
 - assembler parameters 38-39, 107-109
 - DDEF parameters 172-175
 - explicit 107
 - implicit 107
 - log-on parameters 36-37

DEFAULT command
 data set requirements 177
 description 15
 example 32, 100
DEL macro instruction 29
DELETE command
 data set requirements 177
 example 84
DELETE macro instruction 30, 136
deletion
 data set 84
 source statement 76
DELREC macro instruction 34
DEN (DCB operand) 175
DEPROMPT 12
DEVD (DCB operand) 25, 175
diagnostic action
 levels 124
diagnostic messages 4, 35
DIR macro instruction 34, 83
DISABLE command
 example 31, 96
DISABLE macro instruction 31
DISP (parameter of DDEF command) 173-174
DISPLAY command
 example 32, 56
DMPRST command
DSECT 127
DSECT copy parcel 89
DSNAME (parameter of DDEF command) 173-174
DSORG 171
 DCB operand 25
 DDEF command parameter 173-174, 175
DSS? command
 data set definition requirements 177
 description 17
 example 31, 84
DUMP command
 data set requirements 177
 description 137-138
 example 32, 60
duplicate
 data set definition names 176, 179
 entry point 159-161
 symbols in libraries 53
DUPCLOSE macro instruction 24, 34
DUPOPEN macro instruction 24, 34

EDIT command
 data set requirements 177
 example 30, 95-97
EDIT feature (assembler) 112
EDIT option of PRINT command 48
edited symbol table (STEDIT assembler parameter) 39, 108
ENABLE command
 example 31, 96
END command
 data set requirements 177
 example 30, 97, 98
END statement 40, 52
end of modifications indicator 45
entry point name
 duplication 53, 159-161
 rules 162
ENTRY statement 49
EODAD
 DCB operand 25
ERASE command
 action when data set actively shared 79
 data set requirements 177
 description 12, 21
 example 29, 46, 72

 object module 46
 shared data set 162
ERASE macro instruction 29
ERASE operand of PRINT command 47
EROPT (DCB operand) 25, 175
error
 assembly 38-41
 code 122
 control section rejection 159
 correction techniques 105-106
 detection with CHECK 61
 during MODIFY command 44
 global correction 105-106
 incorrect data set 77
 incorrect volume 77
 local correction 105
 module loading 140, 158
 program control system 139
 source statement 40
 syntactical 122
EVV command
 data set requirements 177
 example 29, 77
EXCERPT command
 example 30, 96
EXCISE command
 example 30, 95
EXECUTE command
 data set requirements 177
 description 5, 10
 example 28, 65-66
execution interruption 164
EXHIBIT command
 example 30
EXIT command
EXIT macro instruction 34, 43
EXLST (DCB operand) 25
EXPLAIN command 135
exponent overflow 139, 164
exponent underflow 139, 164
express mode 51, 117
expression evaluation by program control system 139
external symbols, restrictions 160

fixed-point divide exception 139, 164
fixed-point overflow
 general 83, 139
 masking interrupt 164, 165
floating-point computations 148
floating-point divide exception 139, 164
format
 card statement 103
 diagnostic messages 122
 keyboard entry 104
 macro library 123-125
 source statement 103
FREEMAIN macro instruction 136
fully qualified name 10

GATRD macro instruction 26, 34, 44
GATWR macro instruction 26, 34, 44
GDG (see generation data group)
generation data group 11
 example 86-88
GET macro instruction 34, 49
GETMAIN macro instruction 136
GO command
 example 30, 57
 interrupt considerations 164
GTWAR macro instruction 26
GTWRC macro instructions 26
GTWSR macro instructions 26

HOLD (parameter of DDEF command) 172-174
housekeeping 84-85
hyphen

command continuation 62
statement continuation 103

ICB (see interrupt control block)

ICTL statements 104

IF command

description 137
example 32, 59
floating-point considerations 139

IMSK (DCB operand) 25, 175

index, addition to record 71-73

INDEX data definition name 90

indexed data set organization (see VISAM)

initial virtual storage 157

input

card reader 80
mixing 104

input/output request facility (IOREQ) 23, 24

INSERT command

example 31, 95

internal symbol, naming restrictions 162

internal symbol dictionary (ISD)

assembler parameter 39, 108
creation 39
link editor use 130
listing (ISDLIST) 39, 108
program control system use 137
symbols not included 138

interrupt 164-170

asynchronous 166-167
AT command 141
display of location 56
external 166-167
input/output 166-167
program 77, 164-165, 167
program control system 140
resumption of execution 57, 60, 165
supervisor call 166-167
timer 166-167
types 164

interrupt control block (ICB) 83, 167

interrupt handling

of tasks 82-83
programs 166
routines 164-170

intervention prevention switch (IPS) 165-166

INTINQ macro instruction 168-169

invalid address assignment 58

I/O

assembler 22
bulk 18-19, 21
during program execution 22
dynamic 22

IOREQ (see input/output request facility)

IPS (see intervention prevention switch)

ISD (see internal symbol dictionary)

ISDLIST (see internal symbol dictionary)

IVM (see initial virtual storage)

job library

adding 2, 13-14
contents 2, 13-14
creation 41, 53
use 41, 53

JOBLIB (see job library)

JOBLIBS command

description 14
example 29

K (indicates keyboard SYSIN) 106

KA (indicates keyboard SYSIN) 41, 106

KB (indicates keyboard SYSIN) 37, 106

keyboard entry format 104

KEYLEN (DCB operand) 25, 175

KEYWORD command

data set requirements 177
example 33

keyword operand 183

LABEL (parameter of DDEF command) 173-174

language processors

assembler 22

library

concepts 2
display of object module names 84, 160
hierarchy (see program library list)
list (see program library list)
name qualification 161
obtaining information 160
private volume 159
programs 160
public volume 160
search 13-14
sharing 160

limitations (see restrictions)

LINE? command

data set requirements 177
description 18
example 59
general form 31

line data set 75

line number, assembler parameter (LINCR) 108-109

link editor

data set definition 130
example 92-93
internal symbol dictionary use 130
module names 134-135

linkage

control section 159
conventions 131-133, 148-155
dynamic 135-136
editing 130
macro instructions 132-133
static 134
symbolic 131

LIST command

example 31, 97

list data set

assembler parameter (LISTDS) 39
defining (LISTDS) 39, 108
omitting PRINT command 44

LISTDS (see list data set)

listing

cross-reference 113-114
internal symbol dictionary (ISD) 114-115
object 109, 111-113
program module dictionary (PMD) 114-116
source program 109-111
symbol table 114

listing data set (see list data set)

literals

example 145, 146
general 113, 147

LNK command

example 92-93

LOAD command

data set requirements 177
duplicate entry points 160
duplicate names 53
efficiency considerations 159

- errors 159-160
- example 30, 58
- interrupt considerations 164
- missing name 159
- missing subroutine 74
- object modules 159
- undefined reference 74
- unsolved reference 159
- LOAD macro instruction 30, 136
- loading procedures (see LOAD command)
- local correction 105
- LOCATE command
 - example 31, 97
- locate mode (see GET and PUT macro instructions)
- LOGOFF command
 - conversational 37
 - description 10
 - example 28, 37, 41
 - nonconversational 68
- LOGON command
 - conversational 36
 - description 10
 - example 28, 36, 66
 - nonconversational 66
 - operands 36-37
- LPCXPRSS
 - example 51
 - general 117
- LRECL (DCB operand) 25, 175
- MACRF (DCB operand) 25, 175
- macro instructions (see also macro instructions)
 - listed alphabetically
 - assembler process of 123
 - chart 28-33, 34
 - creation 89-91
 - general service 23-24
 - system 147
- macro library
 - assembler parameter (MACROLIB) 38, 107
 - creation of 123
 - format 123
 - index 125
 - user 89-91, 122
- management
 - data set 10
 - device 14
 - virtual storage 155
- MCAST command
 - data set requirements 177
 - example 32
- MCAST macro instruction, example 32
- MCASTAB command
 - data set requirements 178
 - example 32
- message format, diagnostics 122
- messages
 - assembler storage limits 117
 - conversational output 35
 - diagnostic 4, 35, 113
 - information 35
 - MNOTE 112
 - prompting 4, 35
 - response 4, 35
 - source listing 109
 - warning 124
- metasymbol 183
- mixed mode 8
- mixed input (card and keyboard input) 104
- MNOTE statement 113, 124
- MODE (DCB operand) 25, 175
- modification of source statement 40-41, 44, 54
- MODIFY command
 - data set requirements 178
 - description 21
 - example 29, 44, 54
 - termination 45
- modifying a data set 21
- modifying programs 4-5, 136
- module (see also object module)
 - assembler parameter 38, 107-108
 - object 38, 107-108
 - source 38, 107-108
- module name
 - assignment 107
 - duplication 53
 - link edited 148
 - multiple execution 179
- move mode (see GET and PUT macro instructions)
- MSAM (see multiple sequential access method)
- MTT (see multiterminal task)
- multiple sequential access method (MSAM) 22-23
- multiterminal task 5
- name
 - absolute generation 87
 - assembler parameter 38
 - list data set 41, 45
 - module 38, 107
 - qualification 10
 - rules 10
 - shared data set 78-79, 159, 160
 - source data set 38, 108
- naming
 - data sets 10
 - restrictions 162
 - rules 162
- NCP (DCB operand) 25, 175
- nonconversational mode
 - assembler parameters 67
 - entering data 18-19
 - general description 5-8
 - interrupt 82-83
 - language processing 103
 - linkage editing 135-136
 - log off 66, 68
 - log on 67
 - output 8
 - processing 5-8
 - program execution 68
 - SECURE requirements 176
 - SYSIN 64, 66
 - SYSOUT 8, 66-67
 - task preparation
 - execution 8
 - initiation 5
 - termination 8
- NUMBER command
 - example 31, 96
- number sign (#) prompt for modifications 40, 44-45
- OBEY macro instruction
 - description 29
 - example 100
- object listing (ASMLIST assembler parameter) 39
- object module
 - combination 133-135
 - display of names 84
 - format 116
 - linkage 133-135
 - loading 159
 - naming rules 160
 - shared 156-157
 - structure 109, 111-112

- versions 69
- object program listing
 - assembler parameter 39, 108
 - example 111
- object program module (see object module)
- OPEN macro instruction
 - description 23, 34
 - examples 47, 49, 64, 71
- operation code interruption 164
- operator-assisted input 8, 18-19
- OPTCD (DCB operand) 25, 175
- OPTION (parameter of DDEF command) 173-174
- options, assembler (see assembler parameters)
- OS data set use 63
- output of assembler 107-117
- output module (see object module)

- PAD (DCB operand) 25, 175
- page control while printing data set 47-48
- paging 157
- parameter area 132, 149
- parameter list 149
- parameters
 - assembler 38-39, 107-109
 - LOGON 36-37
- partial statement 106
- partially qualified name 10
- partitioned data set (see VPAM)
- password 36
- PAUSE macro instruction 26, 148
- PC? command
 - data set requirements 178
 - description 17
 - example 31, 84
- PCS (see program control system)
- PCSOUT
 - requirements for DDEF 58
- PERMIT command
 - access levels 161-162, 163
 - catalog alteration 19-21
 - data set requirements 178
 - description 19
 - example 29, 78
 - use 159
- physical sequential data set (see BSAM)
- PMD (see program module dictionary)
- POD? command
 - data set requirements 178
 - description 18
 - example 31, 85
- positional operand 183
- POST command
 - example 32, 97
- pound sign (#) prompt for modifications 40-41, 44-45
- PR macro instruction 30
- PRINT command
 - data set requirements 178
 - description 5, 21
 - EDIT option 48
 - example 30, 48
 - interface with LPC listing data set 35
 - required record format 48
- printing a data set 48
- print-out (see listing)
- PRISTINE (LOGON operand) 37
- PRIVATE (option of DDEF command) 173-174
- private volume
 - cataloging 61
 - job library 161
 - library 161
 - mounting 61-64
 - use of 14
- volume labels 14
- volume sequence number 62-63
- volume serial number 62-63
- privileged operation interruption 164
- problem program
 - I/O 22-23
 - preparation 102, 142
 - residence 158-159
- PROCDEF command
 - data set requirements 178
 - definition 180
 - example 32, 98
- PROFILE command
 - data set requirements 178
 - example 32, 100
- program (see also object module)
 - execution 42-43
 - interruption 164
 - library list 13-14
 - linkage 130-136
 - maintenance 84-85
 - module dictionary 114-116
 - reenterable 51-55, 156-157
- program control system (PCS) 136-141
 - commands 140-141
 - diagnostics 139
 - dynamic statements 58-60
 - errors 139
 - examples 56-60
 - expression evaluation 139
 - floating-point considerations 139
 - immediate statements 56-57
 - internal symbol dictionary use 138-139
 - restrictions 138, 139, 141
 - statements 137-138
- program library list 13-14
- program module (see object module)
- program module dictionary listing (PMDLIST) 39, 108, 114-116
- program status word, display 56
- programming practices 142-163
- prompting messages 4, 35
- PROTECT (parameter of DDEF command) 173-174
- protection interruption 164
- prototype control section (PSECT)
 - contents 143
 - dump 59
 - general 158
 - listing 115
 - name 143
 - save area 143
- PRTSP (DCB operand) 25, 175
- PS (see BSAM)
- PSECT (see prototype control section)
- PSW (see program status work)
- PU macro instruction 22, 30
- public considerations (shared code) 156-157
- public volume 14
- public volume library 161
- PUNCH command
 - data set requirements 178
 - description 5, 21-22
 - "endno" parameter 106
 - example 30, 84
 - "startno" parameter 106
 - statement entered at keyboard 106
- PUT macro instruction 34

- QSAM (see queued sequential access method)
- qualification
 - data set name 78-79
 - internal symbols 162

- library name 162
- partial 10
- QUALITY command
 - example 32, 58
- queued sequential access method 22, 24
- R-type address constant (RCON) 143, 149
- R-value 49
- RAE macro instruction 168
- READ macro instruction 34
- read-and-write access 78, 161-162
- read-only access
 - cataloged data set 49-50
 - shared data set 78
- RECFM (DCB operand) 25, 175
- records
 - deletion 72
- reenterable program 156-157
- references
 - listing 113-114
 - resolving 159
 - undefined 74
 - unresolved 159
- REGION command
 - data set requirements 178
 - example 31
- register, base 145-147
- register, usage
 - general 142-152
 - interrupt-handling routine 165-167
 - program linking 148
- registers, saving 49, 148-151
- rejection, control section 159
- REL macro instruction 29
- relative generation number 11, 86-87
- RELEASE command
 - data set requirements 178
 - description 17
 - example 29, 60, 63, 77
- remote job entry 8
- removal of a catalog entry 29, 85
- removal of a data set 84, 85
- REMOVE command
 - description 137
 - example 32, 59
- rename a catalog entry 45
- resident terminal access method 22-23
- response message 4, 35
- restrictions
 - assembler 117-121
 - naming 162
 - punched terminal statements 103-107
 - statement length 103
 - virtual storage 156-157
- RET command
 - data set requirements 178
 - example 29, 48, 50
- RET (parameter of DDEF command)
 - example 48, 50
 - general form 173-174
- return code register 132
- RETURN key 27, 105
- RETURN macro instruction
 - after an interrupt routine 136, 167
 - example 34, 48, 52, 83
 - general 133, 151
- RJE (see remote job entry)
- RKP (DCB operand) 25, 175
- RT command (read tape) 18
- RTAM (see resident terminal access method)
- SAEC macro instruction 167
- SAI macro instruction 167
- sample assembler coding 143-147
- save area 49-50, 132, 142, 149-151
- SAVE macro instruction 34, 133, 136, 149-151
- SECURE command
 - description 10, 171, 179
 - example 30, 82
 - requirements 179
- SEEC macro instruction 167
- sequential data set (see VSAM)
- SET command
 - description 137
 - example 32, 56, 58
 - floating-point considerations 139
- severity code 122
- SHARE command
 - catalog entry 78
 - data set definition requirements 178
 - entry in system 78
 - example 30, 78
 - use 19-21, 157
- sharing
 - considerations 156-157, 161-162
 - data sets 19-21, 78, 156
 - descriptor 78-79
 - library 161-162
- SIEC macro instruction 167
- significance interrupt masking 164
- SIR macro instruction 83, 164
 - description 34
 - example 82
- source data set
 - creation 38-41, 75-76
 - defining 38, 107
 - display 76
 - names 38, 162
 - prestored 75
- "SOURCE" data set name qualifier
 - macro library use 90
 - system creation 38, 107
- source listing
 - assembler parameter (SYMLIST) 39, 108
 - general 109
 - sample 110
- source module
 - assembler parameter 38, 107
 - general 102
- source program listing (see source listing)
- source statement
 - changing 40
 - committed 106
 - correction 40
 - display 40, 44, 76
 - END (see END statement)
 - format 38, 103, 104
 - keyboard (for later use) 106-107
 - partial 106
 - restrictions 103-104
 - review 44
 - tentative 106
- SPACE (parameter of DDEF command) 173-174
- SPEC macro instruction 34, 83, 167
- specification interruption 164
- SSEC macro instruction 167
- STACK (DCB operand) 25, 175
- start line number (LINCR assembler parameter) 40, 108-109
- start line number increment
 - (LINCR assembler parameter 40, 108-109
- statement (see source statement)

static linking 134-135
 STEC macro instruction 167
 STOP command
 description 137, 138
 example 32, 56, 59
 interrupt considerations 138
 storage (see also: virtual storage, auxiliary storage)
 allocation 156
 management 156-157
 STORED (assembler parameter) 38, 107
 subroutine
 missing 74
 supplementary macro library (assembler parameter) 38, 107-108
 switching modes 8, 9, 64-66
 symbol table listing
 description 113
 example 113
 symbol type designation on listing 113
 symbolic library index 125
 SYNAD (DCB operand) 25, 61
 SYNONYM command
 data set requirements 178
 example 32, 100
 SYSIN
 card reader 80-81
 conversational 4
 entering source statements 128-129
 macro instruction 26
 nonconversational 5
 SYSLIB (system library) 13, 160
 SYSOUT
 conversational 4
 messages 4, 35
 nonconversational 8
 system
 catalog 10-11
 general description 1
 library 13, 160
 log 27

 tab stop
 setting 42
 use 42, 104
 TAM (see Terminal Access Method)
 tape, magnetic
 DDEF command 62-63
 task
 execution
 conversational 3-5
 nonconversational 8
 initiation
 conversational 3
 nonconversational 5, 8
 interruption 4, 164
 management 3-10
 termination
 conversational 4
 nonconversational 8
 task data definition table (TDT) 171
 task identity
 LOGON operand 36
 TDT (see task data definition table)
 tentative statement 106
 terminal entry format 42-43
 terminal I/O 3-4, 22-23
 termination
 modifications of source statement 40
 task 37, 164
 text, object program module 116
 text editor
 examples 95-97
 general description 18

 TIME command
 description 10
 example 28, 38
 time-stamp 38, 115
 TRTCH (DCB operand) 25, 175
 TV command
 data set requirements 178
 example 30, 94
 use 30
 type I linkage 132, 148

 uncataloging (see DELETE command)
 UNIT (parameter of DDEF command) 173-174
 unlimited access
 cataloged data sets 49-50
 shared data sets 78-79, 161-162
 UNLOAD command
 at LOGOFF 60
 efficiency considerations 158
 example 30, 54
 removal of program control system statement 59
 unreferenced programs 159
 unresolved references 159
 UPDATE command
 example 31, 95
 USAGE command
 description 10
 example 28, 85
 USATT macro instruction 167
 user
 identification 36
 library (see user library)
 USERLIB (see user library)
 user defined procedures
 BUILTIN 181
 general 180-182
 PROCDEF 180-181
 user library
 general description 13, 160
 organization 13
 user macro library
 creation 122-125
 example 89-91
 use 122-123
 User profile
 DEFAULT command 15, 177
 general 181-182
 PROFILE command 15, 178
 SYNONYM command 15, 178
 USERSYM data set 89-91

 V-type address constant (VCON) 143, 145
 VAM (virtual access method)
 (see VISAM, VPAM, VSAM)
 VERID (see version identification)
 version
 general data group 86-88
 of program 161
 version identification
 assembler parameter (VERID) 38, 108
 on listing 115
 VI (see VISAM)
 virtual indexed sequential (see VISAM)
 virtual partitioned (see VPAM)
 virtual program status word (VPSW) 169
 virtual sequential (see VSAM)
 virtual storage
 allocation 157
 concept 2, 12-13
 efficiency considerations 157-159
 limitations 117-118
 management 157-159

VISAM
 access method 22-24, 34
 data set 12-13
volume
 concept 14
 labels 14
 magnetic tape 61-63
 mounting 62-63
 organization of data sets 12-14
 private 14, 161
 public 14, 161
VOLUME (parameter of DDEF command) 173-174
VP (see VPAM)
VPAM
 access method 22-24
 data set 13
VS (see VSAM)
VSAM
 access method 22-24, 34
 data set 12
VT command
 data set requirements 178
 example 30, 94
 use 21, 30
VV command
 data set requirements 178
 description 21
 example 30, 94
WRITE macro instruction 34, 61
WT command
 data set definition requirements 178
 description 5, 21
 example 30, 58
WT macro instruction 21, 30
WTL macro instruction 27
WTO macro instruction 27
WTOR macro instruction 27
ZLOGON
 example 28
 general description 10, 98
 use 37, 98

IBM

**International Business Machines Corporation
Data Processing Division
1133 Westchester Avenue, White Plains, New York 10604
(U.S.A. only)**

**IBM World Trade Corporation
360 Hamilton Avenue, White Plains, New York 10601
(International)**